A Practical Treatise on The 5 Orders

of Ancient Architecture.

By A. Bosse

Reason above all.

Practice.

Theory.

Conveniency.

Edwardus Oakley Delineavit.

Benjam. Cole sculp.

The Magazine of Architecture, PERSPECTIVE, & Sculpture:

In FIVE PARTS.

PART the FIRST, GEOMETRICAL, *Practical, & Usefull* PROBLEMS; *for y^e Describing of Circles, Ovals, Arches, Groyns (regular or Rampant) & Polygons, y^e Mouldings made use of in ARCHITECTURE; the Handrail to Stair-Cases; y^e Wreath'd* Columns; *Ionic* Capital *Antient & Modern* Volutes; *& to Flute* Columns, *and* Pilasters.

PART the SECOND, PLAIN *& Easy* Directions *for the* Construction *of y^e* FIVE ORDERS *of* ARCHITECTURE, *with their Imposts & Arches, Plans, Elevations & Profiles, (Accurately describ'd by Feet, Inches & parts; likewise by the Customary measure of* Modules *&. Minutes)* Frontispieces *&* Windows: Ornaments *for Mouldings, Capitals & Freezes; Fretts & Flowers; Enrich'd* Pedestals *for Statues;* Compartiments *for Domes, Soffites of Arches & Pavements; of the* Proportion *and Cieling of* Rooms; *and Designs of* Obelisks.

PART the THIRD, *On the Disposition & Regularity of Stair-Cases; with Several Necessary* Improvements, *wherein the* Symetry *requir'd is preserv'd in y^e* Steps *&* Halfpaces, *&c. also in y^e Rangeing* Ballisters *&* Ornaments.

PART the FOURTH, *A most Easy & Expeditious Method, to Delineate in* PERSPECTIVE; *all Designs relating to* ARCHITECTURE, *after a* New Manner, *wholly free from y^e Confusion of Occult Lines.*

PART the FIFTH, *The Parts of* Human-Body *describ'd; with y^e* Nature *of* Motion *reduc'd to* Geometrical Rules; *to which is added, a Collection of y^e most* Beautifull Antique Statues, *with their Parts describ'd, as Measur'd from the Originals.*

Engraven on 96 Copper Plates, by Benj.^n Cole.

To which is Annex'd,

An Alphabetical Explanation of y^e Terms made use of in ARCHITECTURE

Collected from the most Approv'd Authors, Antient *&* Modern; *Particularly,* Palladio, Scamozzi *&* Vignola, *& made a Work of General Use for* Gentlemen, Architects, Sculptors, Painters, Workmen, *& all Persons Concern'd in Building.*

By Edward Oakley, ARCHITECT, *M.M.*

WESTMINSTER,

Printed, by A. Campbell, *for the* Author, *(over against* Tom's *Coffee House) in S^t.* Martin's-Lane, *&* B. Creake, *at the Bible in* Jermyn-Street, *near S^t James's Church.* MDCCXXXI.

To the Right Hon.ble

Sr. Robert Walpole,

First Lord Commissioner of the Treasury,
Chancellor of the Exchequer;
One of his MAJESTIES *most Hon.ble Privy Council,*
& Knight of the most Noble Order of y.e Garter.

B Cole Sculp

IR.

I humbly beg leave to lay the following Sheets under Your Protection, which I have presumed, without previously requesting of You the Favour of permitting me so to do, and

and making known my utmoſt Ambition of prefixing Your Great Name to this my Performance, as fearing that Your Modeſty, and conſtant Declenſion of every Thing that looks like Panegerick, or Publication of Your Virtues, might deprive me of that Honour.

AND I flatter myſelf, it will not be entirely unworthy Your Acceptance, ſince the Subject is ARCHITECRURE; which, as a Divine Science, has been in all Ages of the World, Favour'd, Cheriſh'd, and Encouraged by Divine Men, the Beſt of Princes, and the Wiſeſt, and moſt Able Patriots; and in a moſt Glorious and Particular Mannner by Yourſelf, SIR, in Your Magnificent Structure at *Houghton* in *Norfolk*.

BE Pleaſed then, SIR, to look upon it with a Favourable Eye; YOU, whoſe Indefatigable Care to keep and preſerve, like a True ARCHITECT, the Great Fabrick of our Admirable Government in Order, and give it, by Your Glorious Labours, uncommon Ornament and Decoration, render You the Wonder and Admiration of our Age. Notwithſtanding the Impotent Invectives, and Fruitleſs Scribble of Malevolents, who have the Venom of *Adders* under their Lips; whoſe Pens drop Poyſon: But whoſe Eſſential Property, like that of Envy (their Empreſs and inſpiring Goddeſs) is to Pine, Languiſh and Conſume before the bright Rays, and ſplendid Emanuations of exalted MERIT; and who, like certain Domeſtick Anima's, with whom indeed they bear but too ſtrict Analogy, vainly Bark aloud at the ſecond Luminary of Heaven; which nevertheleſs moves Serenely on, and is Beneficient to Mankind.

THAT

DEDICATION.

THAT You may Long enjoy Perfect Health and Felicity, and ſee all Your Endeavours for our Intereſt and Tranquility crown'd with Succeſs, ſhall ever be the Sincere Wiſhes of him who Humbly begs Leave to be, with the Greateſt Submiſſion and Reſpect,

SIR,

Your Moſt Obedient,

Moſt Dutiful, and

Moſt Humble Servant,

EDWARD OAKLEY.

PREFACE.

THE following Sheets are Collected, and Design'd, for the Assistance and Instruction of such Persons who delight in, or are willing to proceed after a regular Manner in the Science of ARCHITECTURE.

There is no Occasion to make any Oration in Praise of this Noble ART; the Estimation it bears, with the most judicious Part of Mankind, being sufficiently known; and that it has been, and is Encouraged, Studied, and Practised, by the most Dignified and Renowned.

We ought in a particular Manner to Celebrate the Memory of that Great Restorer of Ancient ANCHITECTURE (in this our Isle) *Inigo Jones*, and the most worthy, valuable and indefatigable Genius of Sir *Christopher Wren*; these have embellish'd the Kingdom, which with the continued Labours and Industry of the Noble and truly Worthy Professors of this DIVINE SCIENCE, the Right Honourable the Earl of *Burlington*, the Honourable Lords *Herbert*, and *Bingley*, &c. will leave to Posterity most Glorious Examples of the Beauty and Harmony of Proportion and Decoration.

But as the ingenious Artist and Practitioner was oblig'd to have Recourse to many Volumes, to find out the different Parts of the same Science; I have, for their Advantage, extracted the most Material Precepts from our best Authors, and reduced them to the Easiest Practice.

I hope the Acknowledgment I make, by Naming the Authors, from whom I have Elected, will sufficiently clear me of the Imputation of a Plagiary; seeing especially, that I return to the Publick what I borrowed of them, *viz.*

For the four first PARTS I am beholden to *Palladio*, *Scamozzi*, *Vignola*, *Freart*, *Perrault*, *Bosse*, *Le Clere*, *Pozzo*, and Sir *Henry Wotton*; and for the last PART to *Alberti*, *Da Vinci*, *Lomatius*, and *Audran*: And as my Collecting from these Great Men, is no more than what themselves have done from each other, for the Benefit of the Publick; I wish the Present and Future industrious Practitioners, and the Curious and Impartial Readers, may receive a general Satisfaction and Benefit from these my Endeavours for their Advantage.

Estates survey'd, Designs made, and Estimates calculated, for Building or Repairs; Articles and Contracts for Agreements with Workmen fairly drawn; Artificers Works inspected, measured, and Bills adjusted: And all Affairs relating to Building carefully managed, By

EDWARD OAKLEY.

THE

CONTENTS.

PART I.

Practical Geometry.

SECT. I.

To deſcribe Polygons, &c.

	Plate	Fig.	Page.
TO erect or let fall Perpendiculars	1 :	1,2,3,4 :	1
To draw a Line parallel to a given Line	1 :	5 :	2
To divide a given right Line into any Number of equal Parts	1 :	6 :	2
To draw a ſpiral Line about a given Line	1 :	7 :	2
To make Triangles	1 :	8, 9 :	2
To make a Square upon a given right Line	1	10	2
To make a regular Pentagon upon a given right Line	1	11	3
To make a regular Hexagon upon a given right Line	1	12	3
Upon a given right Line to deſcribe any Polygon from an Hexagon to a Dodecagon	1	13	3
To make a Polygon of any Number of Sides from 12 to 24 upon a given right Line.	1	14	3
To find the Center of a given Circle	1	15	3
To deſcribe an Oval upon a given Length	1	16	4
To find the Center and the two Diameters of an Oval	1	17	4
To deſcribe an Eliptick Arch by the Tramel,	1	18	4
To find the different Compreſſure or Thruſt of Arches	1	20, 21, 22, 25,	5

SECT. 2.

To deſcribe Arches, Ovals, &c. *by the Interſection of right Lines.*

TO deſcribe *Gothick* Arches	1	19, 22, 23, 25,	4 5 6
To deſcribe a Segment of a Circle	1	20	5
To deſcribe Eliptick Arches	1	21 24	5
To deſcribe Ovals	1	26, 28, 29, 30,	6
To deſcribe an Arch of equal Height to a Semi-circle but of longer Diſtent	1	27	6

The CONTENTS.

SECT. 3.

To describe Circles, Ovals, rampant Arches, &c. by the Intersection of parallel Lines, &c.

	Plate	Fig.	Page.
TO describe a Circle	2	1	7
To describe Ovals	2 :	2,4,5,6,7	: 8
To describe rampant Arches	2, 3	3 & 8 to 16,	7, 8
The Variations of Circles, Ovals, and Rampants, between the same	Par. 2	7	8
To describe *Gothick Arches.*	3:	17 to 21 :	9 10

SECT. 4.

Of Groins, and the Formation of Niches, &c.

TO find the Angle or Miter Bracket of a Cove	4	1	10
The lesser Arch of an irregular Groin being a given Semi-circle, to find the larger Arch	4	2	11
One Center for a Rhombus Groin being given, to describe the other	4	3	11
The Arch-Line of a Cieling, or Vault, supposed to be Semi-circular being given, to forme the Curve of a lesser Arch, that shall intersect the Side thereof for the Reception of Doors or Windows	4	4	11
The Arch of a circular Wall being given, wherein a semi-circular Window is to stand, to form a Center to turn their Arches	4	5	12
The Center whereon the Arch of a Bow-Window is turn'd being given, to find another Center that will be parallel to it	4 :	6, 7 :	12
To form a semi-circular Nich with Ribs	4	8	12
To form a semi-circular Nich by the Thicknesses of Boards, *&c.*	4	9	13
To form an Eliptical Nich with Ribs	4:	10,11,12	1 :3
To form an Elliptical Nich by thicknesses of Boards, *&c.*	4	13, 14, 15, 16,	14
To make a Nich or Globe with thin Boards, *&c.*	4 :	17, 18 :	14

SECT. 5.

Of the Formation of twisted Rails, &c.

TO find the raking Arch, or Mould, for the Hand-rail to a circular Pair of Stairs	5 :	1, 3 :	15
To prepare the Stuff of which the Rail is to be made	5 :	2, 4 :	15
To describethe Arch, or Mould, for a Hand-rail to an Oval Stair-Case	5 :	5, 6 :	16
To form the Arch-Mould to the Hand-Rail that sweeps two Steps,	5 :	7 to 14 :	16,17

SECT. 6.

To describe Cavetto's, Cima, Scotia, Eggs, Anchors, &c.

TO describe Cavetto's	6 :	1,2,3,4 :	19
To describe Cima's	6 :	5,6,7, :	19
To deseribe Scotia's	6 :	8 9 10 11 :	19,20
To describe an Ovolo in the Shape of an Egg, and its side Ornaments	6	12,13,14	20

SECT. 7.

TO describe circular and oval Volutes, for *Ionic* Capitals	7 :	1 to 12 :	21,22

SECT.

The CONTENTS.

SECT. 8.

	Plate	Fig.	Page.
TO describe wreath'd Columns	8	1, 2	23
To flute Columns and Pilasters	1	1, 2, 3	24
Sir *Henry Wotton*'s Elements of Architecture	o	o	25
A Judgment in General on all the Authors cited in the Parallel	o	o	57

PART II.

	Plate	Fig.	Page.
A Practical Treatise on the five Orders of Architecture	o	o	59
To find the Height requir'd of a Statue or Figure elevated	60	o	63
Arcades of the five Orders	10 to 15	o	64
A Comparison of the two Scales made use of, *viz.* Modules and Feet	o	o	64
The Proportions of the General Heights, and Projectures of the Parts belonging to the five Orders, the Entablatures of each being ¼ of the height of the Column	16, 17	o	65
Two different Profiles of the *Tuscan* Order	18, 19	o	66
A Profile of the *Doric* Pedestal and Column	20	o	67
Two Profiles of the *Doric* Entablatures and Capital	21, 22	o	67
A Profile of the *Ionic* Pedestal and Column	23	o	67
The Antique *Ionic* Capital	24	o	67
Modern *Ionic* Capital	25	o	67
Ionic Entablature	26	o	67
Corinthian Pedestal, Base and Shaft of Column	27	o	67
Corinthian Capital	28	o	67
Corinthian Entablature	29	o	68
Composite Pedestal, Base and Shaft of Column	30	o	68
Composite Capital	31	o	68
Composite Entablature	32	o	68
Imposts and Arches to the *Doric*, *Ionic*, *Corinthian*, and Composite Orders	33	o	68

In the Orders following, the Entablatures to each are ¼ of the Height of the Column.

The *Tuscan* Order, with Impost and Arch	34	o	68
Two different Profiles of the *Doric* Order	35, 36	o	68
Ionic Order	37	o	68
Corinthian Order	38	o	68
Composite Order	39	o	68
Frontispiece of the *Tuscan* Order	40	o	68
Ditto of the *Doric* Order	41	o	68
Ditto, *Ionic* Order	42	o	68
Ditto, *Corinthian*	43	o	68
Rusticated Frontispieces, and Columns	44	o	69
Six different Designs of Windows ornamented	45	o	69
Two *Venetian* (and one Semi-circular headed) Windows	46	o	69
Mouldings (enrich'd and Plain) made use of to construct the Orders	47	o	69
Variety of Leaves, Roses, &c. made use of to construct Capitals	48	o	70
Intercolumnations, and of placeing Columns and Pilasters	49	o	70
Variety of Ballusters			
To diminish Columns			
To pitch Pedements			71
Enrichments for Freezes	50	o	72
Ionic and *Corinthian* Pedestals			
Pedestals for Statues, &c.	51	o	72
Ornaments of Fretts and Flowers	52	o	72
Compartiments for Domes, Soffites of Arches, &c.	53	o	72
Of the Proportion and Cieling of Rooms	54	o	73
Compartiments of Pavements	55	o	73
Obelisks	56	o	73

The CONTENTS.

PART III.

	Plate	Fig.	Page.
A Treatiſe on Stair-Caſes, with the different Forms Of Irregularities, and the Method to reform them	57	o	74
Three grand Stair-Caſes	58	o	75
	59	o	76

PART IV.

Practical Perſpective.

	Plate	Fig.	Page.
EXPLICATION of the Lines of the Plan and Horizon, &c.	60	o	79
To delineate a Square, Oblong, or double Square, in perſpective	61	1,2,3	80, 81
Plans of Squares, with their Elevations, and of delineating in Perſpective without Occult Lines	62	4 5	81, 82
Ditto, and to deſcribe Circles in Perſpective	63	6 7	82
The Projection of a Pedeſtal in Perſpective	64	o	83
Attick Baſe, *Ditto*	65	o	83
Shaft of a Column	66	o	84
Doric Capital	67	o	84
Corinthian Capital	68	o	84
Doric Entablature	69	o	85
Corinthian Entablature, Capital, and part of the Column	70	o	85
To deſcribe the *Tuſcan* Order compleat	71, 72	o	86
The Compoſite wreath'd Column compleat	73	o	86
To find on Geometrical Bodies, the Geometrical Places of their Lights, Shades and Shadows	74	o	87

PART V.

On the Proportion of Human Body, &c.

	Plate.	Page.
LEON, *Baptiſta Alberti* of Statues	75	88
Jo. Paul Lomatius of Statues. On the External Parts of Man's Body	oo	98
The Proportion of a Body of Seven Heads in Height	oo	100
A Body of Eight Heads in Height	oo	102
A Body of Nine Heads	oo	103
A Child of Six Heads	oo	105
A Child of Four Heads	oo	106
The Rule of the Deſign of Natural Motion, &c. by *Leo D'vinci*, &c.	76,77,78,79,80	107
Girard Audran, on the Proportion of Human Body	81 to 93	108
The *Farneſian* Hercules, is 7 Heads, 3 Parts, and 7 Minutes in Height	81	
Ditto, Side and Back	82, 83	
An *Egyptian* Term, 7 Heads, 1 Part, and 7 Minutes	84	
Venus Aphrodites, 7 Heads, 3 Parts	85	
Back, and other Side of *Ditto*	86	
Four Views of *Apollo Pythius*, 7 Heads, 3 Parts, and 6 Minutes	87, 88, 89, 90	
A Boy of Five Heads	91	
The Parts of the Face, of an Antique *Venus*, meaſured in the ſame Bigneſs as the Originals	92	
The Parts of the Face of an *Apollo*, Ditto	93	

PART

PART I.

A Treatiſe of Practical Geometry.

SECT. I.

To deſcribe Polygons, &c.

PROBLEM I. PLATE I. FIGURE I.

To erect a Perpendicular upon the middle of a given right Line.

ADMIT C be the point propoſed in the middle of the line AB.

Upon the given point C, deſcribe at pleaſure the ſemicircle DE, upon the points D & E, make the ſection I, from the point C, draw the line demanded C O, thro' the Section I. this line C O will be perpendicular to the line given A B, and erected upon the point propoſed C.

PROB. 2. FIG. 2.

To erect a Perpendicular, upon the Extremity of a given Line.

ADMIT *a b*, the line given, and *b* the point or end on which the perpendicular is to be raiſed.

From the point *b*, on the line *a b*, make five equal diviſions towards *a*, upon the point *b*, with four of thoſe diviſions as *b d*, deſcribe the arc *f*, upon the point *c*, with five diviſions as *b e*, deſcribe the arc *g*, from the point *b* thro' the interſection *f g*, draw the line *b h*, this line *b h* will be perpendicular to the line *a b* on the end *b*.

PROB. 3. FIG. 3.

Another Way to erect a Perpendicular upon the Extremity of a given Line.

ADMIT *a b* the given Line, and *a*, the point propoſed.

Upon the point *a*, deſcribe the arc *c f*, with the radius *a c*, from the point *c* towards *f* on the arc *c f*, make the points *d* & *e*, upon the points *d* & *e*, deſcribe the arcs *g* & *h*, from the point *a*, thro' the interſection *g h*, draw the line *a i*, which is the perpendicular propoſed.

PROB. 4. FIG. 4.

To let fall a Perpendicular upon a given Line, from a Point without the Line.

ADMIT C be the point from which a Line is to be let fall perpendicular to A B.

Upon the given point C, deſcribe at pleaſure the arch D E, cutting the line A B, in the points D & E, upon the points D & E, make the Section F, draw the line C F, and the line C O will be the line required.

Prob. 5. Fig. 5.

Through a given Point to draw a Line parallel to a given Line.

LET A be the given point through which a line is to be drawn parallel to the line B C,

Draw at pleaſure the oblique line A D, upon the point A, deſcribe the arc D E, upon the point D, deſcribe the arc A F, make the arc D G, equal to the arc A F, Draw the line required M N, thro' the points A G, which is the line required.

Prob. 6. Fig. 6.

To divide a given right Line into any Number of equal Parts.

LET AB be the line propoſed to be divided into ſix equal parts.

From the point A, draw at pleaſure the line A C, thro' the extremity B, draw the line B D, parallel to the line A C, from the points A & B, and along the lines A C & B D, Carry any ſix equal Parts, *viz. e f g h i k*, along the line A C, *r q p o n m* along the line B D, draw the lines *e n, f o, g p, h q, i r*, then the line A B will be divided into ſix equal parts at the Sections S, T, V, X, Y.

Prob. 7. Fig. 7.

To draw a ſpiral Line about a given Line.

LET I L be the line about which the ſpiral line is to be deſcribed.

Divide half the line I L, into as many equal parts as there are to be revolutions.

Example to make four Revolutions.

Divide the half B I, into four equal parts BC E G I, divide alſo BC into two equal parts in A, uqon the point A, deſcribe the ſemicircles BC, DE, FG, HI, upon the point B, deſcribe the ſemicircles C D, E F, G H, I L, and you will have the ſpiral required.

Prob. 8. Fig. 8.

To make an equilateral Triangle upon a given Line.

LET A B be the given line upon which the triangles is to be conſtructed.

Upon the extreme point A, with the radius A B, deſcribe the arc B D, upon the extremity B, with radius B A, deſcribe the arc A E, from the interſection C, draw the lines C A, C B; A B C will be the triangle required.

Prob. 9. Fig. 9.

To make a Triangle whoſe Sides are equal to three Lines given.

LET A, B, C, be the three lines given.

Draw the line D E, equal to the line A A, upon the point D, with the radius B B, deſcribe the arc G F, upon the point E, with the radius C C, deſcribe the arc H I, from the interſection O, draw the lines O E, O D, the triangle D E O, will be compoſed of three ſides, equal to the three ſides given A A, B B, C C.

Prob. 10. Fig. 10.

To make a Square upon a given right Line.

LET A B be the given line.

Erect the perpendicular A C, upon the point A, deſcribe the arc B C, upon the points B & C, with the radius A B, make the ſection D, from the point D, draw the lines D C, D B; A B C D is the ſquare which was to be conſtructed.

Prob. II. Fig. II.

To make a regular Pentagon upon a given right Line.

LET A B be the line given.

Upon the extremity A, and with the radius A B, Deſcribe the arc B D F, Erect the perpendicular A C, Divide the arc, into five equal Parts I D L M B, Draw the line A D, divide the baſe A B, into two equal parts in O, Erect the Perpendicular O E, upon the Interſection E, with the radius E A, Deſcribe the circle A B F G H, Carry round five times, the line A B, in the circumference of the circle, and a regular equiangular equilateral Pentagon, will be compleated.

Prob. 12. Fig. 12.

To make a regular Hexagon upon a given right Line.

LET A B be the line propoſed.

Upon the extremities A & B, and with the radius A B, Deſcribe the arcs A C, B C, upon the Section C, Deſcribe the circle A B E F G, Carry ſix times the line given A B, in the circumference, and you will have a regular Hexagon A B E G F D, upon the given line A B.

Prob. 13. Fig. 13.

Upon a given right line to deſcribe any Polygon from an Hexagon to a Dodecagon.

LET A B be a line upon which an Hexagon, Heptagon, or Octagon, *&c.* is to be made.

Biſect the line A B in the Point O, erect the perpendicular O I, upon the Point B deſcribe the arc A C, divide A C into ſix equal Parts M, N, P, Q R. *This is to be done if an Heptagon be to be made.* Upon the Point C with the interval, of one Part C M, deſcribe the arc M D, D will be the center for deſcribing a circle capable of containing ſeven times the line given. *For an Octagon.* Upon the center C, with the interval, of two Parts C N, Deſcribe the arc N E, E will be the center of a circle capable of containing eight times the given line A B. *For an Enneagon.* Take three parts C P, *and ſo for the reſt adding one part.*

Prob. 14. Fig. 14.

To make a Polygon of any Number of Sides from Twelve to Twenty Four, upon a given right Line.

LET A B be the line upon which the Polygon is to be made.

Divide the arc A C, into twelve equal Parts from the Point C, take as many of the parts of C A, as the Number of the ſides of the Polygon is above twelve. *Example* if you would deſcribe a Polygon of fifteen ſides. Upon the point C, with the radius of three of theſe Parts C E, deſcribe the arc E O, A C *of twelve*, C O *of three together make fifteen.* Upon the Point O with the radius O B, deſcribe the arc B F, Upon the point F with the the radius F A, deſcribe a Circumference, and it will contain the line given A B, fifteen Times. *And ſo alſo for any other Polygon.*

Prob. 15. Fig. 15.

To find the Center of a given Circle.

LET A B C be the Circle propoſed, whoſe Center is to be found.

Draw at Pleaſure the right Line A B, terminating in the circumference A B C, Biſect the right line A B, by the Line D C, Biſect alſo the line C D in the Point F, the Point F will be the center of the Circle required A B C.

Prob. 16. Fig. 16.

To describe an Oval upon a given Length.

Let A B be the given length upon which the Oval is to be made.

Divide the line A B, into three equal parts A C D B, upon the Points C & D, with the radius C A, Describe the circles A E F, B E F, upon the intersections B & F, and with the diameter E I, as a radius, describe the arcs I H, O P; A I H B P O will be the Oval requir'd.

Prob. 17. Fig. 17.

To find the Center and the two Diameters of an Oval.

Let A B C D be the Oval proposed whose Center and Diameters are to be found.

In the Oval proposed A B C D, draw at Pleasure the two parallel lines, A N, H I, Bisect the lines A N, H I, in the points L & M, Draw the line P L M O, Bisect it in E, and the Point E will be the center. Upon the point E, Describe at pleasure the circle F G Q, cutting the Oval in F & G, thro' the intersections F & G, Draw the right line F G, Bisect it in R, Draw the greatest diameter B D, thro' the Points E R, Thro' the center E, Draw the least diameter A E C, parallel to the line F G, and what was proposed will be effected.

Prob. 18. Fig. 18.

To describe an Elliptick Arch by the Tramel, the Length and Height being given.

Let A B C i represent the Tramel, the leg C i being at right angles with the head A B, in each there is a groove (as represented in the midst of each by the strong black lines) for the pins e, & f, which are fastened to the rule D M, of a length greater than i K, the pins e & f, must be fixt at such Distance, that when a pencil, *&c.* is put thro' a hole at g, the length e g is equal to i K, the half of the base line of the arch, and the length f g equal to i H the height the arch is to rise.

Operation.

Fix the Head of the Tramel A B, on the length of the arch K L, and the pencil point g, at the point K, and the pins f & e in the grooves A B & i C, with one hand move the pencil g, and with the other guide the pins f, & e, in their respective grooves, till the pencil g comes to L, which will describe the required arch K H L.

Sect. 2. Plate I.

To describe Arches, Ovals, &c. *by the Intersection of right Lines.*

Prob. 19. Fig: 19.

To describe a Gothick Arch reverse by Intersection of right Lines:

Let *a*, *b*, be the base of the arch proposed, and *e*, *d* the height required.

Draw the line *e*, *c*, perpendicular to the Line *a b*, from the midst *e*, double to the height proposed *e d*, from the extremities *a* & *b*, draw the lines *a c* & *b c*, divide the lines *a c* & *b c* each into an equal Number of equal Parts at pleasure (the greater the number is, the exacter will the work be) admit 18, then if streight

ſtreight lines are drawn from the Points of diviſion 1, 2, 3, 4, *&c.* of the line a c to the correſpondent points of diviſion 1, 2, 3, 4, *&c.* of the line c b, the points of interſection will be in the arch required.

Prob. 20. Fig. 20.

To deſcribe a Segment of a Circle by Interſection, &c.

PROCEED as in the Gothick arch reverſed, and the ſegment will be completed.

To find the different Compreſſure or Thruſt of Arches according to their Height, whereby the thickneſs of walls or piers are found capable to ſupport the ſubtending arch. Divide the Segment *a d b*, into three equal parts, as *a f*, *f g*, & *g b*, Continue the occult line *g b*, to *h*, ſo that *b h* be equal to *b g*, upon the point *b* let fall the perpendicular *b k*, which is the inſide of the wall required, thro' the point *b* draw the line *i l* parallel to *b k*, and *b i* is the thickneſs of the wall or peer required. In the ſame manner proceed for any other arch, as Fig. 21, 22, & 25. or any other arch propoſed.

Prob. 21. Fig. 21.

To deſcribe an Elliptick Arch to any Width or Height propoſed.

LET *a b* be the width, upon the points of extremity *a* and *b*, raiſe the perpendiculars *a c* and *b d* equal to the height propoſed, draw the line *c d* parallel to *a b*, divide the line *c d* in half at *e*, divide *a c* & *b d*, *c e* & *e d*, each into the ſame number of equal parts, and draw the correſpondent interſecting lines, according to the 19th Problem, and the arch *a e b* will be deſcribed.

Prob. 22. Fig. 22.

To deſcribe the Gothick Arch by Interſection of right Lines.

LET *a b* be the width, and *f e* the height propoſed.

Upon the extremities *a* & *b*, erect the perpendiculars *a c* & *b d*, each equal to half the height propoſed, *f e*, draw the lines *e c* & *e d*, divide *a c* and *b d*, *e c* & *e d*, each into the ſame number of equal parts, and draw the correſpondent interſecting lines as before directed, and the arch *a e b* will be deſcribed.

N. B. *If the Arch is required to be quicker or flatter on the Hauſe, it is but lengthening or ſhortening the perpendicular lines a c & b d.*

Prob. 23. Fig. 23.

To deſcribe the Gothick Arch rampant.

DRAW the occult line *a g*, the horizontal width of the arch required, on the middle at *f*, raiſe the perpendicular *f e*, upon the points *a* & *g* raiſe the perpendiculars *a c* & *g d*, make *g b* equal to the height of the ramp, and draw the line *a b*, make *b e* equal to the height of the arch required, and *a c* & *b d* equal each to the half of *b e*, draw the lines *c e* & *e d*, divide *a c* & *c e*, *e d* & *d b*, each into the ſame number of equal parts, draw the correſpondent interſecting lines as before directed, and the arch required will be deſcribed.

Prob. 24. Fig. 24.

To deſcribe the Elliptical Arch rampant.

DRAW the occult line *a f*, on the middle at *g*, raiſe the perpendicular *g d*, upon the points *a* & *f* raiſe the perpendiculars *a c* & *f e*, make *f b* equal to the height of the ramp, and draw the line *a b*, make the height *a c* & *b e*, equal to the height of the arch required, draw the line *c e*, divide the lines *a c*, *c d*, & *d e*, *e b*, each into the ſame number of equal parts, draw the Correſpondent interſecting lines as before directed, and the arch required will be deſcribed.

Prob. 25. Fig. 25.

To describe the Gothick Arch reverse another Way.

DRAW *a b* equal to the base intended, and *c d* parallel to *a b*, and of distance equal to the height of the arch required, and in length equal to the half of *a*, *b*, and proceed as for Fig. 21, and the arch will be completed.

Prob. 26. Fig. 26 & 30.

To describe an Oval.

THE Transverse and Conjugate Diameters being given, and bisected in the middle at right angles, proceed as by Fig. 21. and the Ovals required will be described.

Prob. 27. Fig. 27.

To describe an Arch of equal Height to a Semi-circle, *but of a longer Distent.*

ADMIT *c g d* to be a *Semi-circle*, and *a b* the length required for an arch to rise, equal to the semicircle, draw *e f* parallel to *a b*, make *e f* equal to *c d*, and proceed as for Fig. 25, and the arch required will be completed.

Prob. 28. Fig. 28.

To describe an Oval smaller at one End than the other.

LET the Transverse and Conjugate Diameters be given, as *a b* & *h g*, and bisecting each other in the middle, draw *e c* and *f d* parallel to *h g*, make *f*, *d*, equal to three fourths of *h*, *g*, thro' the points *f h* & *d g* draw the lines *f e* & *d c*, and proceed as in Fig. 26 and 30, and the Oval will be described which was required.

Prob. 29. Fig. 29.

To describe an Oblique Oval.

ADMIT *a b*, *a e*, *e f* & *f b* to be the sides of a Rhomboid, within which is to be inscribed an Oval.

Draw the Transverse Diameter *c d*, parallel to *a b* & *e f*, and the Conjugate Diameter *g h* parallel to *a e* & *b f*, and proceed as in Fig. 26, 28, or 30, and the Oval required will be described.

Plate. I. *Page VI* *Fig I*

I. II. III. IIII. V. VI. VII. VIII. IX. X. XI. XII. XIII. XIIII. XV. XVI. XVII. XVIII. XIX. XX. XXI. XXII. XXIII. XXIIII. XXV. XXVI. XXVII. XXVIII. XXVIIII. XXX.

F. Oakley Delin

B. Cole Sculp

SECT. 3. PLATE 2.

To describe Circles, Ovals, Rampant Arches, &c. by the Intersection of parallel Lines, to describe an Ellipsis: To describe Ovals, Rampant and Gothick Arches, generated by Segments of Circles.

PROB. 1. FIG. 1.

To describe a Circle by parallel Lines.

DESCRIBE the square *b e g n*, equal to the Diameter of the Circle proposed, Draw the diagonals *b o g* & *e o n*, draw the diameters 1, *o*, 3 & 4, *o*, 2, thro' the intersection o, and at right angles with *n b* & *n g*, divide *b* 4 & 4 *n*, *n* 1 & 1, 9, each into two equal parts, by the lines *d y*, *t o*, *f r*, *l q*, at right angles with each other, upon each angle of the square, on the sides set 1-15 of the diameter, as *b a*, *b c*, *&c.* thro' which draw the lines *a f*, *c m*, *v w*, *z &*, upon each angle on each diagonal set 1-7 of their length *b o g*, or *e o n*, as 5, 6, 7, 8, thro' the points 1, *l*, 5, *o*, 2, *p*, 6, *q*, 3, *i*, 7, *b*, 4, *t*, 8, *k*, 1, Trace the Circle desired.

PROB. 2. FIG. 2.

To describe an Oval.

DESCRIBE the Oblong *b e*, & *e g*, equal to the Transverse and Conjugate Diameters, and proceed as in the former, and the oval required may be traced.

PROB. 3. FIG. 3.

To describe a Rampant Arch.

THE Base 4, *o*, 2, being given, raise the perpendiculars 4, *b*, & 2, *e*, equal to the height of the intended arch, draw the line *b e* parallel to the base, and proceed as in the former, and the arch will be described.

PROB. 4. FIG. 4.

To describe an Actual Ellipsis.

LET the Transverse Diameter 4, *o*, 2, and the Conjugate Diameter 3, *o*, 1, be given, bisecting each other at right angles.

With the Interval *o*, 4, upon the point 3, on the line 4, *o*, 2, make the points *d*, *b*, in the Points *d* & *b* fix two pins or nails, *&c.* then with a string encompass *d b* 3, and by turning this string 3 *d b*, of equal force about the points *d b*, in such manner that its sides remain bent, will describe the Ellipsis 3, 2, 1, 4, 3.

PROB. 5. FIG. 5.

To describe an Oval at opening of the Compass.

ADMIT 4, *o*, 2 to be the Transverse, and 3, *o*, 2 the Conjugate Diameters given.

With the Interval *o*, 3 or *o*, 1, on *o*, 4 and *o*, 2, make the points *o d* and *o b*, draw the line 3, 2, and from the point 3 raise the line 3, 5, perpendicular to 3, 2, to intersect *o*, 4, and the interval *o*, 5 will be the diameter 4 *d* and 2 *b*, to describe the small arches 6, 2, 7,

and 8, 4, 9, make 3, *c*, equal to *d* 4, and draw the line *c d*, divide *c d* in the midſt by the perpendicular *e a*, and where it interſects 3, *a*, draw the line *a d g*, and with the interval *a* 3, deſcribe the arch 7, 3, 9, and do the like for that below, and the oval will be deſcribed.

Prob. 6. Fig. 6.

To deſcribe an Oval another Way.

ON the line *o* 3, make the point *c* at pleaſure, with the interval 3, *c*, from 4 to *o* make the point *d*, and from 2 to *o* make the point *b*, which will deſcribe the arches 6,2,7, and 8, 4, 9, draw the line *c d*, which interſect at right angles by *e*, *a*, and from the interſection 3, *a*, thro' the points *d*, *b*, draw the lines *a*, *d*, *g*, and *a*, *b*, 7, and with the interval *a*, 3, deſcribe the arch 7, 3, 9, and do the like for that below, and the oval will be generated.

Prob. 7. Fig. 7.

To deſcribe the Variations of Circles, Ovals and Rampants between the ſame Parallels.

VIZ. *m*, M, C, and H, *h*, F, are Parallels, *r*, *o*, *t*; T O R; N, O, P, are the Tranſverſe diameters of the Oval and diameter of the Circle; X, O, V, the Conjugate diameter of the ſmall oval, and *u*, *o*, *x*, and 1, *o*, 2, the Conjugates of the two Ramps, H 2 K R M O H, and *m*, *u*, K, P, *h*, *o*, *m*, are equal to one another on each ſide K, k.

Prob. 8. Fig. 8.

To deſcribe a Rampant Arch between the Parallels H, F, *and* M, C, *and from Three given Points.*

LET the points given be H, K, M, Draw the line H, O, M, on the middle at O draw the perpendicular O K, parallel to H F and M C, draw the line F K C, parallel to H O M, draw the line F O, make the point F x equal to 2.7 of F O, draw a line from x to H, biſect x H at right angles by 5, A, raiſe a perpendicular from F H, on the point H, and the interſection on the line 5, A, will be the center to the arch H, x, 2. From the point A, thro' the point M, draw the line A, 2, on the line C M on the point M raiſe the perpendicular M B, make M B equal to H A, and from the point A draw a line to the point B, which will give a conjugate diameter *t*, *r*. Biſect A, B, in the midſt will give a Tranſverſe diameter T, O, R. The Interſectioo of T, R, and A, 2, will be the center of the ſmall circle to deſcribe the arch 2 K R V, draw a line from B thro' the interſection L, which will determine the arch 2 K R V, and the center B with the interval B V or B M complete the ramp at M.

Plate 3. Prob. 9. Fig. 9.

Another Way to deſcribe a Rampant Arch between Parallels.

THIS differs not from the former, except in finding the conjugate diameter *t*, *o*, *r*, which is found by biſecting at right angles H K, by the perpendicular S A, which interſects K A and H A, at the point A, A K is equal to A H, with the interval A K or A H deſcribe the arch K *t* H, upon the interſection L with the interval L K, deſcribe the arch K R V, and with the interval B V, deſcribe the arch V M, which compleats the ramp intended.

Plate II

Page VIII

Fig II

Fig I

Fig V

Fig III

Fig IV

Fig VI

Fig VII.

a Circle in Horizontal Perspective

Fig VIII

Diameter

Conjugate

Diameter

Tranfvers

a Circle in Vertical Perspective

E. Oakley Delin.

B. Cole Scul.

Prob. 10. Fig. 10.

Another Way to deſcribe a Rampant Arch.

THIS is performed by the ſame method as Prob. 8. the difference is in Biſecting *x* K at right angles by S A, interſecting K A at A, the point 2 is on the contrary ſide of K to that of Fig. 8. ſo that the ſmall arch 2 R M beginneth at the point 2, and terminates at M, (the line S A does not interſect the horizontal lines H *r* and M F at the centers A and B) H *u* is made with the interval V M of the arch V M R 2. The Tranſverſe diameter T O R, biſects the horizontal lines H *r* and M F. The centers for ſmall circles are L, *l*, and the intervals to deſcribe them are *l* H or L 2. K A is perpendicular to the line F K C. K A is the interval to deſcribe the arch H *u t* K 2.

Prob. 11. Fig. 11, 12, 13 & 14.

To deſcribe Rampant Arches.

THESE Rampants are generated on the foregoing principles, and therefore needs not a repetition of deſcription; they are the more perceptible by being all deſcribed by Letters, and with the ſame Letters and Figures as the former; only obſerve Fig. 13. at pleaſure make *t x* equal to H L, and biſect L *x* by S A, and upon the center A deſcribe the great arc *u*, *t*, V.

Prob. 12. Fig. 15.

To deſcribe a Rampant Arch another Way.

TO find the Tranſverſe and Conjugate Diameters is as in the foregoing. To find how to deſcribe the circular part V K *u* to join the ſmall circles H *u* and M V in the points *u* and V, on the Diagonal F O, make the point *x* equal to 2-7 of F O, biſect the interval K *x* by S A, and the interſection A on the line t A by the line S A, is the center to deſcribe the arc *x*, K, *y*, on the arc K, *x*, at pleaſure mark the point N, draw the line N A, on the point N, make N, 2, equal to H L. Draw the line 2, L, biſect 2 L at right angles by S B, and B the Interſection of S B on N, A, will be the center to deſcribe N, *x*, *u*, and L is the Center to deſcribe *u* H, the ſame is to be obſerved on the other ſide of the Conjugate Diameter *t*, *r*, and the arch required will be completed.

Prob. 12. Fig. 16.

To find a Rampant Arch between Lines not Parallel.

PROCEED to find the Tranſverſe and Conjugate Diameters as by the foregoing Problems, and the reſt may be completed as by Inſpection, the ſame Lines and Figures being made uſe of as heretofore.

Prob. 13. Fig. 17.

To deſcribe a Gothick Arch on a Line given.

ADMIT AB, the given line, on A with the Interval A B, deſcribe the arc B, *d*, upon the point B with the Interval B A deſcribe the arc A *e*, and the Interſection *c* will complete the arch required A C B.

Prob. 14. Fig. 18.

To deſcribe the Gothick Arch another Way.

ADMIT A B the line on which the arch is to be deſcribed.

Divide A B into three equal parts at the points C, and D, on the point C with

the Interval B, deſcribe the arc B, *f*, upon the point D with the Interval A deſcribe the arc A *g*, and the Interſection E will complete the arch required A E B.

Prob. 15. Fig. 19.

To deſcribe the Gothick Arch another Way.

ADMIT A B the line on which the arch is to be deſcribed.

Divide A B into three equal parts at the points C and D, from the points A and B let fall the perpendiculars A E and B F equal to A D and B C, Thro' the points F C and E D draw lines of length at pleaſure, on the points C and D with the Interval A C or D B deſcribe the arcs A G and B H, Upon the points E and F with the Interval E H or F G deſcribe the arcs H K and G L, and the Interſection will complete the arch required, A, G, I, H, B.

Prob. 16. Fig. 20.

To deſcribe the Gothick Arch another Way.

DIVIDE A B ito three equal parts at C and D, upon the points A C D B, with the Interval A D, deſcribe four arcs, and thro' the Interſection E and the point D draw the line E D H, thro' the Interſection F and the point C draw the line F C G, upon the points C and D with the Interval C A or D B deſcribe the arcs A G and B A, and upon the points of Interſections E and F deſcribe the arcs H K and G L, and the Interſection I will complete the arch required, A G I H B.

Prob. 17. Fig. 21.

Another Way to deſcribe a Gothick Arch.

DIVIDE A B into five equal parts, upon the points A, C, D, B, with the Interval A D deſcribe the four arcs, and proceed as before, and the arch required will be completed.

Sect. 4. Plate 4.

To deſcribe the Angle or Miter Arch of regular or irregular Groins. To deſcribe a Center for a Semicircular Window in a Circular Wall, of the Formation of Niches, &c.

Prob. 1. Fig. 1.

To find the Angle or Miter Bracket of a Cove.

DRAW the Baſe A B, upon A draw A D at right angles and equal to A B, draw the line D B, continue the line D A to C, make A C equal to A B, upon the point A with the Interval B deſcribe the arc B C, upon the points B D draw B E and D F at right angles with the line B D, and equal to A D or A C, draw the line F E. Divide A B into any number of equal parts, (the greater the number is, the exacter will the work be) and thro' the diviſions of them draw lines parallel to A C and on the arc B C, continue them to the line B D, from the diviſions on the line D B, draw lines parallel to D F and B E, make the perpendiculars on D B equal to thoſe on

Plate III

Page X

Fig. XII.

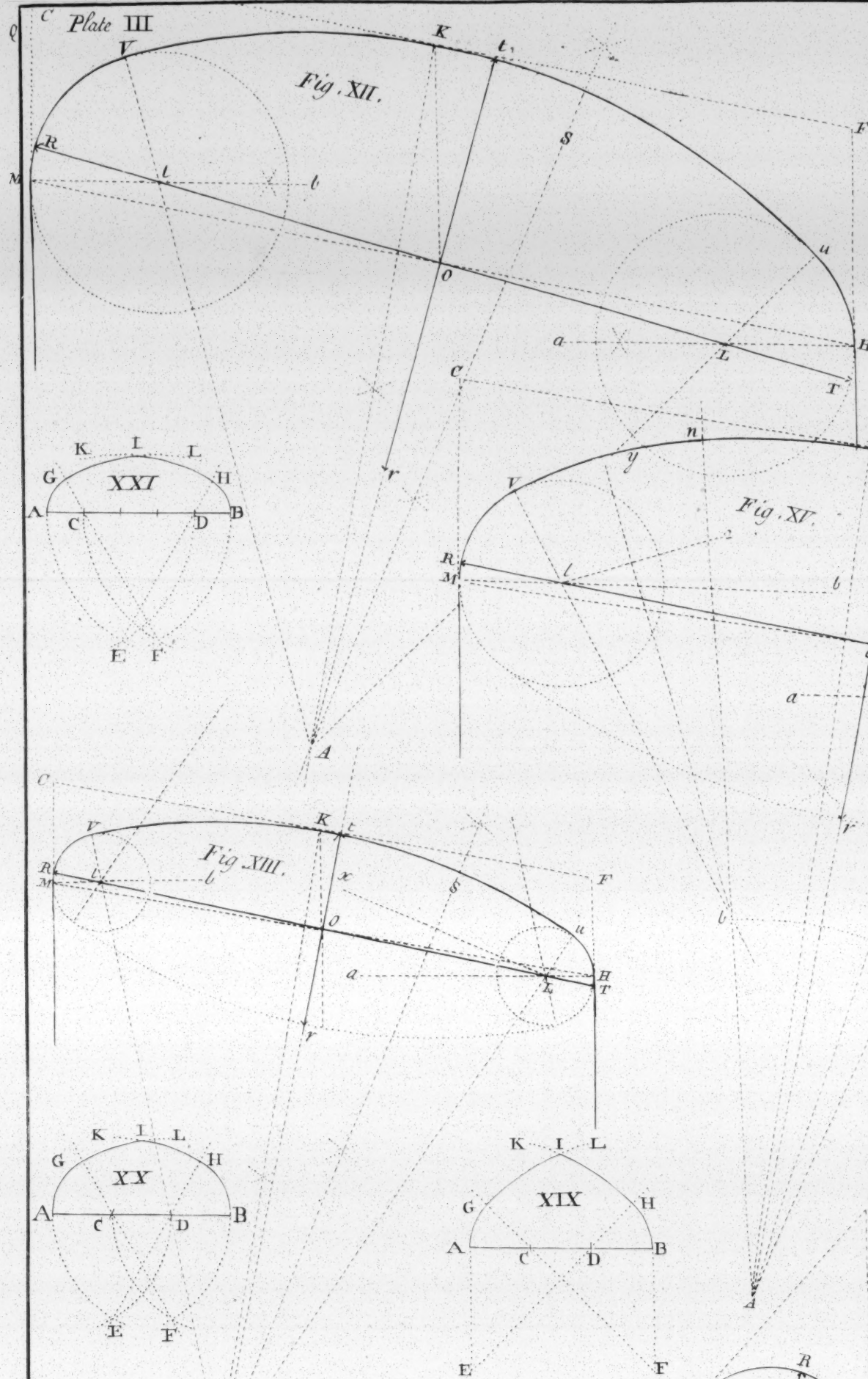


Fig. XI.

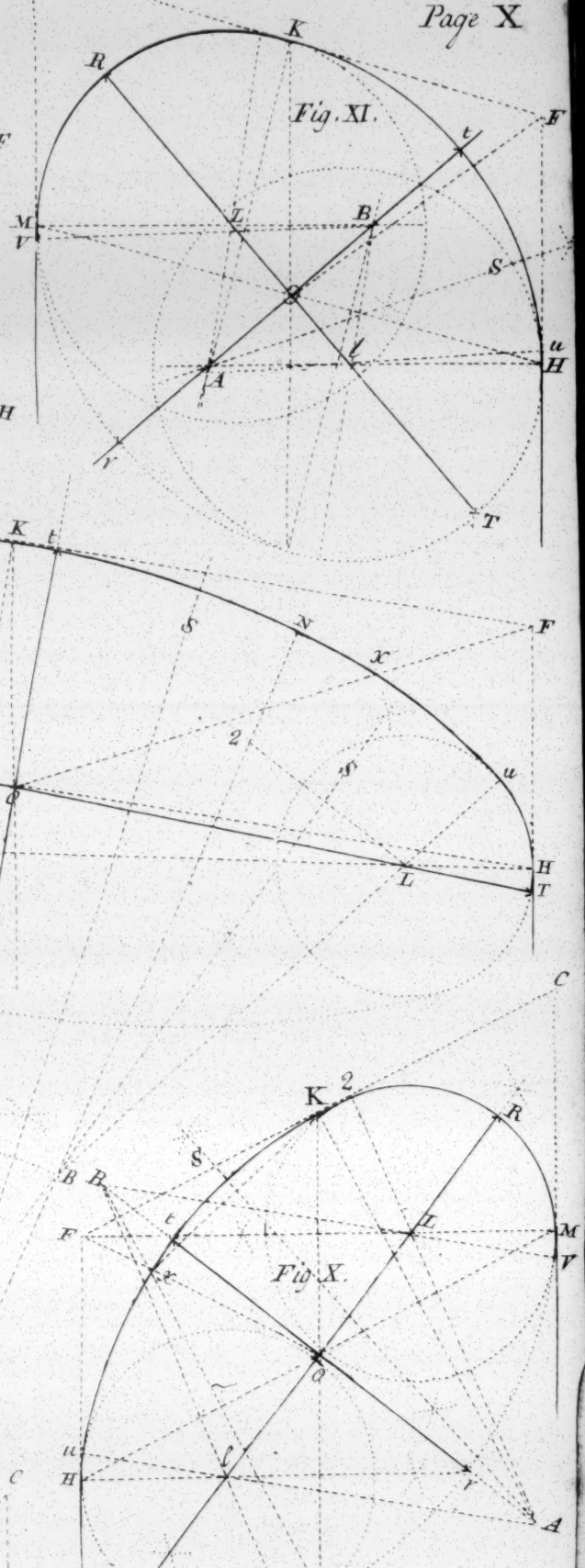
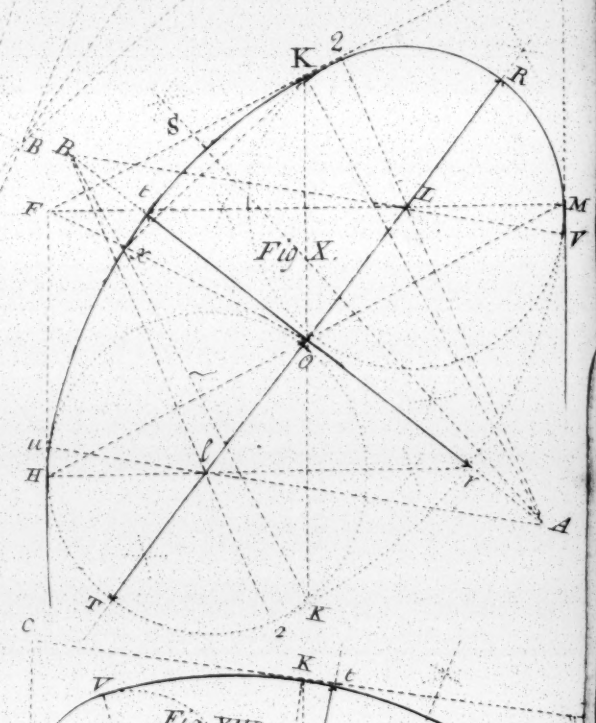


Fig. XIII.

Fig. XIV.



XXI

XX

XIX

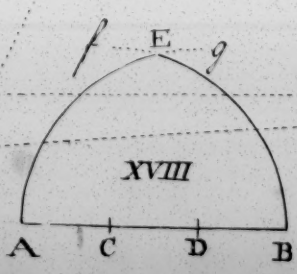
Fig. XV.

Fig. XVI.

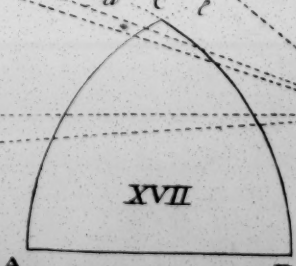
Fig. IX.

Fig. XVII.

XVIII



XVII



B. Cole sculp.

E. Oakly delin.

on A B terminating in the arc B C, thro' the points on the perpendiculars from B D deſcribe the arc F B by a bended rule, *&c.* which will be the Miter required.

Prob. 2. Fig. 2.

If the leſſer Arch of an irregular Groin be a given Semi-circle, *it is required to form a larger one,* (*not a* Semi) *ſo that the Interſection of the two Arches ſhall make the Groins from the Angle hang perpendicular over its Baſe.*

ADMIT A B C D to be the ſpringing Walls upon which the arches are to be raiſed, and A E C the given ſemicircular Arch.

Draw the line B C, continue the lines A C to I and B D to K, on B and C raiſe the perpendiculars B O and C N, make B K, A I, C N and B O each equal to the height of the given Semicircle, as F E. Draw the lines K I and N O. Divide A C into any Number of equal parts, thro' the Diviſions on A C draw lines parallel to A B and C D terminating in the ſemicircle A E C and on the Diagonal C B, from the points on C B raiſe perpendiculars parallel to C N, and B O, and to B K and A I, and the lines L M and *g* H will be equal to F E, make the lines on each ſide of L on B C, and on each ſide of *g* on A B, equal in height to the correſponding lines on each ſide of F on A C, thro' which points Deſcribe the arches A H B and B M C which are the Arch and Groin required. *N. B.* The Arch B, M, C, ſerves likewiſe for the Diagonal D, A.

Prob. 3. Fig. 3.

Having one Center given for an Rhombus Groin, *to Deſcribe the other, that the Interſection ſhall conſtruct the Miter Arch, perpendicular over the Baſe.*

DRAW the Diagonals A D and B C, admit A F B to be the Center given, proceed as by the former on the four Sides and the two Diagonals, and the Groins required will be conſtructed.

Prob. 4. Fig. 4.

The Arch-line of a Cieling, or Vault, ſuppoſed to be ſemicircular, being given: To form the Curve of a leſſer Arch, that ſhall interſect the Side thereof, for the Reception of Doors or Windows, ſo that their Interſection ſhall produce the Groin to hang perpendicularly over its Baſe, alſo to form the Curve thereof.

ADMIT A B C D to be the angles of the ſpringing Walls.

Deſcribe the Semicircles A O B and C L D, on the ſide B D ſet off the ſpand of the interſecting arch V, t, upon the points V and t raiſe the perpendiculars V r and t u, equal to the intended height of the interſecting Arch, draw the line r u, divide r u, in the middle at z, draw z y parallel to r V and u t, produce z y at pleaſure from the point y, on the line A B at the point g ſet the height z y on the arch B O A at the point h, produce h g till it interſect z y at the point x, from the point x, draw the lines x v, & x t, on the points x and t, raiſe the perpendiculars x w and t ſ, equal to g h draw the line w ſ, divide B g into any number of equal parts. Thro' the diviſions on B g, draw parallels to g h, on the arc B h and the line x v, from the diviſionary points on the line x v by the lines from B g, on V y raiſe perpendiculars to z r and parallel to y z and v r, raiſe on the ſame number of equal parts on y t and t x perpendiculars parallel to y z, t u and t ſ, x w, ſet the length of the lines from B g to the arc B h, upon the perpendiculars correſpondent from y v to z r, from y t to z u, from x t to w ſ, thro' the points ſet off on the parallels, you may deſcribe the arches required, (as in the foregoing Example) V z t and w t, V z t is the interſecting arch, and w t the Curve-line of the Groin that is correſpondent thereto: After the ſame manner the arches K m z and K P are drawn.

Prob. 5. Fig. 5.

The Arch of a Circular Wall being given, wherein a Semicircular Window is to ſtand; to form a Center to turn their Arches.

ADMIT A F B to be the given arch of the circular wall deſcribed by the Center E. From the Center E, raiſe the perpendicular E F, at right angles to A B, equally on each ſide E F on the arch A F B, ſet the width of the window propoſed C D, draw L M parallel and equal to C D, divide L M at N, upon the point N with the interval L or M deſcribe the Semicircle L O M, divide L N into any number of equal parts, produce E F thro' the point N to O, from the points of diviſion on L N draw perpendiculars parallel to E O, and bounding on the arcs L O and C F, from the point F draw F G parallel and equal to H D, draw the line H G. Continue the line H E to I equal to H G, on the point C let fall the perpendicular C K equal and parallel to H I, draw the line I K, divide H C into an equal number of equal parts to the line L N, from the points of Diviſion on H C, draw lines to I K parallel to H I and C K, from the diviſionary points on the arc C F as continned from L N draw lines parallel to C D and equal to the correſponding lines on the line L N to the arc L O, from the diviſionary points on C H, draw right lines to the extreme points of the lines from C F, ſet the length of the lines from C H to the lines from the arc C F, on the line H C to the line I K, as H I is equal to H G and ſo on towards C, and thro' the points ſet off on the lines from H C towards I K deſcribe the arc C I, which when ſet in its due poſition, will hang perpendicular over the arch C F.

Prob. 6. Fig. 6 & 7.

The Center whereon the Arch of a Bow-window is turned being given, to find another Center that will be parallel to it, according to the upper Edge of the Surface of the Arch.

DESCRIBE B K C by the laſt Problem, ſet the width or flat ſurface of the arch from B to A, and from C to D, draw the lines A D and B C, divide them in the midſt at E F, draw the perpendicular of length at pleaſure to H, in any convenient place (Fig. 7.) draw a line at pleaſure, as A G, upon the point A raiſe the perpendicular A F, then take E I, in (Fig. 6.) and ſet it from A to B (Fig. 7.) and E F from B to C, take the Semidiameter B E or E C (Fig. 6) and ſet it from A to D (Fig. 7.) alſo take A B or C D (Fig. 6.) and ſet it from D to E (Fig. 7.) and draw the line E C, upon the point F with the length C E on the line I H make the point g. Take the width of the flat ſurface of the arch A B or C D, and ſet it on K to 7 on the line E H, and divide the remainder from 7 to g into ſeven equal parts, divide the arch B K into ſeven equal parts take K 1, on the line E H, upon the point 1 on the arc B K with the interval K 1 deſcribe the arc 1 at pleaſure; with the interval K 2 on E H, upon the point 2 on the arc B K deſcribe the arc 2, alſo take K 3, K 4, K 5 and K 6, ſeverally, and deſcribe the arcs 3, 4, 5 and 6; divide on thoſe arcs from A to g in ſeven equal Diviſions, and thro' the points of thoſe equal Diviſions, according to Prob. 1. deſcribe the arc A g, and in like manner may be drawn the arc D g, which completes the arch-line required.

Of the Formation of Niches.

Prob. 7. Fig. 8.

To form a Semi-circular Nich with Ribs, as is uſual when it is to be plaiſtered.

DESCRIBE the Semicircular Plate A B C, and the ſemicircular front-rib A D B equal to A B C, fix the plate A C B level in the place where it is to continue, upon

on A B ſet the front-rib A D B perpendicular, deſcribe the Quandrantal Ribs, D C, D e, D F, D G, and D H, each equal to A D, or B D, and at a convenient diſtance on the Plate A C B, and at C, E, F, G and H, ſo as to meet in one point at D on the Crown of the front-rib A D B, which finiſheth one half of the work; and after the ſame manner the reſt may be completed.

Prob. 8. Fig. 9.

To form a Semi-circular Nich by the Thickneſſes of Boards, or Planks, and to find the Bevels to each Thickneſs.

DESCRIBE the Semicircle on the front of the Nich A D B, divide the height e D into equal parts, according to the thickneſs of the board or plank of which you deſign to make the nich. Deſcribe the thickneſs from whence the Bevels are taken, and draw lines at the end of the prick'd lines in the example; take the prick'd line 1, 2, in your compaſſes, on the under ſide of the board or plank of which you deſign to make the firſt thickneſs, deſcribe a Semicircle from 1 equal to A D B, the Semi-diameter being equal to the prick'd line 1, 2. Strike a ſquare ſtroke on the edge from 1, to find the center for the ſemicircle on the upper ſide of the firſt Thickneſs, as at 3, take the prick'd line 3, 4; upon the point 3, deſcribe the ſemicircle whoſe ſemi-diameter is equal to the prick'd line 3, 4, an Arch being deſcribed on each ſide of the firſt thickneſs, with a narrow turning ſaw cut directly thro' the arch-line on each ſide of the board, or plank, and ſo you will have the true Bevel and Curve thereof. To deſcribe the bevel of the ſecond thickneſs, deſcribe the ſemicircle laſt drawn on the under ſide theteof, as you did on the upper ſide of the firſt thickneſs, 3, 4, being the ſemi-diameter. Strike a ſquare ſtroke from 3 on the edge of the board, or plank, to find the Center for the ſemicircle on the upper ſide of this ſecond thickneſs, upon the point 5 with the Interval 5, 6, on the upper ſide of the ſecond thickneſs deſcribe the circle, whoſe ſemi-diameter is equal to 5, 6, with a turning ſaw cut thro' the two arches in the firſt thickneſs, and the arch-line and bevel of the ſecond thickneſs will be given. To find the arch-line and bevel of the third thickneſs, you are to proceed as in the firſt and ſecond thickneſs, and ſo of the others. Having your thickneſs all ready, accor[d]ing to their true arches and bevels, ſet them in good and well made glue, letting it ſtand till it be quite dry, and with a compaſs ſmoothing plane, a little quicker than the arch of the work, plane the inſide thereof till it be fit for the purpoſe deſign'd.

Prob. 9. Fig. 10, 11, 12.

To form an Elliptical Nich by Ribs for plaiſtering, &c.

DESCRIBE Fig. 11. the plate on which the ribs are to ſtand, K, n, m, being a Semi-ellipſis equal to A D B or A e B, the prick'd lines l n, l o, l p, l q, l r and l m, repreſents the baſe lines of the ribs D e, D f, D g, D h, D i and D B. Deſcribe Fig. 12. the lines s t, s u, s v, s w, s x and s y, are baſe lines, and the perpendiculars a t, b u, c v, d w, ex and fy, repreſent the riſing of the ribs e D, f D, g D, h D, i D and B D, which is equal in length to C D; obſerving, that within thoſe lines the different arch of each rib is to be deſcribed, *viz.* the arch s a is a Quadrant of a Circle, having t for its center, and is equal to the arch of the rib e D. The lines u s, s z, equal to z b, b u, are the Semi-tranſverſe and Conjugate Axes of a Semi-ellipſis, whoſe arch s b is equal to the arch of the rib f D, which may be deſcribed either by the Tramel or Interſection of lines. The lines s z, s v, equal to v c, c z, are the Semi-tranverſe and Conjugate Axes of a Semi-ellipſis, whoſe Arch is equal to the Arch of the Kib g D, and ſo proceed for the reſt.

Having the Ribs all ready, ſet the front-rib A D B perpendicular on the Plate A e B, as at A B, and fix the feet of the ſhort ribs on the plate A e B, as at e, f, g, h, i, which correſpond with the points n, o, p, q, r, and their points a, b, c, d, e, to the crown of the front-rib at D; and thus may the intended work be completed.

PROB. 10. FIG. 13, 14, 15, 16.

To form an Elliptical Nich by the Thicknesses of Boards, or Planks.

DESCRIBE the Figures 13, 14, 15 and 16, according to foregoing Problems. The Arch A B C and f g h being Semi-ellipses equal to each other. The arch l n is a Quadrant of a Circle, and the arch O P is a Quadrant of an Ellipsis, being the two most different arches of the Nich. The arch f g h represents the first Thickness, and is equal to A C D. The perpendiculars m n and g p are equal to e B, and the Base-line l m is equal to i g. The Base-line o g is equal to i k, whose arches, l n, o p, with their Bevels, do stand perpendicularly over i g and i k. On the under side of the board or plank of which you design to make the first thickness, describe a Semi-Ellipsis equal to A D C, or f g h, whose Semi-tranverse Axis is equal to the prick'd line 1, 2, and semi-conjugate to 1, 3; then at 1, strike a square stroke on the edge of the board or plank, to find the middle of the base to the Elliptick-arch on the upper side of the first thickness at 4, whose Semi-tranverse is equal to the prick'd line 4, 5, and semi-conjugate equal to the prick'd line 4, 6, by means of which describe an Elliptick-arch on the upper side of the first thickness; then by means of these two Elliptick arches, described upon the upper and under side of the piece, with a turning saw, saw out the curve and bevels of the first thickness, to find the arch and bevels of the second thickness on the under side of the board, or plank, of which you design to make it, describe an Elliptick-arch equal to that on the upper side of the first thickness, whose semi-tranverse and semi-conjugate Axes are also equal to the prick'd lines 4, 5, and 4, 6. Then from 4 strike a square stroke on the edge, to find the middle of the Base-line to the arch on the upper side of the second thickness, whose semi-tranverse is equal to the prick'd line 7, 8, and semi-conjugate equal to the prick'd line 7, 9, and with a turning saw as before, saw out the arch and bevels thereof; and so of the rest.

PROB. 11. FIG. 17 & 18.

To make a Nich or Globe with thin Boards, or to cover them with Paper or Pasteboard.

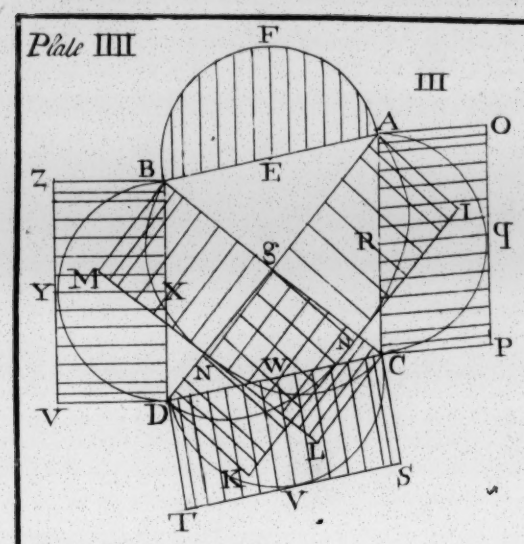
ADMIT a f l, Fig. 17. to be the Plan of a Semi-circular Nich, and c e f d, Fig. 18. to be the board, paper, or pasteboard of a given width c d or e f.

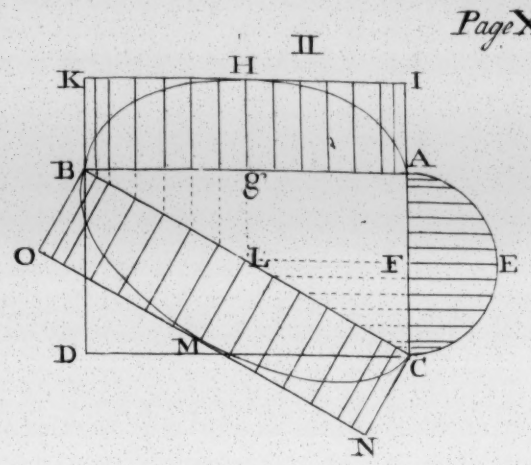
Divide the Semi-circle a f l, into equal divisions, according to the breadth of Fig. 18. as a b, b c, c d, d e, e g, g h, h i, i k, and k l, draw the lines b u, c u, d u, g u, h u, i u, k u, and let fall perpendiculars on the line a l, from the points b, c, d, e, g, h, i, k. Upon the Center u, with the Intervals m, o, r and t, describe Semicircles, set the Girt of the arch a f, or f l, on the board, *&c.* Fig. 18. as c a and d b, which divide into so many equal parts as there are Semicircles in Fig. 17. Divide Fig. 18. in the midst, as by the line u w, take the arch a b, and set it in equally on each side the line u w, as at a b, set the arch m n, in like manner on u w as at m n, and so on to t s; then by sticking in small tacks at the points a, m, o, r, t and u, on the one side of u w, and at the points b, n, p, q and s, on the other side u w, by applying a thin ruler from a to u, and b to u, the Curve-lines on each side will be given, which may be described by a Pencil, *&c.* which is the true Mold for every piece in a Globe or Nich which was required.

SECT.

Plate IIII

Page XIIII





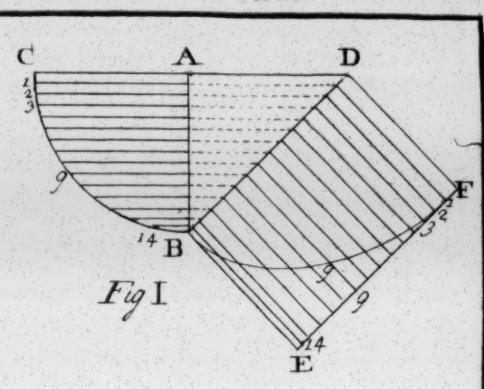
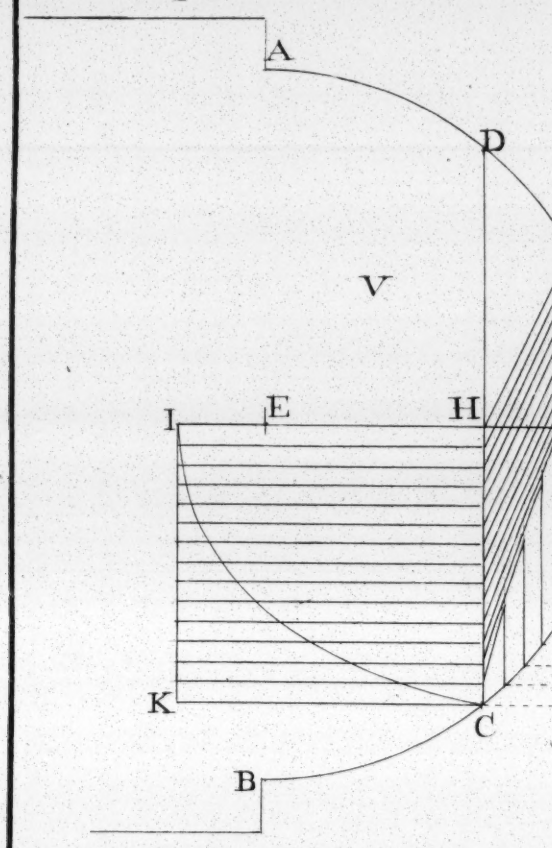
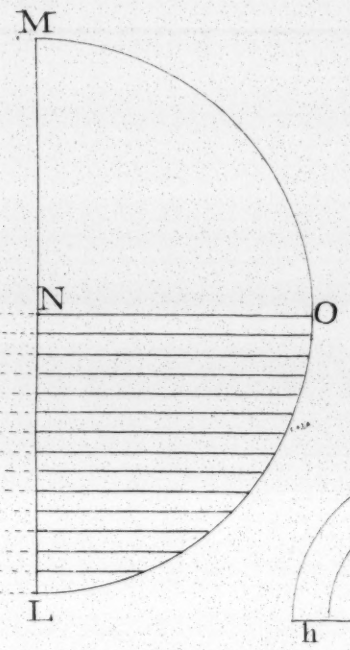
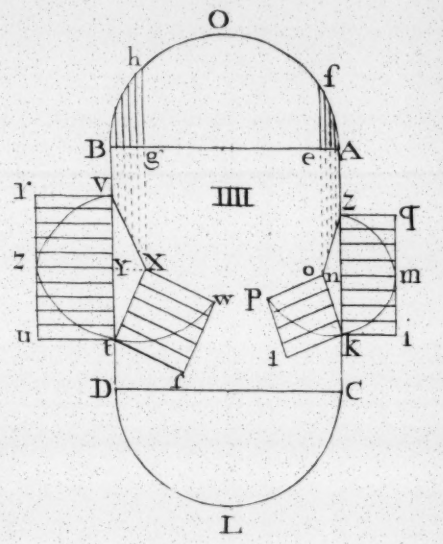
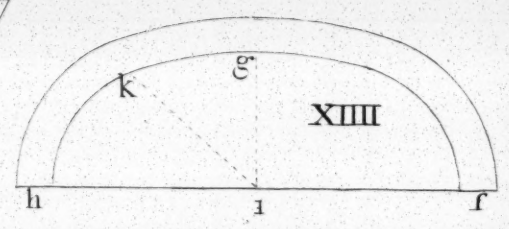


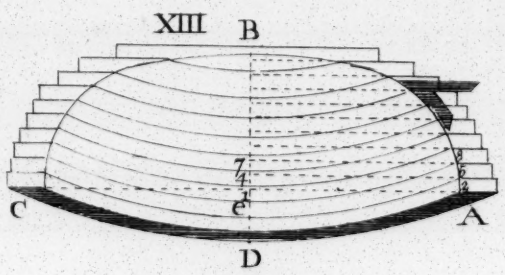
Fig I

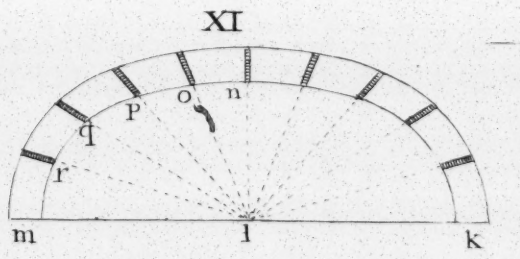


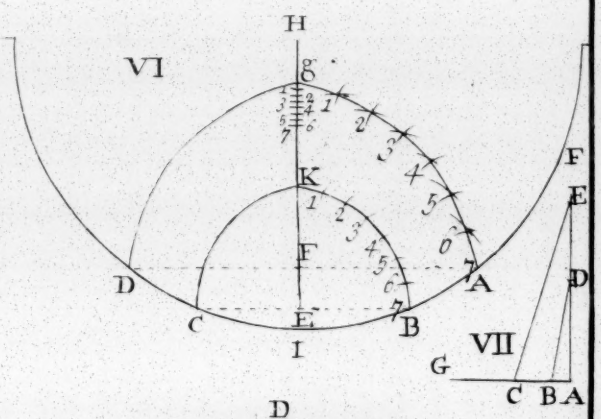


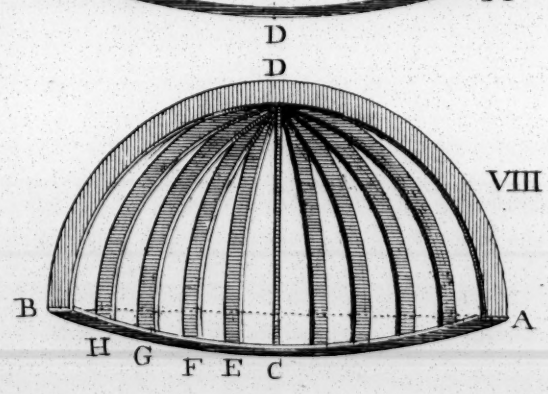


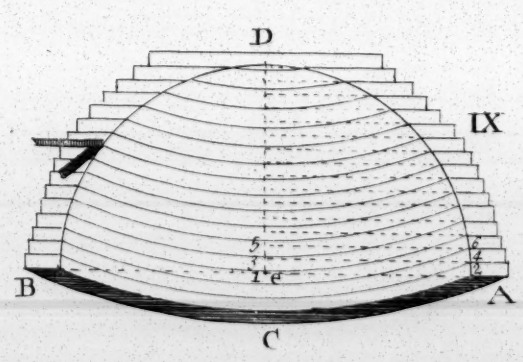


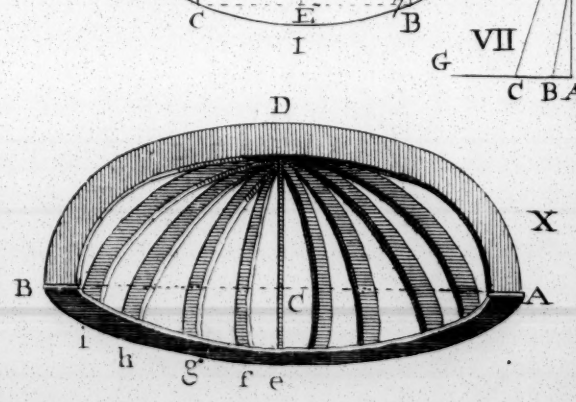


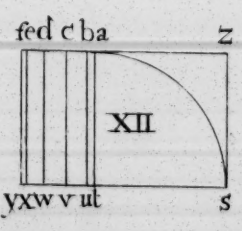


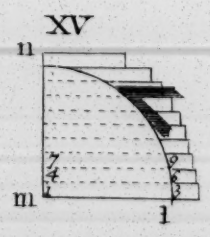


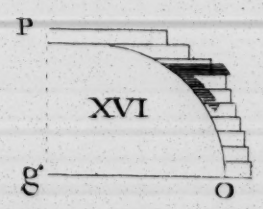


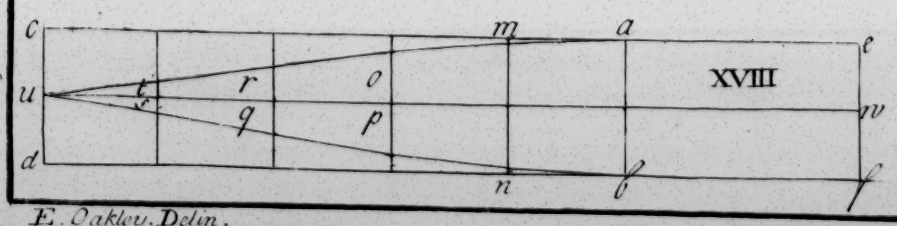


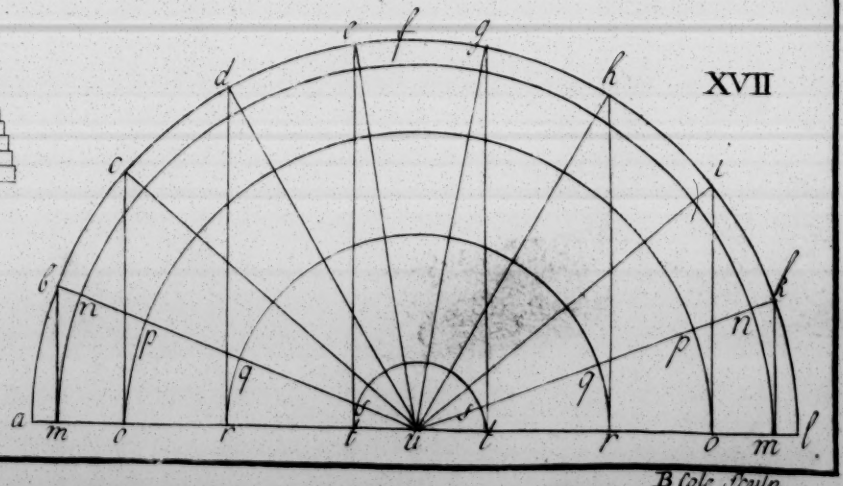












E. Oakley. Delin.

B Cole Sculp

SECT. 5. PLATE 5.

Of the Formation of Twiſted Rails.

PROB. 1. PLATE 5. FIG. 1 & 3.

To find the rakeing Arch, or Mold, for the Hand-Rail to a Circular Pair of Stairs, in ſuch manner that it ſhall ſtand perpendicularly over its Baſe, or Arch of the Well-hole.

ADMIT U W to be the Diameter of the Well-hole, and A G the extreme Diameter of the Hand-Rail, divide the circumference of the larger Circle into the ſame number of equal parts as you would have ſteps once round the Circle, as for example, divide the Semi-circle into ſix, as A, B, C, D, E, F, G.

Take the back or rake of the Bracket C F, Fig. 3. and upon the point A with the interval C F deſcribe the arch h. Take the height of one ſtep, as A C Fig. 3. upon B with the interval A C deſcribe the arch i; with the interval A h, upon the point h deſcribe the arch k, with the Interval equal to the height of two ſteps, upon the point C deſcribe the arch l, to interſect the arch k, and ſo on.

The interſecting points of the arches h i, k l, n o, p q, r s, and t u, are all at equal diſtance to each other, and each equal to the back or rake of the bracket of each ſtep, and the lines B h, C k, D n, E p, F r. and G t, equal to the Riſings or Heights of the ſteps, Fig. 3. B h being the height of one ſtep, C k of two, D n of three, E p of four, F r of five, and G t of ſix; raiſe theſe lines perpendicular on the circle A D G, it is evident that the point of interſection of the arches h and i, will ſtand perpendicularly over the point B; of the arches k l, over C; of the arches n o, over D; of the arches p q, over E; of the arches r s, over F; and of the arches t and u, over G. If nails be ſtruck into the interſecting points of the ſaid arches, and a thin rule be bent round them, with a pencil, *&c.* you may deſcribe the arch, A, h, n, q, s, u, being the Mold for the arch of the Rail required.

PROB. 2. FIG. 2 & 4.

To prepare the Stuff of which the Rail is to be made, and work the Twiſt thereof without ſetting it up in his due Poſition, the Arch or Mold of the Rail being given by the laſt Problem.

DESCRIBE two circles of equal Diameter, to U W and A G in the laſt Problem, next conſider into how many Pieces you give the Rail, which in the Semicircle let be ſix, as in the Example.

Divide the ſemicircle into ſix equal Parts, as E F, F M, M S, S L, L D, and D R, from each of theſe Points of Diviſion, draw lines to the center A, as A E, A F, A M, A S, A L, A D and A R. Upon the Point F, on the line A F, raiſe the perpendicular F G equal to the Height of one ſtep: Upon the point M, on the line A M, raiſe the perpendicular M N, equal to the height of two ſteps; and in like manner at the Points S, L, D, and R, raiſe the Perpendicuiars S T, L Y, D E, and R L, reſpectively equal in Length to the height of three, four, five, and ſix Steps, draw G R, parallel and equal to A F; draw N Y, parallel and equal to A M; draw T W, parallel and equal to J A; draw Y B parallel and equal to L A; draw E H, parallel and equal to D A; draw L P, parallel and equal to R A. Upon the point A on the Line A E, raiſe the perpendicular A B, equal to the Height of one Step; at the Points R Y, W, B, H and P, raiſe the per-

pendicular

pendiculars R L, Y Z, W X, B C, H I, and P O, each equal to the height of one ſtep, draw the Hypothenuſes E B, L G, Z N, X T, C Y, I E, and O L.

Set off the width of the rail, from E to d, G to I, N to o, T to U, Y to a, E to f and L to m; ſet the ſtem of a a ſquare on the line E B, ſo that the blade be perpendicular from the point d, draw the line d c, ſet the ſquare on the line G L, and where it cuts the line R G in the point I, draw the line h I; and in like manner draw the lines P o, N u, z a, G f, and n m. The angles E d c, G I h, N o p, *&c.* and the reſt of the little black ſpaces, as deſcribed in the figure, do repreſent the twiſting of each piece, and what muſt be taken off from the Back at the lower end, to make the twiſt of the Rails. The lines being drawn, you are next to conſider after what manner they are to be applied in the working of the Rail.

Take the Piece of Timber, of which you deſign to make the firſt length, which is repreſented by Fig. 4. plane one ſide ſtreight, and cut it to its bevels a c, b d anſwering to D R A and R D A, Fig. 2. and both ends thereof being alſo cut to the rakeing joint of Rail, proceed thus: Take that part of the rakeing arch in Fig. 1. which anſwers to the firſt length of the rail, as A h in the arch A U, and lay it on the upper ſide of Fig. 4. from l to h, and ſtrike the arch l h, then take E c, equal to G h, or N P, in Fig. 2. and ſet it on the line b d from h to m, Fig. 4. and ſtrike a ſquare ſtroke at pleaſure from m to g; take c d equal to h I, or o p *&c.* and ſet it on the line from m to g, and draw the line h g, which repreſents the back of the rail when it is work'd, and is equal to E d, G i, or N o *&c.* this being done, repreſent the lower end of the rail h, g, k, i, at right angles to h, g; alſo the upper end c, l, o, n, at right angles to l c, and boſte out the inward arch c m ſquare from the upper ſide a b c d, as m g; and take a thin Lath, and bend it cloſe to the ſide thereof from c to g, whereon ſtrike a Line along the edge of the Lath, and ſo the lines l h and c g are your guides in backing the rails: which, when done, turn the piece upſide down, and with the mold ſtrike an arch equal to l h, from o to k, and boſte out the ſide to the lines l h, and o k: then you have one ſide, and the back ſquared, which is the greateſt difficulty in the Formation of a twiſted rail, becauſe the other two ſides are found by gauging from them.

Note, *If the Triangles in Fig.* 2. *and lines whereon they ſtand be ſuppoſed to be raiſed up perpendicularly, then will the lines* A B, R L, Y Z, W X, B C, H I, *and* P O, *joyn to each other, and produce one line perpendicularly over* A, *equal to ſeven riſings or hieghts of the ſteps, But in working a rail of this kind, you have need but of one Triangle* A B c E d, *becauſe they are all equal, and of one effect in working, they being here only repeated for the more clear demonſtration of the Nature of the rail propoſed.*

Prob. 3. Fig. 56.

To deſcribe the Arch, or Mold for a Hand Rail to an oval Stair Caſe.

THE Arch A, k, m, o, q, ſ, v, w, y, is to be deſcribed as the arch A h k o q ſ u in Fig. 1. & Fig. 6. bears the ſame relation to Fig. 5. as Fig. 2. does to Fig. 1. and is made thus: a, b, c, C, are the centers, upon which the oval is deſcribed, upon the center a is deſcribed the arch G o, from whence the lines a G, a h, a o is drawn; upon the b is deſcribed the arch z n, from whence are drawn the lines b z, b m, and b n; upon the center c is deſcribed the arch n, g, A, u and o, from whence the lines c g, c A, and c u are drawn, which lines ſhew where the Rail muſt anſwer ſquare.

Upon the point h on the line a h, raiſe the perpendicular h I, equal to the riſing of one ſtep; upon the point o, on the line a o, raiſe a perpendicular o p; upon the point u on the line c u, raiſe the perpendicular U V, upon the point A, on c A raiſe the perpendicular A B; upon the point G, on c G raiſe the perpendicular G H; upon the point n, on c n raiſe the perpendicular n o; upon the point m, on the line b m, raiſe the perpendicular m u, upon the point z, on the line b z, raiſe the perpendicular z 1, from I draw I m, equal and parallel to a h; from P the line P S, parallellel to a o, and equal to z o, from V draw

draw the line V z, equal and parallel to c u, from B the line B F, equal and parallel to C A; from H the line H L equal and parallel to c G; from o the line o z, equal and parallel to G n; from u the line u x equal and parallel to G m; from 1 the line 1, 4 equal and parallel to z G. At the points a, m, S, F, L, z, x, 4, to the lines a b, I m, P S, V Z, B F, H L, o z, u x, and 1, 4, raiſe the perpendiculars a D, m n, S T, Z Y, F E, L M, z ſ, x y, and 4, 5, each equal in height to one ſtep, draw the hypothenuſal lines D G, n I, T P, Y V, E B, M H, ſ o, y u, and 5, 1, ſet off the width of the rail from G to e, I to l, P to z, V to x, B to D, H to K, o to p, u to v, and 1 to 3, ſet a ſtem of a ſquare on the line G D that the blade cuts the point e, and draw the line e f, in the ſame manner ſet the ſtem of a ſquare on the line I n, till the blade cuts l, and draw the line k l, ſo draw the other lines q z, W X, C D, I K, q p, W V, and 2, 3, as in the laſt Problem.

Note, *If the Triangles in this Figure were raiſed up perpendicularly, then would* a D, m n, S T *ſtand perpendicularly over* a, *and* Z Y F E, L M, *perpendicularly over the point* c; *and* Z S, X Y, *and* 4, 5, *perpendicularly over the point* b; *ſo that in this Figure you will have occaſion for two different Triangles, becauſe there are two different ſweeps that are the cauſe of two different Twiſts in the Rail; and ſo* a G D, V Z Y, *are enough for ſquaring this rail; and always obſerve, that as many different ſweeps as there are in the Plan of the Rail, there are ſo many different Twiſts, and conſequently ſo many different triangles, by reaſon the twiſt is found by them.*

Prob. 4. Fig. 7, 8, 9, 10.

To form the Arch or Mold to the Hand Rail that ſweep two Steps.

DESCRIBE Fig. 7. being the Plan of the Rail, whoſe arch G C conſiſts of two different arches, the one being a quarter of a circle, the other the quarter of an oval.

A B (equal to A C, equal to C D, equal to B D) is equal to one third of a ſtep, upon the point D deſcribe the arch C B, B F is equal to two thirds of a Step, and F G is equal to one Step and two thirds, by the lines F G and F B according to the rules laid down in Section 2. the arch G B is deſcribed. G K repreſents the ſtreight part of the rail to one ſtep, and the arch H D is drawn by gauging from the arch G C, that is, it is drawn parallel to it; and the ſtreight part I H is found by gauging from K G, or is drawn parallel to it.

Fig. 8. ſhews the manner to deſcribe the rake or arch of the rail, which is done thus: draw K L equal to G K of Fig. 7. repreſent the tread of the ſteps as before by prick'd lines. Divide that part of the plan of the rail which belongs to each ſtep into any number of equal parts, as A F into 5, and F K into 4. Draw A B, B C, and C D, in Fig. 9. to repreſent the riſing and tread of the ſteps; continue out the line C B, at pleaſure towards T, in which ſet the five diviſions on the Plan of the rail to the firſt ſtep, F E of Fig. 8. being equal to C I, of Fig. 9. alſo E D equal to I K, D C to K l, C B to l u, and B A to u T. Then will C T in Fig. 9. be equal to the arch A F in Fig. 8. draw the line D T. then is the Triangle C D T the bracket to the firſt ſtep, according to the ſweep of the rail; as T C is the length of the ground to the firſt ſtep, ſo is T D the length of the rail anſwering to it. Upon the points I, K, l, u, raiſe the perpendiculars I P, K Q, l Z, and u s, to C T, ſet the four diviſions of the ſecond ſtep on the line C T, from C to B, and draw the line D B; then is the line C B the ground line of the ſecond ſtep, and D B the length of the rail anſwering to it. Draw lines through the diviſions, as from F to m, G to n, and H to o, perpendicular to C B; and ſo are the perpendiculars to the Compaſs brackets of each ſtep found, and may be pieced thus.

In Fig. 9. with the interval T S, upon A, in Fig. 8. deſcribe the arch m, with the interval S u, upon B, interſect m, then with the interval S Z or S T, upon the Interſection m, deſcribe the arch n; with the Interval l z, upon c, interſect the arch n; in the like man-

ner proceed on, ſo that Z Q, be equal to n o, Q P, to o P, P D to p q, q z to B o, z ſ to o n, ſ t to n m, and t u to m D; alſo k Q to D o, i P to E P, C D to q F, H o to G z, G n to H ſ, F m to I t, E d to K u, and L W to three times A B. The points m, n, o, p, q, z, ſ, t, u, W, being found by the Interſection of arches, as before, ſtick a nail, *&c.* into each point, and bend a thin rule about the nails *&c.* till it touches them all, then with a pencil, *&c.* deſcribe an arch round the edge thereof, which will be the arch A W, being that of the rail to work by.

Fig. 10. ſhews the manner of ſquaring the rail, which is thus: Deſcribe A F, the ſquare or plan of the rail, being the ſame as Fig. 7. and find centers to anſwer the different arches of the plan; from whence draw prick'd lines to the places where you deſign to join the rail, as from G to B, from G to C, from H to E, and from H to b; becauſe the firſt ſtep is to be joyn'd in three equal pieces, you muſt take one third of the riſing or height of the ſtep, and ſet it from B to I, perpendicular to B G, and draw the line M I parallel and equal to G B. Draw M n perpendicular to M I, to riſe ſo much as the rail rakes over, which is one third of the riſing or height of the Step, becauſe that part of the rail is one third of the length on the firſt ſtep, and draw the line I n, which will be the firſt triangle I M n. From the point C draw C q, perpendicular to G C, and equal to two thirds of the height of one ſtep, draw the line q z equal and parallel to C G, upon the point z, on the line z q, raiſe the perpendicular z ſ, equal to the height of one third of one ſtep, draw the line q ſ, and the ſecond triangle is given. Upon the point b, raiſe the perpendicular b T, to b H, equal to the height of one ſtep, draw T W equal and parallel to b H; upon W, to W T, raiſe the perpendicular W X, equal to the height of one ſtep, draw the line X T, and the third triangle will be given W X T. From I in the line M, ſet off I K, equal to the width of the rail, ſet off the ſame from q to o, and T to u, and ſetting the ſtem of a ſquare on the hypothenuſal line, ſo that the blade touches the point k, draw the line k t; and in like manner draw the lines p o, and u V; the ſmall triangles I k t, q p o, T u V, do repreſent what muſt be taken off from the lower-end of each piece, to bring the rail to its true twiſt.

Prob. 5. Fig. 11, 12, 13, 14.

To form the Arch or Mold to a Hand-rail that ſweeps two Steps quicker then in the foregoing Examples.

Deſcribe Fig. 11. repreſenting the plan of the rail, A E is equal in length to the height of one ſtep, and A C and A B, are each equal to the half thereof, upon the center D deſcribe the arch B C F. B G is equal to ſix ſevenths of the width or tread of one ſtep, G H is one ſtep and two thirds, by Interſections from theſe lines the ſweep H B is deſcribed.

Fig. 12. repreſents the plan and raking arches of the rail, the arch A M is equal to the arch F H I, of Fig. 11. and the raking arch thereof is found by the ſame method, and bears the ſame proportion to Fig. 14. as the arch A u W in Fig. 8. does to Fig. 9. and the ſeveral lines are equal to one another, *viz.* A B in Fig. 12. is equal to Q P in Fig. 14. P O is equal to B C, O B to C D, B k to D E, k i to E F, i c to F G, A H to G H, H G to H I, G F to I K, and F E to K L. In Fig. 12. A n is equal to Q V, Fig 14. n o to V U, o p to U T, p q to T S, q r to S Z r s to Z D, ſ t to B n, t u to n m, U V to m L, and V W to L D. The perpendiculars are alſo equal to one another, *viz.* B n, in Fig. 12. is equal to P V, Fig. 14. C o to o U, D P to B T, E q to k S, F r to i Z, G ſ to C D, H t to H n, I u to G m, K V to F L, L W to E D, and m x to three riſings of a ſtep. As in the foregoing Examples, the arch G A, which is the ground for the rail of the firſt ſtep in Fig. 12, is equal to C Q in Fig. 14. the line Q D is equal to the arch A ſ. B C is equal to G L, B D is equal to ſ W, and W X is equal to the rake of that part of the rail that hangs over L M; and the Triangles C l k, E S t, and G u V, do repreſent the ſuperfluous ſtuff that muſt be taken from the lower end of each piece to make the true twiſt.

SECT.

Plate V

Page XVIII

VII

Fig I

II

VIII

IIII

III

IX

V

VI

X.

XII

XIII

XI

E. Jakley Dela.

B. Cole Sculp.

SECT. 6. PLATE 6.

To deſcribe Cavetto's, Cima's, Scotia's, Eggs, Anchors, &c.

PLATE 6. PROB. 1. FIG. 1.

To deſcribe a Cavetto.

DIVIDE A B in four equal parts, and with the Interval of three of thoſe parts, upon the points A and B, deſcribe the Center C, upon the Center C, with the Interval C A, or C B, deſcribe the Cavetto A D B which was required.

PROB. 2. FIG. 2.

Another Way to deſcribe a Cavetto.

PRODUCE the line F G at pleaſure towards E, make F E, equal to three fourths of the line F I H, upon the point E, with the Interval E F or E H, deſcribe the Cavetto F K H which was required.

PROB. 3. FIG. 3 & 4.

Another Method.

THE point L being given, let fall the perpendicular L M to the line O, draw the line O L, upon the point L, draw a perpendicular to L M, as L N, on the midſt of the line L O, at the point P, raiſe a perpendicular to L O, and the Interſection at the point N, on the line N L, will be the Center, upon the point N, with the interval N L or N O, deſcribe L Q O which was required; the ſame method is made uſe of for Fig. 4.

PROB. 4. FIG. 5, 6, 7.

To deſcribe a Cima Inverta, Recta, or Reverſa.

ADMIT Fig. 5. to be a *Cima Inverta*, the points R and S being given, draw the line occult R S, divide it in the midſt at T, divide T S into ſeven equal parts, with the Interval of ſix of thoſe parts, upon the points T and S, deſcribe the triangle S V T, and upon ths points T and R, deſcribe the triangle T X R, with the Interval V S or V T, upon the points V and X, deſcribe the arcs T Y S and R Z T, which generates the Cima propoſed; by the ſame method is deſcribed Fig. 6 and 7.

PROB. 5. FIG. 8 & 9.

To deſcribe a Scotia.

ADMIT the points D, A and B to be given.

Draw the line A B, and A D, with the line A B, deſcribe the equilateral triangle A C B, on the midſt of the line A D, raiſe a perpendicular upon F to the line A C, upon the interſecting point E, with the Interval E A or E D, deſcribe the arch D G A. Upon the point C, with the Interval C A or C B, deſcribe the arch A H B, which completes the *Scotia* required; by the ſame method is performed Fig. 9.

Prob. 6. Fig. 10 & 11.

To describe a Scotia.

THIS is performed by the same method as the former, only the sides C A and C B, are each equal to three fourths of the side A B. Fig. 11. is generated in the same manner, but has two more given points, as at 2 and 4, and the sides 6, 3, and 6, 2, are each longer than the side, 2, 3. The rest may be discovered by Inspection, and therefore needs no repetition.

Prob. 7. Fig. 12.

To describe an Ovola, *which resembles the Shape of an Egg.*

ADMIT C D be the given height, divide it into three equal parts at E and G. Bisect C D in the point E at right angles, and of length at pleasure, (but not less than 5-6 of C D.) Upon E with the radius E C, describe the Semi-circle A C B. Divide E A in the midst at F, make A H and B I, each equal to B F, upon E, with the radius E A or E G, complete the Circle as by A G B, from the points H and I, thro' the point G, draw the lines I G L and H G K, upon H and I, with the radius H B or I A, describe the arches B K and A L. Divide G D in the midst at M, from the points N and O, where the lines (I L and H K intersect the Semi-circle A G B) draw the right lines O Q and N P, thro' the point M. Upon the points O and N describe the arches L Q and K P. Upon the point M, with the radius M Q, describe the arch Q D P, and the *Ovolo* is completed.

Prob. 8. Fig. 13.

To describe the Side-Ornaments of the last Problem.

DRAW the Horizontal line A B, equal and at right angles to A C, make *o* H equal to one Sixteenth of A H, divide A B in the midst at L, divide L B into four equal parts, make S H equal to *o* C, make *o r*, equal to one fifth of A H, upon the point S, describe the arch H *e*, upon the point *r*, describe the arch *o d*, draw the lines E *e*, and D *d*, with each describe an equilateral Triangle, as E *m e*, and D *n d*, upon the points *m* and *n*, describe the arches E F e and D G d, and the side will be completed. Proceed in like manner for the other side, and the whole will be completed.

Fig. 14.

This Figure represents the foregoing Ornaments completed, on the one Side is finished with a Dart or Anchor, as D, and the other Side is a leaf, as E. The Curve-line A C B, represents the Cavity or sinking in between the Egg and other Ornaments.

Plate VI

Page XX

Fig. VI.

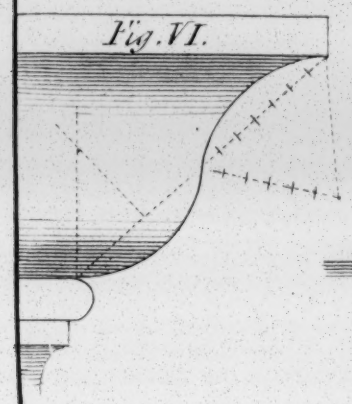


Fig. VII.

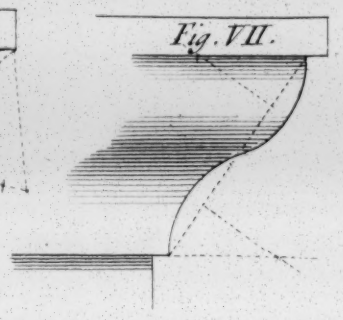


Fig. V.

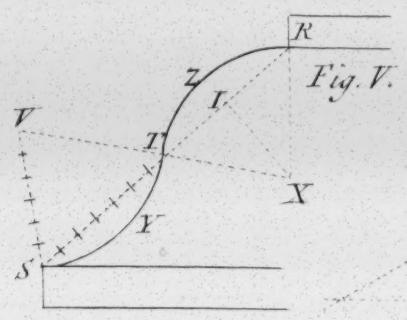


Fig. IV.

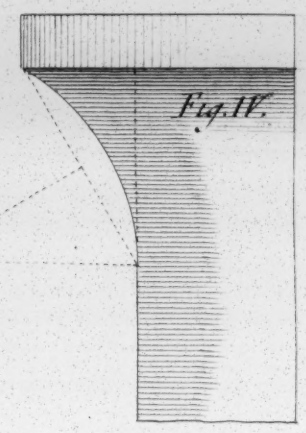


Fig. I.

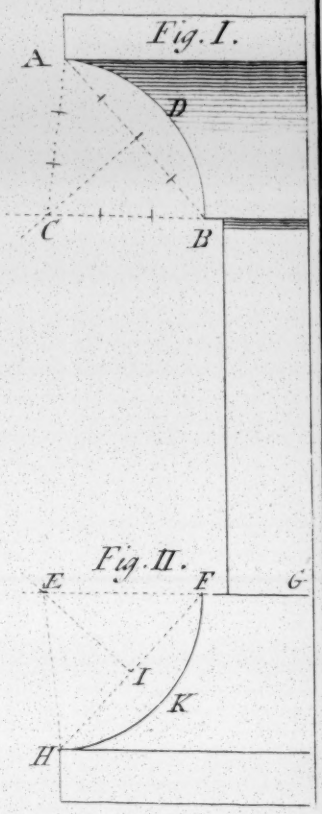


Fig. IX.

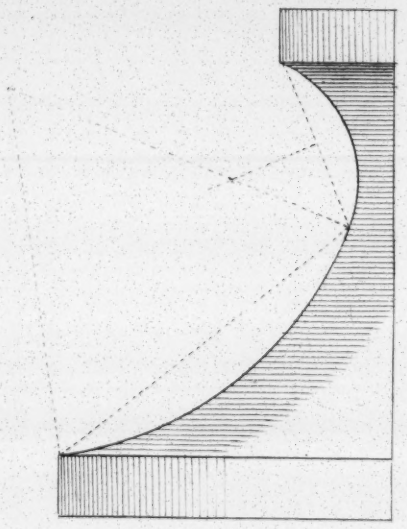


Fig. VIII.

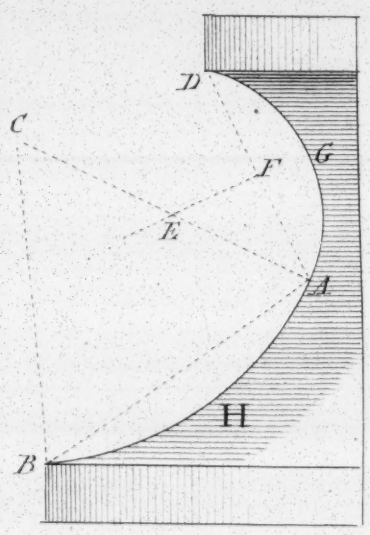


Fig. III.

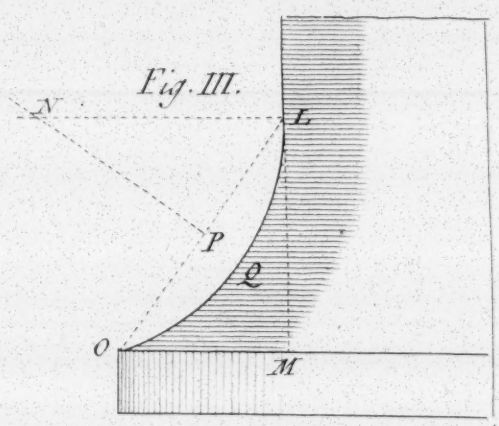


Fig. II.

Fig. XI.

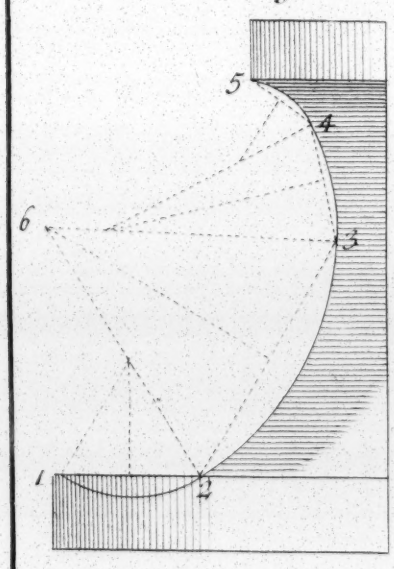


Fig. X.

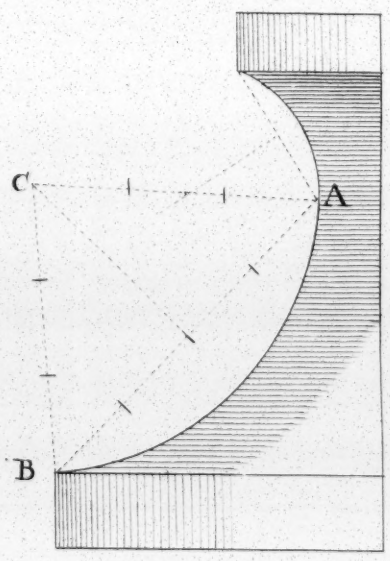


Fig. XII.

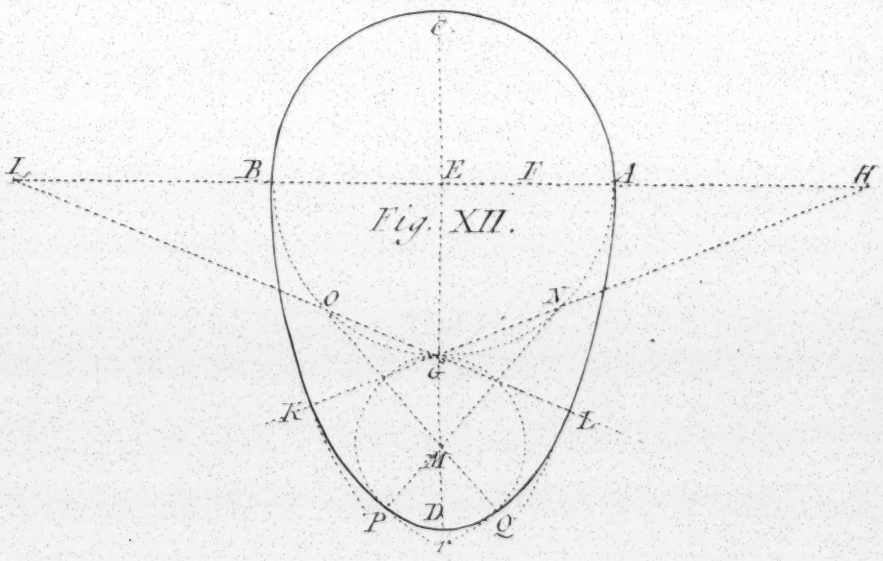


Fig. XIV.

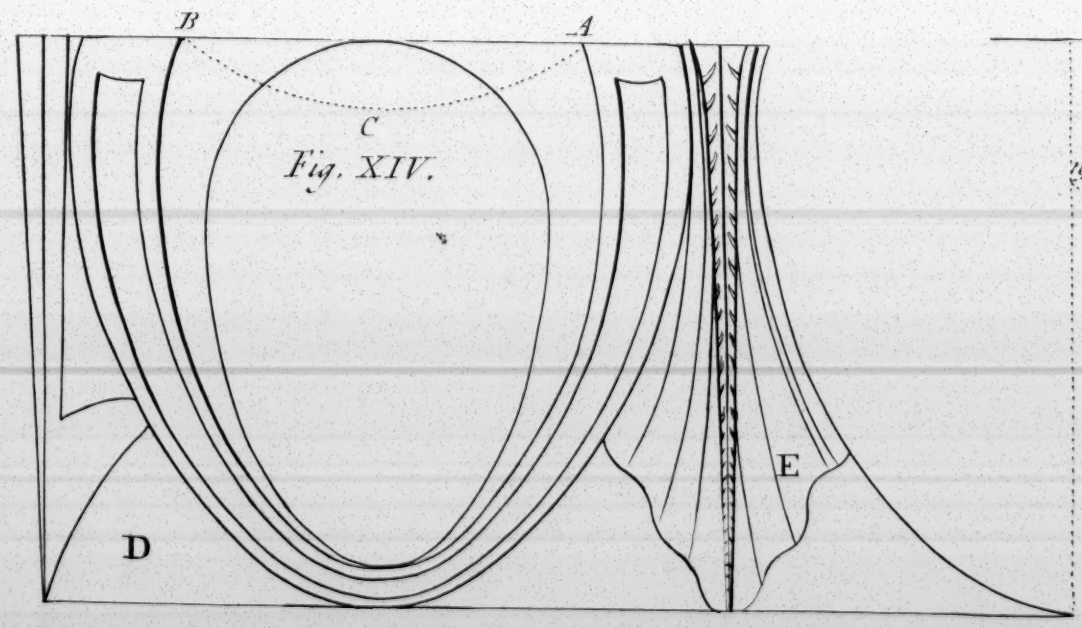
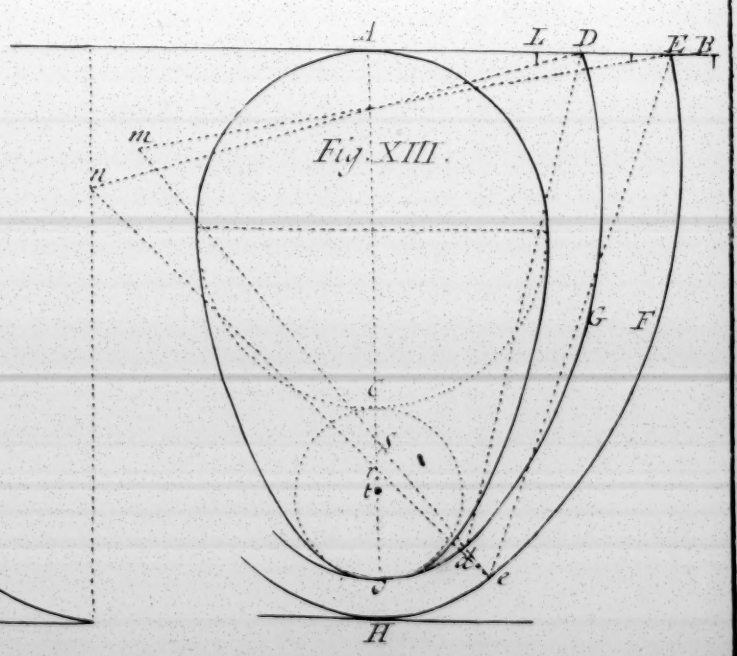


Fig. XIII.



E. Oakley delin.

B. Cole sculp.

SECT. 7.

To describe Circular and Oval Volutes.

PROB. 15. PLATE 7. FIG. 3.

To describe the Volute according to Vignola.

DRAW the Cathetus P, 4, (Fig. 3.) divide it into eight equal parts, on the under side of the fourth division, as at H, make the Eye of the Volute equal to one division, so that there will be four Divisions above the Eye, and three Divisions below the Eye of the Volute, bisect the division on which the Eye is placed, by the line D G, at right angles with P, 4. Upon the point of Intersection of the lines P 4 and D G, describe a Circle, equal in Diameter to the Eye of the Volute, in the Circle inscribe a Square Lozenge ways, whose Diagonals are on the lines P 4 and D G. Divide the square into four equal parts by the lines, 1, 3, and 2, 4, divide the lines 1, 3, and 2 4, into six equal parts, note the divisions by the additional Figures, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11 and 12, and the points 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11 and 12, are the Centers to describe the Volute required. To describe the Volute, upon the point 1 raise the occult perpendicular 1, Q, parallel to P 4; thro' the points 1 and 2 draw a horizontal line to K, thro' the points 5 and 6 draw a line to R, thro' the points 9 and 10 draw a line to X, each line occult and parallel to G D. Thro' the points 2 and 3 let fall a perpendicular to C, thro' the points 6 and 7 let fall a perpendicular to S, thro' the points 10 and 11, let fall a perpendicular to I, each line occult and parallel to P 4, thro' the points 3 and 4 draw a horizontal line to L, thro' the points 7 and 8 draw a line to a, thro' the points 11 and 12 draw a line to &, each line occult and parallel to D G. Thro' the points 4 and 5 draw the oblique line to U; thro' the points 8 and 9 draw the oblique line to W, each occult. Upon the Center 1 with the Interval 1 Q describe the Quadrant of Circle Q K, upon the Center 2 with the Interval 2 K, describe the Quadrant K C. Upon the Center 3 with the Interval 3 C, describe the Quadrant C L. Upon the Center 4 with the Interval 4 L describe the arc L U; in like manner proceed till the Volute is completed, as Fig. 3.

FIG. 1.

This is the Eye of the foregoing Volute to a larger Scale, and noted by the same Lines, Letters and Figures, to render it the more perceptible.

FIG. 2.

This is the Eye of the same Volute, and only differs in the lines that circumscribe the Centers, which forms a Square, the Sides bisecting the lines P 4 and D G at right angles, so that the Centers are on the Diagonals, all the rest exactly agreeing, as by the Lines, Letters, Figures and Centers.

PROB. 2. FIG. 4.

To describe the Eye of the Volute according to Mr. Nicholas Goldman's *Invention.*

DESCRIBE the Circle to contain the Eye of the Volute as in the former.

Upon the middle of the Diameter on the line P 4, describe a square Side equal to half the Diameter, as 1, 2; 2, 3; 3, 4; and 4, 1; divide the side 4, 1, into six equal parts, from the angles 2 and 3 draw diagonals to the middle of the line 4, 1, which is the Center of the Eye from the divisionary points, 5, 9, 12 and 8, draw lines to the Diagonals paral-

ſel to D G. Occult lines muſt be continued in three ſides as in the former, the upper line P 4, terminates the Quadrants, inſtead of the lines Q, U and W in Fig. 3. proceed on the Center as in Fig. 3. and the Volute will be deſcribed.

Fig. 5.

This Figure repreſents the Volute (Fig. 3.) contracted in breadth, by ſquares unequal, proportionally to ſquares equal, as it is ſufficiently noted by Letters and Figures, according to Fig. 3. it needs no further Demonſtration.

Fig. 6 & 7.

This denotes the Eye of the Volute, compoſed of two ſquares touching at the angles, and with the ſame Centers as (Fig. 1.) equally placed on each ſquare, ſix Centers on the upper part of the front ſquare, and the other ſix Centers placed on the lower part of the inner ſquare. Upon theſe Centers are deſcribed the Volute Fig. 7. as to the front and back parts, which may be completed Ovals, as by the foregoing Problems, Section 1.

Fig. 8 & 9.

This denotes the Eye of the Volute compoſed of two Squares, interſecting and touching each other in the Centers by the angular points; by this method the Volute Fig. 9. is deſcribed on the Centers by the foregoing Rules.

Prob. 3. Fig. 10.

To deſcribe the Volute another Way.

UPON the point B deſcribe the Eye of the Volute, upon the point B raiſe the perpendicular A B, equal to four Diameters above the Eye of the Volute, draw the Line B C horizontal and at right angles with A B, and equal to three Diameters beyond the Eye of the Volute, draw the line A C. Upon the point C deſcribe the arc B D, draw the line C E to the line A B, divide the arc E D into ſix equal parts, from the point C thro' the diviſions on the arc D E draw the lines C 5, C 9, C 13, C 17, C 21, ſub-divide each diviſion on the arc D E into four equal parts, from the point C thro' the diviſionary points on the arc D E, draw lines to the line A B, then number the diviſions on the line A B, as 1, 2, 3, 4, and ſo to 25.

Fig. 11.

Draw the Cathetus 1, 5, biſect it at right angles by the line 7, 3. Upon the point of interſection deſcribe the Eye of the Volute, the Eye being divided already into four equal parts, ſub-divide the Eye into four other equal parts, by the lines 2, 6, and 4, 8; then ſetting one foot of the Compaſſes on B in Fig. 10. extend the other foot to A, in that poſition remove the Compaſſes to the Center of the Eye on Fig. 11. and with the Interval A B mark the perpendicular Fig. 1. then remove the Compaſſes again to B Fig. 10. and take the Interval B 2 on the line A B. Upon Fig. 11. from the Center, mark the Interval B 2 on the oblique line 2, with the Interval B 3 on Fig. 10. from the Center on the horizontal line in Fig. 11. mark the point 3; in like manner proceed till all the points are given, thro' which the ſpiral Volute is to paſs. To find the Center to deſcribe the Volute Fig. 11. ſet one foot of the Compaſſes in Fig. 1. and extend the other foot to the Center of the Eye of the Volute, and deſcribe an arc at pleaſure; with the ſame Interval upon Fig. 2. deſcribe another arch to interſect the former, and the point of Interſection will be the Center to deſcribe the arc 1, 2, then ſet one foot of the Compaſſes on the point 2, and extend the other to the Eye of the Volute, and deſcribe an arc; with the ſame Interval upon the 3d point or line, deſcribe another arc to interſect the former, and the point of Interſection will be

Fig VIII

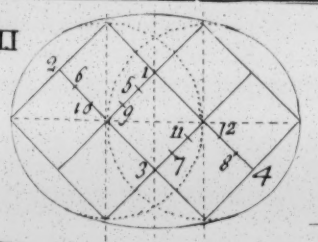


Fig. VI

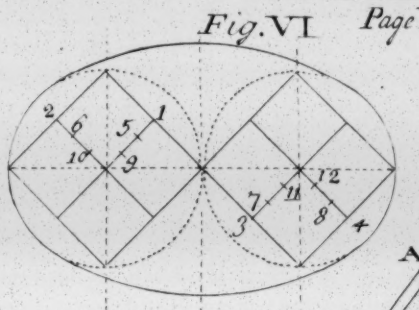


Fig XII

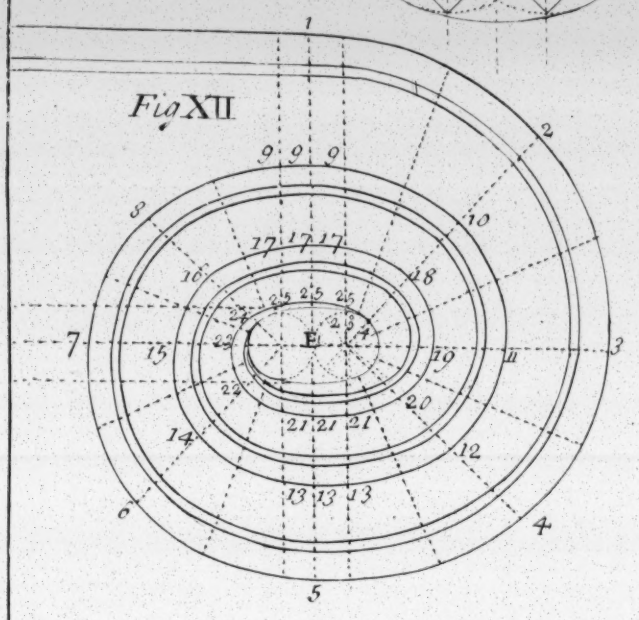


Fig XI

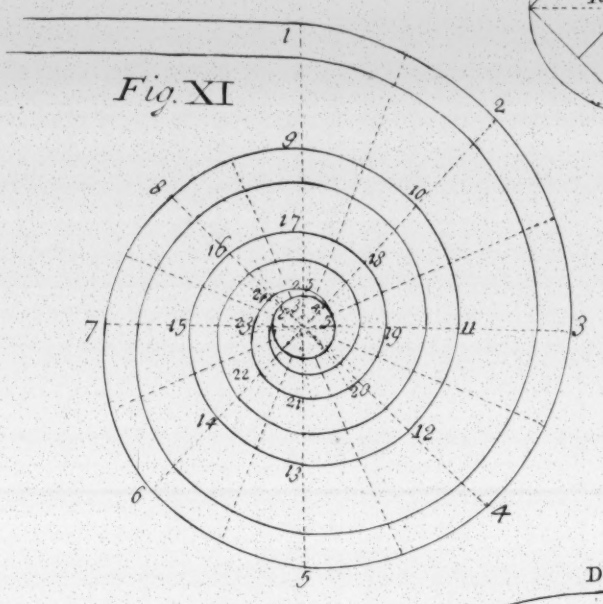
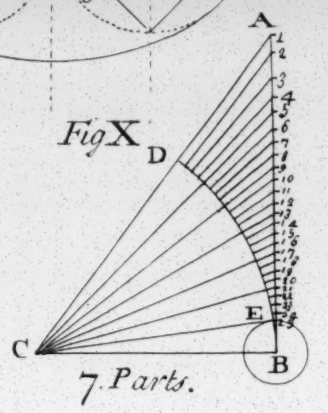


Fig X



7 Parts.

Fig III

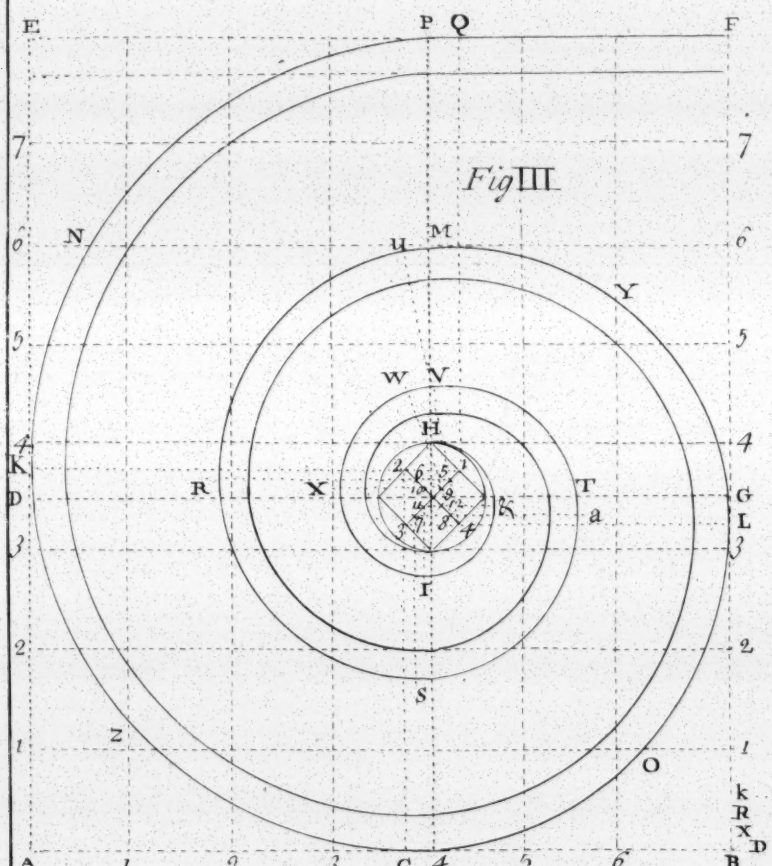


Fig VII.

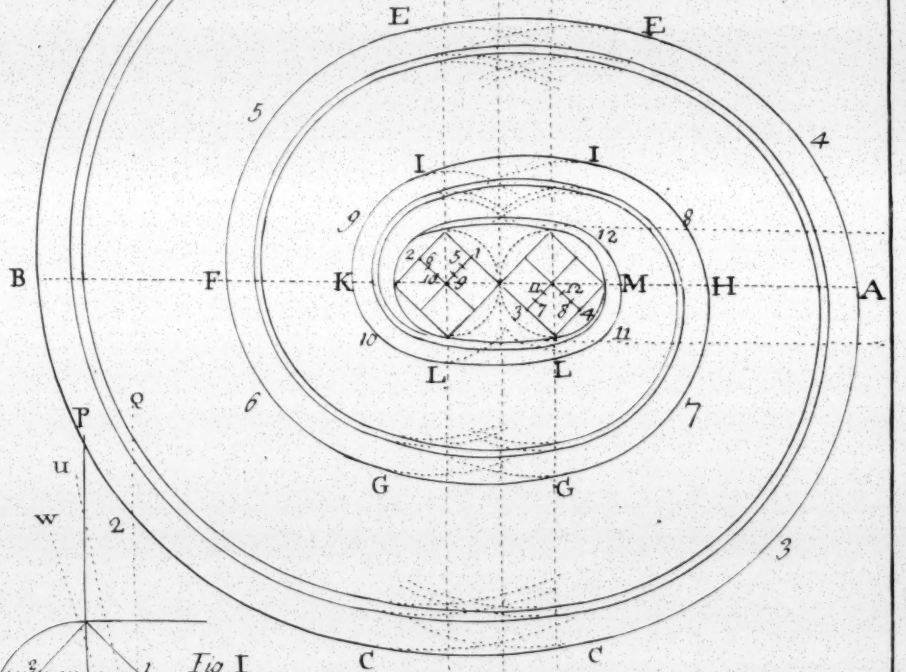


Fig I

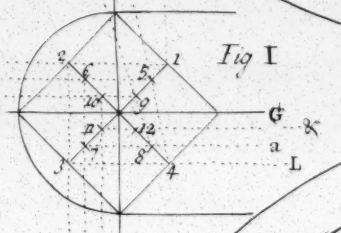


Fig II

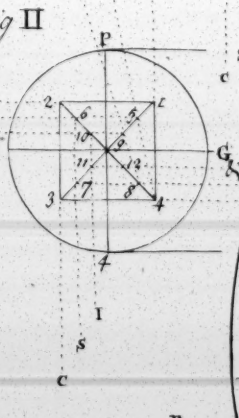


Fig IIII

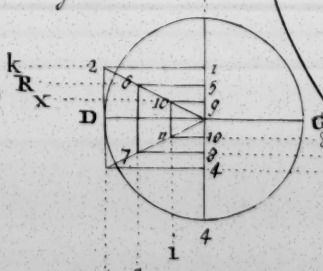


Fig V.

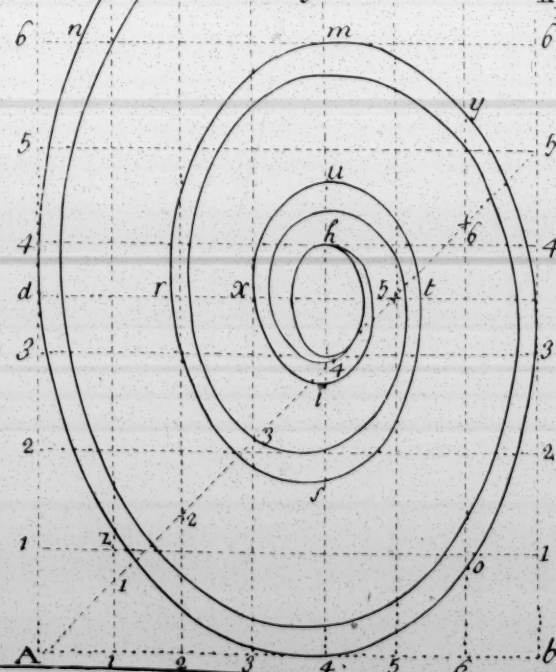
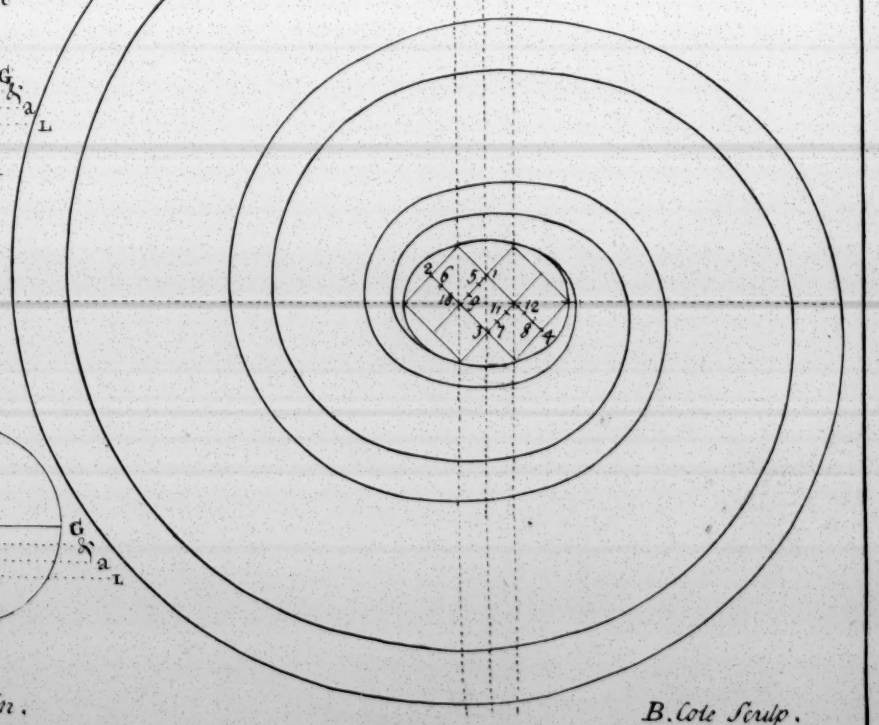
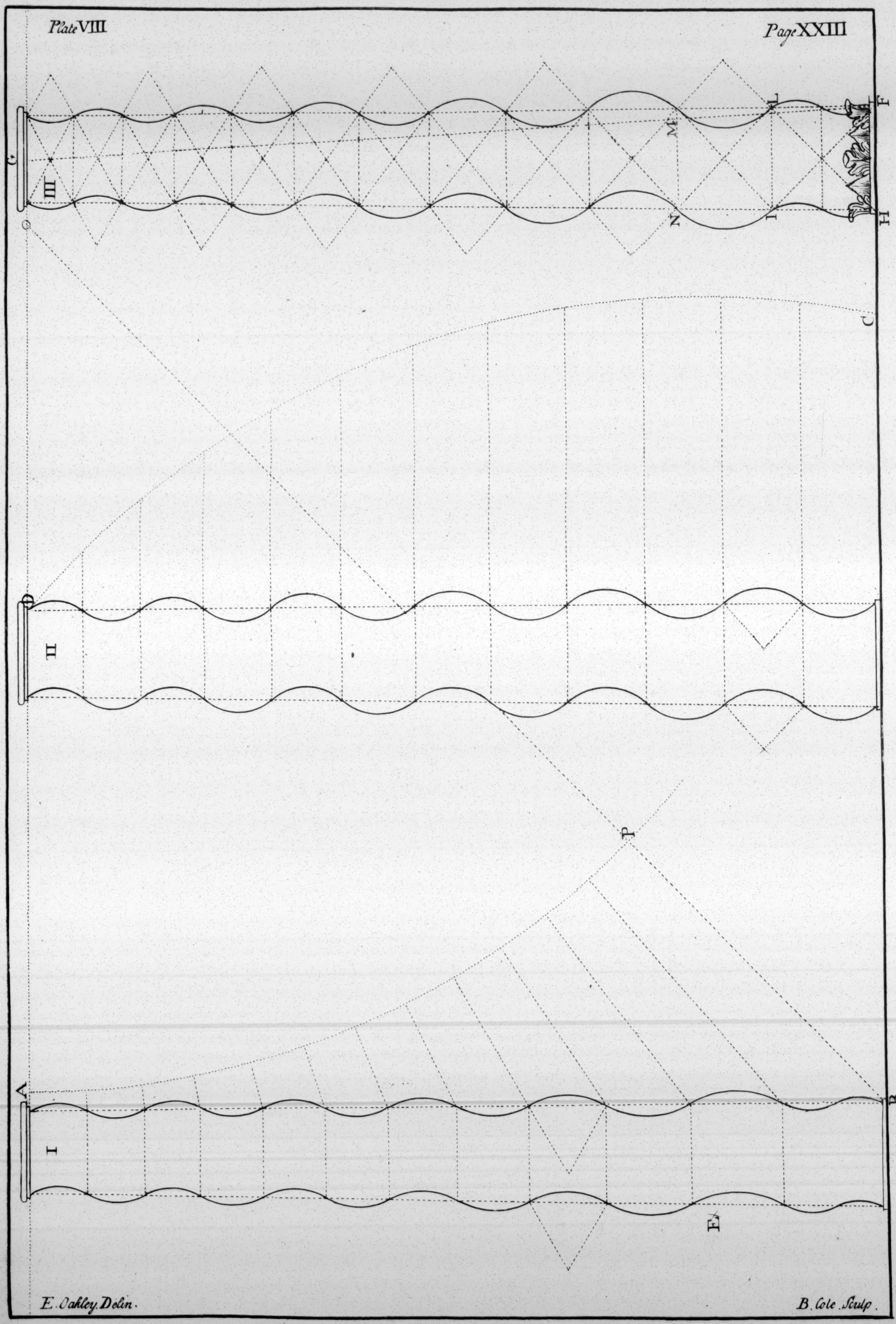


Fig. IX.



E. Oakley Delin.

B. Cole Sculp.



E. Oakley. Delin.

B. Cole. Sculp.

be the Center to deſcribe the arc 2, 3; in like manner proceed till the Volute required is completed.

FIG. 12.

This Figure of an oval Volute is only varied by the Center's being extended in the ſame proportion as Fig. 7. is to Fig. 3. therefore needs not further Explanation.

N. B. *The nearer the Centers are together the more round the Volutes, and the more diſtant the flatter, as ſufficiently appears by Fig.* 3, 7, *and* 9.

SECT. 8. PLATE 8, 9.

To deſcribe the Wreathed Columns and to Flute Columns and Pillaſters.

PLATE 8. PROB. 1. FIG. 1.

To Deſcribe the Wreathed Column.

DRAW the horizontal line from the lower part of the Aſtragal as A O, in length equal to the height of the Column A B, draw the line O B, upon the Center O deſcribe at pleaſure the arch A P, which divide into twelve equal Parts, and by the diviſions draw ſtreight lines from the center O to the line of the Column; continue the ſame parallels to the Baſe. The ſpaces between theſe parallels, will be the ſides of equiliteral Triangles, wherewith is to be deſcribed the wreath of the Column, as is ſeen in Fig. 1.

PROB. 2. FIG. 2.

Another Way to deſcribe a Wreath'd Column.

HAVING ſet the the third Part of the Columns Heights, from the Bottom of the ſhaft to the point C; with the Interval C D, from the centers D and C, deſcribe the parts of arches interſecting at E. on the center E, with the ſame interval, deſcribe the Arch D C, which divide into twelve equal parts; and from the points of thoſe Diviſions, draw Parallels to the baſe. Then dividing each ſpace between the parallels into 4 equal Parts; three of thoſe parts will be the ſides of the Iſoceles Triangle; whoſe Vertex is the center whereon to deſcribe each Wreath of Column Fig. 2.

PROB. 3. FIG. 3.

Another Way to deſcribe a Wreath'd Column.

HAVING drawn from the midſt of the Columns top G, the line G F, make H I equal to H F, and draw I L parallel to the baſe H F: make I N equal to I L, and draw N M alſo parallel, and ſo on. In ſmall pillars, the Centers of the Diagonals of theſe ſpaces may, without ſenſible Error, ſerve for deſcribing the Wreaths; but in greater Columns, either of the two other Methods is rather to be choſen.

Plate 9. Prob. 4. Fig. 1.

To Deſcribe the Flutes of the Dorick Column.

ADMIT E F G H to be lower part of the ſhaft of the Column, which is to be fluted, draw A B equal to the diameter F G, biſect A B in the midſt at D, by the line D C, upon the center D with the Interval D A or D B, deſcribe the arch A C B: Divide C A and C B each into 5 equal parts, as *d c b a* and *f g h i*, the half circumference being divided into ten equal Parts, and ſtreight lines drawn to the center D, biſect each diviſion in the points 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, *&c.* which are the extreams of each flute, then take the Interval 1, 2, or 9, 10, and carry it round the other half of the Circumference as from 1 to *n*, or 10 to *k*, and ſo on till the whole 20 flutes is completed, to find the centers to deſcribe the depth of the flutes, if to be ſhallow in depth, deſcribe them upon the Vertex of an equilateral Triangle as *o*, on the Triangle *i o n*; If deſired deeper deſcribe them on the center of a ſquare whoſe ſides are equal to the breadth of the flute as 10, *k*, *l*, *m*: The ſame method muſt be made uſe of for the upper part of the Column, by reaſon of the diminiſhing.

Prob. 5. Fig. 2.

To deſcribe the Flutes to a Pillaſter.

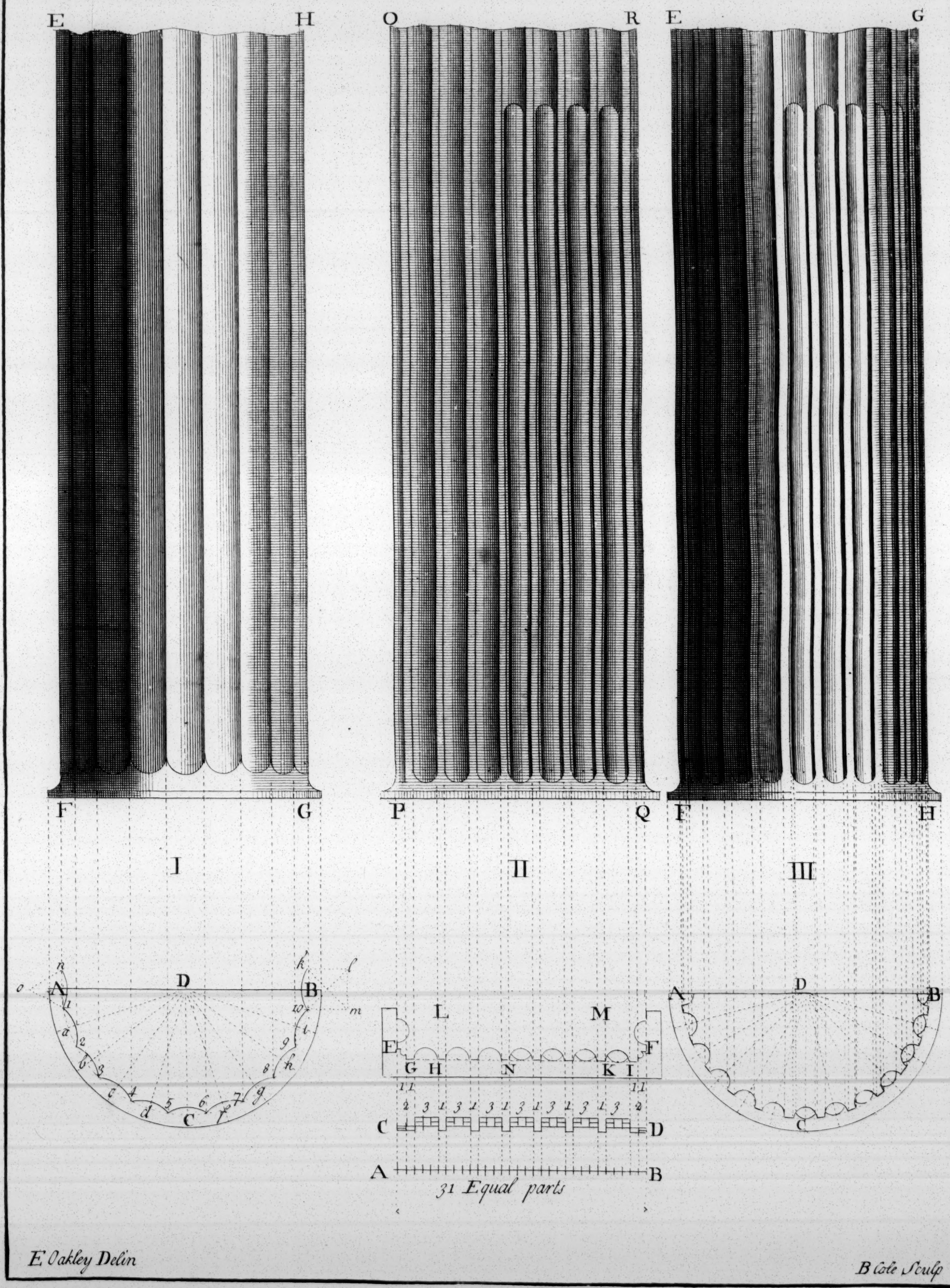
ADMIT A B equal to the Diameter of the Pillaſter propoſed to be fluted; Divide A B into 31 equal parts, with the Interval of two of thoſe parts as on the ſcale C D, on each angle of the Pillaſter E and F, ſet out a Bead and a fillet each equal to one part, the bead being a part of a circle on the angular point and rangeing with the face and return, of the Pillaſter: Divide the reſt of the face of the Pillaſter into ſeven flutes and ſix fillets, each flute containing three parts, and each fillet one part, and the flutes are ſemicircles whoſe centers are on the face line of the Pillaſter, four of the flutes are repreſented cabled as from I to N on the plan, this Pillaſters fluting is ſufficiently demonſtrated by the line A B, the ſcale C D, the plan E F and the part of the upright of the ſhaft O P Q K.

Prob. 6. Fig. 3.

To Flute the Ionick, Corinthian or Compoſite Column.

DIVIDE the half of the Circumference of the Plan A C B into twelve equal parts, and draw lines to the center D, upon the interſections on the circumference, deſcribe the Flutes, each equal to three fourths of the Interval of one of the twelve diviſions, in like manner the whole circumference is to be completed with twenty four flutes and and twenty four fillets, the fillets being each equal to one third of each flute, from the plan A C B is drawn the *Geometrical Elevation* E F G H, the half of which is Cabled as by the Plan C B, the lines from the half plan to the Elevation ſufficiently demonſtrates what further is required to be mentioned.

End of the Firſt Part.



E Oakley Delin

B Cole Sculp

THE

ELEMENTS

OF

ARCHITECTURE,

Collected by Sir HENRY WOTTON, *Knt. from the beſt* Authors *and* Examples.

THE

PREFACE.

I Shall not need (like the moſt Part of Writers) to celebrate the *Subject* which I deliver; in that Point I am at eaſe; for *Architecture* can want no Commendation, where there are *Noble-Men*, or *Noble Minds*; I will therefore ſpend this *Preface*, rather about thoſe from whom I have gathered my Knowledge, for I am but a Gatherer and Diſpoſer of other Mens Stuff, at my beſt Value.

Our principal *Maſter* is *Vitruvius*, and ſo I ſhall often call him, who had this *Felicity*, that he wrote when the *Roman* Empire was near the Pitch; or at leaſt, when *Auguſtus* (who favoured his Endeavours) had ſome Meaning (if he were not miſtaken) * to bound the *Monarchy*. This I ſay was his good hap; for in growing and enlarging Times, *Arts* are commonly drowned in *Action*: But on the other Side, it was in truth an *Unhappineſs* to expreſs himſelf ſo ill, eſpecially writing (as he did) in a Seaſon of the ableſt *Pens*; and *his Obſcurity* had this ſtrange Fortune, that tho' he were beſt practiſed and beſt followed by his own *Country-men*, yet after the reviving and repoliſhing of good Literature, (which the combuſtions and Tumults of the *Middle-Age* had *uncivilized)* he was beſt, or at leaſt firſt underſtood by *Strangers*: For of the *Italians* that took him in hand, thoſe that were *Grammarians* ſeem to have wanted *Mathematical* Knowledge, and the *Mathematicians* perhaps wanted *Grammer*, till both were ſufficiently conjoined, in *Leo-Batiſta Alberti* the *Florentine*, whom I repute the firſt learned *Architect* beyond the *Alps*; but he ſtudied more indeed to make himſelf an *Author*, than to illuſtrate his *Maſter*: Therefore amongſt his *Commenters*, I muſt (for my private Conceit) yield the chief Praiſe unto the *French* in *Philander*, and to the *High-Germans* in *Gualterus Rivius*, who, beſides his Notes, hath likewiſe publiſhed the moſt elaborate *Tranſlation* that I think is extant in any *Vulgar Speech* of the World, tho' not without bewailing, now and then, ſome Defect of *Artificial Terms* in his *own*, as I muſt likewiſe; for if the *Saxon* (our *Mother-Tongue)* did complain, as juſtly (I doubt) in this Point may the *Daughter*; *Languages*, for the moſt Part, in Terms of *Art* and *Erudition*, retaining their Original Poverty, and rather growing rich and abundant in complemental Phraſes and ſuch Froth. Touching divers *modern*

* *Tacit. lib.* 1. *Annal.*

Men that have written out of meer Practice, I ſhall give them their Due upon Occaſion.

And now, after this ſhort *Cenſure* of others, I would fain ſatisfy an *Objection* or two, which ſeem to ly ſomewhat heavily upon my ſelf: It will be ſaid, That I handle an *Art* no way ſuteable either to my *Employments*, or to my *Fortune*. And ſo I ſhall ſtand charged both with *Intruſion* and with *Impertinency*.

To the *Firſt*, I anſwer, That tho' by the ever acknowledged Goodneſs of my moſt *Dear* and *Gracioas SOVEREIGN*, and by his indulgent Toleration of my Defects, I have born Abroad ſome Part of his *Civil Service*, yet when I came Home, and was again reſolved into mine own Simplicity I found it fitter for my *Pen* (at leaſt in this firſt publick Adventure) to deal with theſe plain *Compilements* and tractable *Materials*, than with the *Laberynths* and *Myſteries* of *Courts* and *States*, and leſs Preſumption for me, who have long contemplated a famous *Republick*, to write now of *Architecture*, than it was anciently for † *Hippodamus* the *Mileſian* to write of *Republicks*, who was himſelf but an *Architect*.

To the *Second*, I muſt ſhrink up my Shoulders, as I have learn'd Abroad, and confeſs indeed, that my Fortune is very unable to *exemplifie* and *actuate* my *Speculations* in this *Art*, which yet in truth made me the rather, even from my very Diſability, take Encouragement to hope, that my preſent *Labour* would find the more Favour with others, ſince it was undertaken for no Mans *Sake* leſs than my *own*; and with that Confidence I fell into theſe Thoughts, of which there were two Ways to be delivered; the one *Hiſtoriral*, by Deſcription of the principal *Works*, performed already in good Part by *Giorgio Vaſſari* in the Lives of *Architects*; the other *Logical*, by caſting the *Rules* and *Cautions* of this *Art* into ſome comportable *Method*; whereof I have made Choice, not only as the ſhorteſt and moſt *Elemental*, but indeed as the *Soundeſt:* For, tho' in practical Knowledges, every complete *Example* may bear the Credit of a *Rule*, yet peradventure *Rules* ſhould precede, that we may by them be made fit to judge of *Examples:* Therefore to the *Purpoſe*, for I will preface no longer.

† *Ariſtot. 2. lib. Polit. cap. 6.*

OF

OF THE

ELEMENTS

OF

ARCHITECTURE.

The Firſt Part.

IN *Architecture*, as in all other *Operative* Arts, the *End* muſt direct the *Operation*.

The *End* is, to Build well.

Well-Building hath three Conditions, *Commodity*, *Firmneſs*, and *Delight*.

A common Diviſion among the Deliverers of *Art*, tho' I know not how, ſomewhat miſplaced by *Vitruvius* himſelf, *lib.* 1. *cap.* 3. whom I ſhall be willinger to follow as a Maſter of *Proportion* than of *Method*.

Now, for the attaining of theſe *Intentions*, we may conſider the whole *Subject* under two general Heads;

The *SEAT*, and the *WORK*.

Therefore firſt touching *Situation*.

The *Precepts* thereunto belonging do either concern the *Total Poſture* (as I may term it) or the *placing* of the *Parts*; whereof the firſt Sort, howſoever uſually ſet down by *Architects*, as a Piece of their Profeſſion, yet are in truth borrowed from other *Learnings*, there being between *Arts* and *Sciences* as well as between *Men*, a kind of good Fellowſhip and Communication of their *Principles*.

For you ſhall find ſome of them to be meerly *Phyſical*, touching the Quality and Temper of the *Air*, which being a perpetual Ambient and Ingredient, and the Defects thereof incorrigible in ſingle *Habitations* (which I moſt intend) doth in thoſe Reſpects require the more exquiſite Caution: That it be not too *groſs*, nor too *penetrations*; not ſubject to any foggy Noiſomneſs, from *Fens* or *Marſhes* near adjoining; nor to *Mineral* Exhalations from the Soil itſelf. Not undigeſted for want of *Sun*; not unexerciſed for want of *Wind*; which were to live (as it were) in a *Lake* or *Standing-Pool* of *Air*, as *Alberti* the *Florentine Architect* doth ingeniouſly compare it.

Some do rather ſeem a little *Aſtrological*, as when they warn us from Places of malign *influence*, where *Earth-quakes*, *Contagions*, *prodigious Births*, or the like, are frequent without any evident Cauſe; whereof the Conſideration is peradventure not altogether vain; ſome are plainly *Oeconomical*, as, that the *Seat* be well watered and well fuelled; that it be not of too ſteepy and incommodious *Acceſs*, to the Trouble both of *Friends* and *Family*; that it lie not too far from ſome Navigable *River* or *Arm* of the *Sea*, for more eaſe of Proviſion and ſuch other *Domeſtick* Notes.

Some again may be ſaid to be *Optical*; ſuch, I mean, as concern the *Properties* of a well choſen *Proſpect*, which I will call the *Royalty of Sight*: For as there is a *Lordſhip* (as it were) of the *Feet*, wherein the Maſter doth much joy when he walketh about the *Line* of his own *Poſſeſſions*: So there is a *Lordſhip* likewiſe of the *Eye*, which being a *ranging*, and *Imperious*, and (I might ſay) an *uſurping Senſe*, can indure no narrow *Circumſcription*, but muſt be fed with Extent and Variety. Yet on the other Side, I find vaſt and indefinite Views which drown all Apprehenſions of the uttermoſt *Objects*, condemned by good Authors, as if thereby ſome Part of the Pleaſure (whereof we ſpeak) did periſh. Laſtly, I remember a private *Caution*, which I know not well how to ſort, unleſs I ſhould call it *Political*. By no means to build too near a great *Neighbour* which were, in truth, to be as unfortunately ſeated on the Earth, as *Mercury* is in the Heavens, for the moſt Part, ever in *Combuſtion* or *Obſcurity* under brighter Beams than his own.

From theſe ſeveral *Knowledges*, as I have ſaid, and perhaps from ſome other, do *Architects* derive their Doctrine about Election of *Seats*, wherein I have not been ſo ſevere as a * great Scholar of our Time, who preciſely reſtraineth a perfect *Situation*, at leaſt for the main point of Health, *Ad locum contra quem Sol radios ſuos fundit cum ſub Ariete oritur*; that is, in a Word, he would have the firſt *Salutation* of the *Spring*: But ſuch *Notes* as theſe, whereſoever we find them, in Grave or ſlight Authors, are, to my Conceit, rather *Wiſhes* than *Precepts*; and in that Quality I ſhall paſs them over: Yet I muſt withal ſay, that in the *ſeating* of our ſelves (which is a kind of *Marriage* to a *Place*) *Builders* ſhould be as circumſpect as *Wooers*, leſt, when all is done, that *Doom* befall us which our Maſter doth lay upon *Mitylene*; *A Town, in truth* (ſaith he) *finely built, but fooliſhly planted* †. And ſo much touching that which I termed the *Total Poſture*.

The next in order is the placing of the *Parts*; about which (to leave as little as I may in my preſent Labour upon *Fancy* which is wild and irregular) I will propound a Rule of mine own Collection, upon which I fell in this Manner. I had noted, that all *Art* was then in trueſt Perfection, when it might be reduced to ſome natural *Principle*; for what are the moſt judicious *Artiſans* but the *Mimicks* of *Nature*? This led me to contemplate the Fabrick of our own Bodies, wherein the *High Architect* of the World had diſplayed ſuch Skill as did ſtupifie all humane Reaſon: There I found the *Heart*, as the Fountain of Life, placed about the Middle, for the more equal Communication of the vital Spirits. The *Eyes* ſeated aloft, that they might deſcribe the greater Circle within their View. The *Arms* projected on each Side, for eaſe of reaching. Briefly, (not to loſe our ſelves in this ſweet Speculation) it plainly appeareth, as a Maxim drawn from the Divine Light, that the *Place* of every Part is to be determined by the *Uſe*.

So then from *Natural Structure*, to proceed to *Artificial*, and in the rudeſt Things, to preſerve ſome *Image* of the excellenteſt. Let all the principal Chambers of *Delight*, all *Studies* and *Libraries* be towards the *Eaſt*; for the Morning is a Friend to the Muſes. All Offices that require Heat, as *Kitchins*, *Stillatories*, *Stoves*, Rooms for *Baking*, *Brewing*, *Waſhing*, or the like, would be *Meridional*. All that need a cool and freſh Temper, as *Cellars*, *Pantries*, *Butteries*, and *Granaries*, to the *North*. To the ſame Side likewiſe, all that are appointed for gentle Motion, as *Galleries*, eſpecially in warm Climes, or that

* *Joannes Heurnius Inſtit. Medicin. lib.* 7. *cap.* 2.
† *Opidum quidem ædificatum eleganter, ſed imprudenter poſitum.*

otherwiſe

otherwiſe require a ſteady and unvariable Light, as *Pinacothecia* (ſaith *Vitruvius*) by which he intendeth, (if I may gueſs at his Greek, as we muſt do often even at his Latin) certain Repoſitories for Works of Rarity in Picture or other Arts, by the *Italians* called *Studioli*; which at any other Quarter, where the Courſe of the *Sun* doth diverſify the *Shadows*, would loſe much of their Grace: And by this Rule having always regard to the *Uſe*, any other Part may be fitly accomodated.

I muſt here not omit to note, that the ancient *Grecians*, and the *Romans* by their Example, in their Buildings abroad, where the *Seat* was free, did almoſt religiouſly ſituate the *Front* of their Houſes towards the South; perhaps that the Maſter's *Eye*, when he came home, might not be dazled, or that being illuſtrated by the Sun, it might yield the more graceful *Aſpect*; or ſome ſuch Reaſon. But from this the modern *Italians* do vary; whereof I ſhall ſpeak more in another Place. Let thus much ſuffice at the preſent for the *Poſition* of the ſeveral *Members*, wherein muſt be had, as our Author doth often inſinuate, and eſpecially *lib. 6. cap.* 10. a ſingular Regard to the Nature of the *Region*: Every Nation being tyed above all Rules whatſoever, to a Diſcretion of providing againſt their own *Inconveniencies*: And therefore a good *Parlour* in *Egypt*, would perchance make a good *Cellar* in *England*.

There now followeth the ſecond Branch of the general *Section* touching the *Work*.

In the *Work*, I will firſt conſider the principal parts, and afterwards the Acceſſory, or *Ornaments*; and in the Principal, firſt the Preparation of the *Materials*; and then the Diſpoſition, which is the *Form*.

Now concerning the *Material* Part; although ſurely, it cannot diſgrace an *Architect*, which doth ſo well become a Philoſopher, to look into the Properties of *Stone* and *Wood*: as that Fir-trees, Cypreſſes, Cedars, and ſuch other *Aereall* aſpiring *Plants*, being by a kind of natural Rigour (which in a Man I would call Pride) inflexible downwards, are thereby fitteſt for *Poſts* or *Pillars*, or ſuch upright uſe; that on the other Side, Oak, and the like true hearty Timber, being ſtrong in all Poſititons, may be better truſted in croſs and traverſe Work; for *Summers*, or girding, and binding *Beams*, as they term them. And ſo likewiſe to obſerve of *Stone*, that ſome are better within, and other to bear *Weather*; Nay, to deſcend lower, even to examine *Sand*, and *Lyme*, and *Clay* (of all which Things *Vitruvius* hath diſcourſed, without any daintineſs, and the moſt of new Writers) I ſay, though the ſpeculative Part of ſuch Knowledge be liberal, yet to redeem this Profeſſion, and my preſent Pains from Indignity, I muſt here remember, that to chooſe and ſort the *Materials* for every part of the *Fabrick*, is a Duty more proper to a ſecond *Superintendent* over all the Under-*Artiſans*, called (as I take it) by our Author, *Officinator*, *lib. 6. Cap.* 11. in that Place expreſly diſtinguiſhed from the *Architect*, whoſe Glory doth more conſiſt in the Deſignment, and *Idea* of the whole Work; and his trueſt Ambition ſhould be to make the Form, which is the nobler Part (as it were) triumph over the *Matter*; whereof I cannot but mention by the Way, a foreign Pattern; namely the Church of *Santa Giuſtina* in *Padua*: In truth, a ſound Piece of good Art, where the *Materials* being but ordinary Stone, without any Garniſhment of Sculpture, do yet raviſh the Beholder (and he knows not how) by a ſecret *Harmony* in the Proportions. And this indeed is that End, at which in ſome Degreé, we ſhould aim even in the privateſt Works; whereunto tho' I make haſte, yet let me firſt collect a few of the leaſt trivial Cautions belonging to the *Material Proviſion*.

Leon Baptiſta Alberti is ſo curious, as to wiſh all the *Timber* cut out of the ſame *Forreſt*, and all the *Stone* out of the ſame *Quarry*.

Philibert de l' Orme the *French Architect* goes yet ſomewhat further, and would have the *Lyme* made of the very ſame *Stone*, which we intend to imploy in the *Work*; as belike imagining that they will ſympathize and join the better by a kind of *Original* Kindred.

But ſuch Conceipts as theſe ſeem ſomewhat too fine among this *Rubiſh*, though I do not produce them in Sport. For ſurely, the like Agreements of Nature may have oftentimes a diſcreet Application to Art. Always it muſt be confeſſed, that to make *Lyme* without any great Choice, of refuſe Stuff, as we commonly do, is an *Engliſh* Error of no ſmall Moment in our Buildings. Whereas the *Italians* at this Day, and much more the *Ancients*, did burn their firmeſt *Stone*, and even Fragments af *Marble* where it was copious, which in Time became almoſt *Marble* again, or at leaſt of indiſſoluble Durity, as appeareth in the ſtanding *Theatres*. I muſt here not omit, while I am ſpeaking of this Part, a certain Form of *Brick* deſcribed by *Daniel Barbaro Patriarch* of *Aquileia*, in the largeſt Edition of his Commentary upon *Vitruvius*. The Figure triangular, every Side a Foot long, and ſome Inch and a Half thick, which he doth commend unto us for many good Conditions: As that they are more commodious in the Management, of leſs Expence, of fairer Show, adding much Beauty and Strength to the *Murall Angles*, where they fall gracefully into an indented Work: So as I ſhould wonder that we have not taken them into Uſe, being propounded by a Man of good Authority in this Knowledge; but that all Nations do ſtart at *Novelties*, and are indeed married to their own *Moulds*. Into this Place might aptly fall a Doubt, which ſome have well moved; whether the ancient *Italians* did burn their *Brick* or no; which a Paſſage or Two in *Vitruvius* hath left ambiguous. Surely, where the *Natural* Heat is ſtrong enough to ſupply the *Artificial*, it were but a curious Folly to multiply both *Labour* and *Expence*. And it is beſides very probable, that thoſe *Materials* with a kindly and temperate Heat would prove fairer, ſmoother, and leſs diſtorted, than with a violent: Only, they ſuffer two Exceptions. Firſt, that they are likely to be the more ponderous, by ſuch a gentle drying, and much Time will be loſt, which might otherwiſe be employed in compiling. Next, That they will want a certain ſucking and ſoaking *Thirſtineſs*, or a fiery Appetite to drink in the *Lime*, which muſt knit the *Fabrick*. But this Queſtion is to be confined to the *South*, where there is more Sun and Patience. I will therefore not hinder my Courſe, with this incident Scruple, but cloſe that Part which I have now in Hand, about the *Materials*, with this principal Caution, that ſufficient *Stuff* and *Money* be ever ready before we begin: For when we ſhould build now a Piece, and then another by *Fits*, the Work dries and ſinks unequally, whereby the *Walls* grow full of *Chinks* and *Crevices*; therefore ſuch Pawſings are well reproved by *Palladio*, *lib.* 1. *cap.* 1. and by all other. And ſo having gleaned theſe few Remembrances touching the Preparation of the *Matter*, I may now proceed to the Diſpoſition thereof, which muſt form the *Work*. In the *Form*, as I did in the *Seat*, I will firſt conſider the general *Figuration*, and then the ſeveral *Members*.

Figures are either *ſimple* or *mixed*. The ſimple be either *Circular* or *Angular*. And of Circular, either *Compleat* or *Deficient*, as *Ovals*; with which Kinds I will be contented, though the Diſtribution might be more curious.

Now the exact *Circle* is in Truth a Figure, which for our Purpoſe hath many fit and eminent Properties; as Fitneſs for Commodity and Receipt, being the moſt capable, fitneſs for Strength and Duration, being the moſt united in his Parts; Fitneſs for Beauty and Delight, as imitating the celeſtial *Orbs*, and the univerſal *Form*. And it ſeems beſides to have the Approbation of *Nature*, when ſhe worketh by Inſtinct, which is her ſecret School: For Birds do build their Neſts *ſpherically*: But notwithſtanding theſe Attributes it is in Truth a very unprofitable Figure in private *Fabricks*, as being of all other the moſt chargeable, and much Room loſt in the bending of the *Walls*, when it comes to be divided: Beſides an ill Diſtribution of Light, except from the *Center* of the *Roof*. So as anciently it was not uſual, ſave in their *Temples* and *Amphi-Theatres*, which needed no Compatitions. The *Ovals* and other imperfect circular *Forms*, have the ſame Exceptions, and leſs Benefit of Capacity: So as there remains to be conſidered in this general Survey of *Figures*, the *Angular*, and the *Mixed* of both. Touching the *Angular*, it may perchance ſound ſomewhat ſtrangely, but it is a true Obſervation, that this *Art* doth neither love many *Angles*, nor few. For firſt, the *Triangle*. which hath the feweſt Sides and Corners, is of all other the moſt condemned, as being indeed both incapable and infirm (whereof the Reaſon ſhall be

be afterwards rendred) and likewiſe unreſolveable into any other regular *Form* than it ſelf in the inward *Partitions*.

As for Figures of five, ſix, ſeven, or more *Angles* : They are ſurely fitter for *Military Architecture* (where the Bulworks may be laid out at the *Corners*, and the Sides ſerve for *Curtains*) than for civil Uſe ; though I am not ignorant of that famous Piece at *Caprarole*, belonging to the Houſe of *Farneſe*, caſt by *Baroccio* into the Form of a *Pentagone*, with a *Circle* inſcribed, where the *Architect* did ingeniouſly wreſtle with divers Inconveniencies in diſpoſing of the Lights, and in ſaving the Vacuities. But as Deſigns of ſuch Nature do more aim at Rarity, than Commodity, ſo, for my Part, I had rather admire them, than commend them.

Theſe Things conſidered, we are both by the Precepts and by the Practice of the beſt Builders, to reſolve upon *Rectangular Squares*, as a Mean between too few, and too many Angles ; and through the equal Inclination of the Sides, which make the right Angle ſtronger than the *Rhombe*, or *Loſenge* ; or any other irregular *Square*. But whether the exact *Quadrat*, or the long *Square* be the better, I find not well determined, tho' in mine own Conceit, I muſt prefer the latter ; provided that the Length do not exceed the Latitude above one third Part, which would diminiſh the Beauty of the Aſpect, as ſhall appear when I come to ſpeak of *Symmetry* and *Proportion*.

Of mixed Figures, partly *Circular* and partly *Angular*, I ſhall need to ſay nothing ; becauſe having handled the ſimple already, the mixed, according to their Compoſition, do participate of the ſame Reſpects. Only againſt theſe there is a proper *Objection*, that they offend *Uniformity* : Whereof I am therefore opportunely induced to ſay ſomewhat, as far as ſhall concern the outward *Aſpect*, which is now in Diſcourſe.

In *Architecture*, there may ſeem to be two oppoſite Affectations, *Uniformity* and *Variety*, which yet will very well ſuffer a good Reconcilement, as we may ſee in the great Pattern of Nature, to which I muſt often reſort : For ſurely, there can be no *Structure* more uniform than our own Bodies in the whole *Figuration* : Each Side agreeing with the other, both in the Number, in the Quality, and in the Meaſure of the Parts : And yet ſome are round, as the *Arms* ; ſome flat, as the *Hands* ; ſome prominent, and ſome more retired : So as upon the Matter, we ſee that *Diverſity* doth not deſtroy *Uniformity*, and that the Limbs of a noble *Fabrick*, may be correſpondent enough, though they be various; provided always, that we do not run into certain extravagant Inventions, whereof I ſhall ſpeak more largely when I come to the parting and caſting of the whole *Work*. We ought likewiſe to avoid enormous Heights of ſix or ſeven *Stories*, as well as irregular *Forms* ; and the contrary Fault of low-diſtended *Fronts*, is as unſeemly : Or again, when the Face of the Building is narrow, and the Flank deep : To all which Extreams ſome particular Nations or Towns are ſubject, whoſe Names may be civily ſpared : And ſo much for the general *Figuration*, or *Aſpect* of the *Work*.

Now concerning the Parts in Severalty. All the Parts of every *Fabrick* may be compriſed under five Heads, which Diviſion I receive from *Batiſta Alberti*, to do him Right, and they be theſe.

The *Foundation*.
The *Walls*.
The *Appertions* or *Overtures*.
The *Compartition*.
And the *Cover*.

About all which I purpoſe to gather the principal Cautions, and as I paſs along, I will touch alſo the natural Reaſons of *Art*, that my Diſcourſe may be the leſs *Mechanical*.

First then concerning the *Foundation*, which requireth the exacteſt Care; for if that happen to dance, it will marr all the Mirth in the Houſe: Therefore that we may found our Habitation firmly, we muſt firſt examine the *Bed* of *Earth* (as I may term it) upon which we will Build; and then the Underfillings, or *Subſtruction*, as the Ancients did call it: For the former, we have a general Precept in *Vitruvius* twice preciſely repeated by him, as a Point indeed of main Conſequence; firſt, *l.* 1. *c.* 5. And again more fitly, *l.* 3. *c.* 3. in theſe Words, as *Philander* doth well correct the vulgar Copies: *Subſtructionis Fundationis fodiantur* (ſaith he) *ſi queant inveniri ad ſolidum, & in ſolido.* By which Words I conceive him to commend unto us, not only a diligent, but even a jealous Examination what the *Soil* will bear; adviſing us, not to reſt upon any appearing Solidity, unleſs the whole *Mold* through which we cut, have likewiſe been *ſolid*; but how deep we ſhould go in this Search, he hath no Where to my Remembrance determined, as perhaps depending more upon *Diſcretion* than *Regularity*, according to the Weight of the *Work*; yet *Andrea Palladio* hath fairly adventured to reduce it into Rule: Allowing for that * *Cavaſione* (as he calleth it) a ſixth Part of the Height of the whole *Fabrick*, unleſs the Cellars be underground, in which Caſe he would have us (as it ſhould ſeem) to found ſomewhat lower.

Some *Italians* do preſcribe, that when they have choſen the *Floor*, or Plot, and laid out the Limits of the *Work*, we ſhould firſt of all dig *Wells* and *Ciſterns*, and other Underconducts and Conveyances, for the Suillage of the Houſe, whence may ariſe a double Benefit; for both the Nature of the *Mold* or *Soil*, would thereby be ſafely ſearched, and moreover thoſe open Vents will ſerve to diſcharge ſuch *Vapours*, as having otherwiſe no Iſſue, might peradventure ſhake the Building. This is enough for the natural Grounding, which tho' it be not a part of the ſolid *Fabrick*, yet here was the fitteſt Place to handle it.

There followeth the *Subſtruction* or Ground-Work of the whole *Edifice*, which muſt ſuſtain the *Walls*; and this is a kind of *artificial* Foundation, as the other was *natural*. About which theſe are the chief Remembrances: Firſt, that the Bottom be preciſely level, where the *Italians* therefore commonly lay a Platform of good Board; then that the loweſt *Ledge* or *Row*, be meerly of Stone, and the broader the better, cloſely laid without *Mortar*, which is a general Caution for all Parts in Building, that are contiguous to *Board* or *Timber*, becauſe *Lime* and *Wood*, are inſociable; and if any where unfit Confiners, then moſt eſpecially in the *Foundation*. Thirdly, that the Breadth of the *Subſtruction* be at leaſt double to the *inſiſtent Wall*, and more or leſs, as the Weight of the *Fabrick* ſhall require; for as I muſt again repeat, Diſcretion may be freer than Art. Laſtly, I find in ſome a curious Precept, that the *Materials* below, be laid as they grow in the *Quarry*, ſuppoſing them belike to have moſt Strength in their natural and habitual *Poſture*. For as *Philippe de l'Orme* obſerveth, the breaking or yielding of a Stone in this Part, but the Breadth of the Back of a Knife, will make a Cleft of more than half a Foot in the *Fabrick* aloft: So important are *fundamental Errors*. Among which Notes I have ſaid nothing of *Pallification*, or *Pyling* of the *Ground-plot*, commanded by *Vitruvius*, when we build upon a moiſt or marſhy *Soil*, becauſe that were an Error in the firſt Choice, and therefore all *Seats* that muſt uſe ſuch Proviſion below (as *Venice* for an eminent Example) would perhaps upon good Enquiry, be found to have been at firſt choſen by the Counſel of *Neceſſity*.

Now the *Foundation* being ſearched, and the *Subſtruction* laid, we muſt next ſpeak of the *Walls*.

Walls are either intire and continual, or intermitted; and the *Intermiſſions* be either *Pillars* or *Pilaſters*; for here I had rather handle them, than, as ſome others do, among *Ornaments*.

---

* *Under-digging, or hollowing of the Earth.*

The

The entire *Muring* is by Writers diverſly diſtinguiſhed: By ſome, according to the Quality of the *Materials*, as either *Stone* or *Brick*, *&c.* where, by the Way, let me note, that to build *Walls* and greater Works of *Flint*, whereof we want not Example in our *Iſland*, and particularly in the *Province* of *Kent*, was (as I conceive) meerly unknown to the *Ancients*, who obſerving in that *Material*, a kind of *Metallical* Nature, or at leaſt a *Fuſibility*, ſeem to have reſolved it into nobler Uſe, an Art now utterly loſt, or perchance kept up by a few *Chymicks*. Some again do not ſo much conſider the Quality as the Poſition of the ſaid *Materials*; as when Brick or ſquared Stones are laid in their Lengths with Sides and Heads together, or their Points enjoined like a *Net-work* (for ſo *Vitruvius* doth call it *reticulatum opus*) of familiar uſe (as it ſhould ſeem) in his Age, tho' afterwards grown out of Requeſt, even perhaps for that ſubtil Speculation which he himſelf toucheth; becauſe ſo laid, they are more apt, in ſwagging down, to pierce with their points, than in the adjacent Poſture, and ſo to *crevice* the *Wall*: But to leave ſuch Cares to the meaner Artificers, the more eſſentiel are theſe.

That the *Walls* be moſt exactly perpendicular to the *Ground-work*, for the right *Angle* (thereon depending) is the true Cauſe of all *Stability*, both in artificial and natural Poſitions: A Man likewiſe ſtanding firmeſt when he ſtands uprighteſt. That the maſſieſt and heavieſt *Materials* be the loweſt, as fitter to bear than to be born. That the *Work*, as it riſeth, diminiſh in *Thickneſs* proportionally, for eaſe both of Weight and of Expence. That certain *Courſes* or *Ledges* of more Strength than the reſt, be interlayed like *Bones*, to ſuſtain the *Fabrick* from total Ruin, if the under Parts ſhould decay. Laſtly, that the *Angles* be firmly bound, which are the *Nerves* of the whole *Edifice*, and therefore are commonly fortified by the *Italians*, even in their Brick Buildings, on each Side of the Corners, with well ſquared Stone, yielding both Strength and Grace: And ſo much touching the entire or ſolid *Wall*.

The Interміſſions (as hath been ſaid) are either by *Pillars* or *Piliaſters*.

Pillars, which we may likewiſe call *Columns*, (for the Word among Artificers is almoſt naturalized) I could diſtinguiſh into *Simple* and *Compounded*: But (to tread the beaten and plaineſt Way) there are five *Orders* of *Pillars*, according to their Dignity and Perfection, thus marſhalled.

The *Tuſcan*.
The *Dorique*.
The *Ionique*.
The *Corinthian*. And
The *Compound Order*; or, as ſome call it, the *Roman*; others more generally the *Italian*.

In which five *Orders*, I will firſt conſider their *Communities*, and then their *Properties*.

Their *Communities* (as far as I can obſerve) are principally three. Firſt, they are all *Round*; for tho' ſome conceive *Columna Aticurges*, mentioned by *Vitruvius*, *lib. 3. cap. 3.* to have been a ſquared Pillar, yet we muſt paſs it over as irregular, never received among theſe *Orders*, no more than certain other licentious Inventions, of *wreathed*, and *vined*, and *figured Columns*, which our Author himſelf condemneth, being in his whole Book a profeſſed Enemy to *Fancies*.

Secondly, they are all *diminiſhed* or *contracted* inſenſibly, more or leſs, according to the Proportion of their Heights, from one third Part of the whole *Shaft* upwards, which *Philander* doth deſcribe by his own preciſe meaſuring of the Ancient Remainders, as the moſt graceful *Diminution*. And here I beg Leave to blame a Practice grown (I know not how) in certain Places too familiar, of making *Pillars* ſwell in the middle, as if they were ſick of ſome *Tympany* or *Dropſie*, without any authentick pattern or Rule, to my Knowledge, and unſeemly to the very Judgment of Sight. True it is, that in *Vitruvius*, *lil. 3. cap. 2.*

we find theſe Words, *De adjectione, quæ adjicitur in mediis Columnis, quæ apud Grecos* Ἔνλασις *appellatur, in extremo libro erit formatio ejus*; which Paſſage ſeemeth to have given ſome Countenance to this Error. But of the Promiſe there made, as of diverſe other elſewhere, our Maſter hath failed us, either by ſlip of Memory, or Injury of Time, and ſo we are left in the Dark. Always ſure I am, that beſides the Authority of Example which it wanteth, it is likewiſe contrary to the Original and Natural *Type* in *Trees*, which at firſt was imitated in *Pillars*, as *Vitruvius* himſelf obſerveth, *lib.* 5. *cap.* 1. for who ever ſaw any *Cypreſs*, or *Pine* (which are there alledged) ſmall below and above, and tumerous in the middle, unleſs it were ſome diſeaſed Plant, as Nature (tho' otherwiſe the comlieſt *Miſtreſs*) hath now and then her *Deformities* and *Irregularities*?

Thirdly, they have all their *Underſettings* or *Pediſtals*, in Height a third Part of the whole *Column*, comprehending the *Baſe* and *Capital*; and their upper Adjuncts, as *Architrave*, *Frize*, and *Cornice*, a fourth Part of the ſaid Pillar; which Rule, of ſingular Uſe and Facility, I find ſettled by *Jacobo Baroccio*, and hold him a more credible Author, as a Man that moſt intended this Piece, than any that vary from him in thoſe *Dimentions*.

Theſe are their moſt conſiderable *Communities* and Agreements.

Their *Properties* or *Diſtinctions* will beſt appear by ſome reaſonable Deſcription of them all, together with their *Architraves*, *Freezes*, and *Cornices*, as they are uſually handled.

Firſt therefore, the *Tuſcan* is a plain, maſſy, rural Pillar, reſembling ſome ſturdy well-limb'd Labourer, homely cled, in which Kind of Compariſons *Vitruvius* himſelf ſeemeth to take Pleaſure, *lib.* 4. *cap.* 1. The Length thereof ſhall be ſix *Diameters*, of the groſſeſt of the Pillar below, of all Proportions, in truth, the moſt natural; for our Author tells us, *lib.* 3. *cap.* 1. that the Foot of a Man is the ſixth Part of his Body in ordinary Meaſure, and Man himſelf, according to the Saying of *Protagoras*, (which *Ariſtotle* doth ſomewhere vouchſafe to celebrate) is τὸ τῶν ἀνθρώπων χρημάτων μέτρον, as it were, the *Prototype* of all exact *Symmetrie*, which we have had other Occaſions to touch before: This *Column* I have, by good Warrant, called *Rural*, *Vitruv. cap.* 2. *lib.* 3. and therefore we need not conſider this Rank among the reſt. The Diſtance or *Intercolumniation*, which Word Artificers do uſually borrow, may be near four of his own *Diameters*, becauſe the Materials commonly laid over this Pillar, were rather of Wood than Stone, thro' the Lightneſs whereof the *Architrave* could not ſuffer, tho' thinly ſupported, nor the *Column* itſelf being ſo ſubſtantial. The *Contraction* aloft ſhall be (according to the moſt received Practice) one Fourth of his Thickneſs below. To conclude, (for I intend only as much as ſhall ſerve for a due Diſtinguiſhment, and not to delineate every petty Member) the *Tuſcan* is, of all, the rudeſt Pillar, and his principal Character *Simplicity*.

The *Dorique Order* is the graveſt that hath been received into civil Uſe, preſerving, in Compariſon of thoſe that follow, a more *Maſculine Aſpect*, and little trimmer than the *Tuſcan* that went before, ſave a ſober Garniſhment now and then of *Lions Heads* in the *Cornice*, and of *Triglyphs* and *Metopes* always in the *Frize*. Sometimes likewiſe, but rarely, channelled, and a little ſlight Sculpture about the *Hypotrachelion* or *Neck*, under the *Capital*. The Length, ſeven *Diameters*. His Rank or Degree is the loweſt by all *Congruity*, as being more maſſy than the other Three, and conſequently abler to ſupport. The *Intercolumniation* thrice as much as his Thickneſs below. The *Contraction* aloft, one Fifth of the ſame Meaſure. To diſcern him will be a Piece rather of *Heraldry* than *Architecture*; for he is beſt known by his Place when he is in Company, and by the peculiar Ornament of his *Frize* (before mentioned) when he is alone.

The *Ionick Order* doth repreſent a kind of Feminine Slenderneſs, yet, ſaith *Vitruvius*, not like a light Houſe-wife, but in a decent Dreſſing, hath much of the *Matron*. The Length, eight *Diameters*. In Degree as in Subſtantialneſs, next above the *Doric*, ſuſtaining the Third, and adorning the ſecond Story. The *Intercolumniation* two of his

his own *Diameters*. The *Contraction* one ſixth Part, beſt known by his Trimmings, for the Body of this *Column* is perpetually channelled, like a thick pleated Gown. The *Capital* dreſſed on each Side, not much unlike Womens Wires, in a ſpiral Wreathing, which they call the *Ionian Voluta*. The *Cornice* indented. The *Freeze* ſwelling like a Pillow; and therefore by *Vitruvius*, not unelegantly termed *Pulvinata*. Theſe are his beſt *Characters*.

The *Corinthian* is a *Column* laciviouſly decked like a *Curtezan*, and therein much participating (as all Inventions do) of the Place where they were firſt born, *Corinth* having been, without Controverſie, one of the wantoneſt Towns in the World. This *Order* is of nine *Diameters*. His Degree one Stage above the *Ionick*, and always the higheſt of the ſimple *Orders*. The *Intercolumniation* two of his *Diameters*, and a fourth Part more, which is, of all other, the comlieſt Diſtance. The Contraction one ſeventh Part. In the *Cornice* both *Dentelli* and *Modiglioni* †. The *Freeze*, adorned with all Kinds of *Figures*, and various Compartments, at Pleaſure. The Capitals, cut into the beautifulleſt Leaf that Nature doth yield; which ſurely, next the *Aconitum Pardalianches* (rejected perchance as an ominous Plant) is the *Acanthus*, or *Brancha Urſina*; tho' *Vitruvius* do impute the Choice thereof unto Chance, and we muſt be contented to believe him; in ſhort, as *Plainneſs* did characterzie the *Tuſcan*, ſo muſt *Delicacy* and *Variety* the *Corinthian* Pillar, beſides the Height of his Rank.

The laſt is the compounded Order; his Name being a Brief of his Nature. For this Pillar is nothing in effect, but a Medly, or an Amaſs of all the precedent *Ornaments*, making a new kind, by Stealth; and tho' the moſt richly tricked, yet the pooreſt in this, that he is a Borrower of all his Beauty. His Length (that he may have ſomewhat of his own) ſhall be of ten *Diameters*. His Degree ſhould no doubt be the higheſt, by Reaſons before yielded. But few *Palaces*, Ancient or Modern, exceed the Third of the Civil *Orders*. The *Intercolumniation* but a *Diameter* and an Half, or always ſomewhat leſs than Two. The Contraction of this Pillar muſt be one eighth Part leſs above than below. To know him will be eaſie by the very Mixture of his Ornaments and Clothing.

And ſo much touching the five Orders of Columns, which I will conclude with two or three not impertinent Cautions.

Firſt, that where more of theſe *Orders* than one ſhall be ſet in ſeveral *Stories* or *Contignations*, there muſt be an exquiſite Care to place the *Columns* preciſely one over another, that ſo the *ſolid* may anſwer to the *ſolid*, and the *vacuities* to the *vacuities*, as well for Beauty as Strength of the *Fabrick*; and by this Caution the Conſequence is plain, that when we ſpeak of the *Intercolumniation* or *Diſtance* which is due to each *Order*, we mean, in a *Dorick*, *Ionical*, *Corinthian Porch* or *Cloiſter*, or the like of one *Contignation*, and not in Storied Buildings.

Secondly, Let the *Columns* above be a fourth Part leſs than thoſe below, ſaith *Vitruvius*, *lib.* 5. *cap.* 15. A ſtrange Precept in my Opinion; and ſo ſtrange, that peradventure it were more ſuitable, even to his own Principles, to make them rather a fourth Part greater; for *lib.* 3. *cap.* 2. where our Maſter handleth the *Contractions* of Pillars, we have an *Optick* Rule, that the higher they are, the leſs ſhould be always their Diminution aloft, becauſe the *Eye* itſelf doth naturally contract all *Objects*, more or leſs, according to the *Diſtance*; which Conſideration may, at firſt Sight, ſeem to have been forgotten in the Caution we have now given; but *Vitruvius*, the beſt Interpreter of himſelf, hath, in the ſame Place of his fifth Book, well acquitted his Memory by theſe Words, *Columnæ ſuperiores quarta parte minores, quàm inferiores, ſunt conſtituendæ; propterea quod, operi ferendo quæ ſunt inferiora, firmiora eſſe debent*; preferring, like a wiſe Mechanick, the *Natural* Reaſon before

† *Our Artiſans call them Teeth and Cartouxes.*

the *Mathematical*, and ſenſible Conceits before abſtracted. And yet, *lib.* 4. *cap.* 4. he ſeemeth again to affect *Subtilty*, allowing Pillars, the more they are channelled, to be the more ſlender; becauſe while our *Eye* (ſaith he) doth as it were diſtinctly meaſure the eminent and the hollowed Parts, the total Object appeareth the bigger, and ſo as much as thoſe Excavations do ſubſtract, is ſupplied by a *Fallacy* of the *Sight:* But here, methinks, our Maſter ſhould likewiſe have rather conſidered the natural Inconvenience; for tho' Pillars by channelling, be ſeemingly ingroſſed to our Sight, yet they are truly weakened in themſelves, and therefore ought perchance, in ſound Reaſon, not to be the more ſlender, but the more corpulent, unleſs Appearences preponder Truths, but, *Contra Magiſtrum non eſt Diſputandum.*

A third Caution ſhall be, that all the *projected* or *jutting* Parts (as they are termed) be very moderate, eſpecially the *Cornices* of the lower *Orders*; for, whilſt ſome think to give them a beautiful and royal Aſpect by their Largeneſs, they ſometimes hinder both the Light within, (whereof I ſhall ſpeak more in due Place,) and likewiſe detract much from the View of the *Front* without, as well appeareth in one of the principal Fabricks at *Venice*, namely, the Palace of the Duke *Grimani* on the *Canal Grande*, which, by this magnificent Error, is ſomewhat diſgraced. I need now ſay no more concerning *Columns* and their *Adjuncts*, about which Architects make ſuch a Noiſe in their Books, as if the very Terms of *Architraves*, and *Freezes*, and *Cornices*, and the like, were enough to graduate a Maſter of this *Art:* Yet let me, before I paſs to other Matter, prevent a familiar Objection; it will perchance be ſaid, that all this Doctrine touching the five *Orders*, were fitter for the *Quarries* of *Aſia*, which yielded 127 *Columns* of 60 *Foot* high, to the *Epheſian Temple*; or for *Numidia*, where *Marbles* abound; than for the *Spirits* of *England*, who muſt be contented with more ignoble *Materials:* To which I anſwer, that this need not diſcourage us; for I have often at *Venice* viewed, with much Pleaſure, an *Atrium Græcum* (we may tranſlate it in *Anti-porch*, after the *Greek* Manner) raiſed by *Andræa Palladio*, upon eight *Columns* of the *compounded Order*; the *Baſes* of Stone, without *Pedeſtals*; the Shafts or Bodies of meer Brick, three Foot and an half thick in the *Diameter* below, and conſequently thirty five Foot high, as himſelf hath deſcribed them in his ſecond Book, than which, mine Eye hath never yet beheld any Columns more ſtately, of Stone or Marble; for, the Bricks having firſt been formed in a *circular Mould*, and then cut, before their burning, into four Quarters or more, the Sides afterwards join ſo cloſely, and the Points concenter ſo exactly, that the *Pillars* appear one *entire Piece*; which ſhort Deſcription I could not omit, that thereby may appear, how in truth we want rather *Art* than *Stuff*, to ſatiſfie our greateſt *Fancies*.

After *Pillars*, the next in my Diſtribution are *Pilaſters*, mentioned by *Vitruvius*, *lib.* 5. *cap.* 1. and ſcant any where elſe under the Name of *Paraſtates*, as *Philander* conceiveth, which *Grammatical* Point (tho' perchance not very clear) I am contented to examine no further. Always, what we mean by the Thing itſelf is plain enough in our own Vulgar, touching which, I will briefly collect the moſt conſiderable Notes.

Pilaſters muſt not be too tall and ſlender, leſt they reſemble *Pillars*, nor too *dwarfiſh* and *groſs*, leſt they imitate the *Piles* or *Peers* of Bridges; Smoothneſs doth not ſo naturally become them as a *Ruſtick Superficies*; for they aim more at *State* and *Strength* than *Elegancy*. In private Buildings they ought not to be narrower than one Third, nor broader than two Parts of the whole Vacuity between *Pilaſter* and *Pilaſter*; but to thoſe that ſtand at the Corners, may be allowed a little more Latitude by Diſcretion, for Strength of the *Angles:* In *Theatres* and *Amphi-theatres*, and ſuch weighty Works. *Palladio* obſerveth them to have been as broad as the Half, and, now and then, as the whole *Vacuity*. He noteth likewiſe (and others conſent with him) that their true *Proportion* ſhould be an exact *Square*; but, for leſſening of Expence and inlarging of Room, they are commonly narrower in *Flank* than in *Front*. Their principal Grace doth conſiſt in half or whole *Pillars* applied unto them, in which Caſe it is well noted by Authors, that the Columns may be allowed ſomewhat above their ordinary Length, becauſe they lean unto ſo good *Supporters*.

And

And thus much ſhall ſuffice touching *Pilaſters*, which is a cheap, and a ſtrong, and a noble Kind of *Structure*.

Now becauſe they are oftner, both for Beauty and Majeſty, found *arched*, than otherwiſe; I am here orderly led to ſpeak of *Arches*, and under the ſame Head of *Vaults*: For an *Arch* is nothing indeed but a contracted *Vault*, and a *Vault* is but a dilated *Arch*: Therefore to handle this Piece both compendiouſly, and fundamentally, I will reſolve the whole Buſineſs into a few *Theorems*.

Theorem 1.

All ſolid *Materials* free from Impediment, do deſcend *perpendicularly* downwards, becauſe *Ponderoſity* is a natural Inclination to the Center of the World, and *Nature* performeth her Motions by the ſhorteſt Lines.

Theorem 2.

Bricks moulded in their ordinary *Rectangular* Form, if they ſhall be laid one by another in a level Row, between any Supporters ſuſtaining the two Ends, then all the Pieces between will neceſſarily ſink, even by their own natural *Gravity*; and much more if they ſuffer any Depreſſion by other Weight above them, becauſe their *Sides* being parallel, they have Room to deſcend perpendicularly, without Impeachment, according to the former *Theorem*; therefore to make them ſtand, we muſt either change their *Poſture*, or their *Figure*, or both.

Theoreme 3.

If Bricks moulded, or Stones ſquared *Cuneatim* (that is, *Wedgewiſe*, broader above than below) ſhall be laid in a *Row-level*, with their Ends ſupported, as in the precedent *Theorem*, pointing all to one Center; then none of the Pieces between can ſink till the Supporters give way, becauſe they want Room in that *Figuration*, to deſcend perpendicularly. But this is yet a weak Piece of *Structure*, becauſe the Supporters are ſubject to much Impulſion, eſpecially if the Line be long; for which Reaſon this *Form* is ſeldom uſed, but over *Windows*, or narrow *Doors*. Therefore to fortifie the Work as in this third *Theoreme*, we have ſuppoſed the *Figure* of all the *Materials* different from thoſe in the Second: So likewiſe we muſt now change the *Poſture*, as will appear in the *Theoreme* following.

Theoreme 4.

If the *Materials* figured as before *Wedge-wiſe*, ſhall not be diſpoſed levelly, but in form of ſome *Arch*, or Portion of a Circle pointing all to the ſame Center, in this Caſe neither the Pieces of the ſaid *Arch* can ſink down downwards, through Want of Room to deſcend * perpendicularly; nor the *Supporters* or *Butments* (as they are termed) of the ſaid *Arch* can ſuffer ſo much Violence, as in the precedent flat Poſture; for the Roundneſs will always make the incumbent Weight rather to reſt upon the *Supporters*, than to ſhove them; whence may be drawn an evident Corolary: That the ſafeſt of all *Arches* is the *Semicircular*, and of all Vaults the *Hemiſphere*, though not abſolutely exempted from ſome natural Weakneſs, † as *Bernardino Baldi* Abbot of *Guaſtalla*, in his Commentary upon *Ariſtotle*'s *Mechanicks*, doth very well prove; where let me note by the Way, that when any Thing is *Mathematically* demonſtrated weak, it is much more *Mechanically* weak: Errors ever occuring more eaſily in the Management of *Groſs Materials* than *Lineal Deſigns*.

---

* *By the firſt Theor.*

† *Which is the ſole Prerogative of perpendicular Lines, and right Angles.*

Theoreme 5.

As Semicircular *Arches*, or Hemiſpherical *Vaults*, being raiſed upon the total *Diameter*, be of all other the roundeſt, and conſequently the ſecureſt, by the precedent *Theoreme*: So thoſe are the gracefulleſt, which keeping preciſely the ſame Height, ſhall yet be diſtended one fourteenth Part longer than the ſaid intire *Diameter*; which Addition of diſtent will confer much to their *Beauty*, and detract but little from their *Strength*.

This Obſervation I find in *Leon-Batiſta Alberti*; but the Practice how to preſerve the ſame Height and yet diſtend the Arms or Ends of the Arch, is in *Albert Durer*'s *Geometry*, who taught the *Italians* many an excellent *Line*, of great Uſe in this Art.

Upon theſe five *Theoremes*, all the Skill of Arching and Vaulting is grounded: As for thoſe *Arches*, which our Artizans call of the third and fourth Point; And the *Tuſcan* Writers *di terzo*, and *di quarto acuto*, becauſe they always concur in an acute Angle, and do ſpring from Diviſion of the *Diameter* into three, four, or more Parts at Pleaſure; I ſay, ſuch as theſe, both for the natural Imbecility of the ſharp Angle it ſelf, and likewiſe for their very *Uncomlineſs*, ought to be exiled from judicious Eyes, and left to their firſt Inventors, the *Goths* or *Lumbards*, amongſt other *Reliques* of that barbarous Age.

Thus of my firſt *Partiton* of the Parts of every *Fabrick*, into five Heads, having gone through the two former, and been incidently carried into this laſt Doctrine touching *Arches* and *Vaults*. The next now in Order are the *Apertions*; under which Term I do comprehend *Doors*, *Windows*, *Stair-Caſes*, *Chimnies*, or other *Conducts*: In ſhort, all *In-lets*, or *Out-lets*; to which belong two general Cautions.

Firſt, That they be as few in Number, and as moderate in Dimenſion, as may poſſibly conſiſt with other due Reſpects: for in a Word, all *Openings* are *Weakenings*.

Secondly, That they do not approach too near the Angles of the *Walls*; for it were indeed a moſt eſſential *Soliciſme* to weaken that Part which muſt ſtrengthen all the reſt: A Precept well recorded, but ill practiſed by the *Italians* themſelves, particularly at *Venice*, where I have obſerved divers, *Pergoli*, or *Meniana* (as *Vitruvius* ſeemeth to call them, which are certain balliſed Outſtandings to ſatisfie Curioſity of Sight) very dangerouſly ſet forth, upon the very Point it ſelf of the *Mural Angle*.

Now, Albeit I make haſte to the caſting and comparting of the whole *Work*, (being indeed the very Definitive Sum of this Art, to diſtribute uſefully and gracefully a well choſen Plot) yet I will firſt under their ſeveral Heads, collect briefly ſome of the choiceſt notes belonging to theſe particular *Overtures*.

Of Doors and Windows.

THESE *In-lets* of *Men* and of *Light*, I couple together, becauſe I find their Dimenſions brought under one Rule by *Leon Alberti* (a learned Searcher) who from the School of *Pythagoras* (where it was a fundamental Maxim, that the Images of all Things are latent in *Numbers*) doth determine the comlieſt Proportion between Breadths and Heights; reducing *Symetry* to *Symphony*, and the *Harmony* of *Sound*, to a kind of *Harmony* in *Sight*, after this Manner: The two principal Conſonances, that moſt raviſh the Ear, are by Conſent of all Nature, the *fifth* and the *Octave*; whereof the firſt riſeth radically from the Proportion between *two* and *three*; the other from the double *Interval*, between *one* and *two*, or between *two* and *four*, &c. Now if we ſhall tranſport theſe Proportions from audible to viſible *Objects*, and apply them as they ſhall fall fitteſt (the Nature of the Place conſidered) namely, in ſome *Windows* and *Doors*, the *Symmetry* of *Two* to *Three* in their

their Breadth and Length ; in others, the Double as aforeſaid ; There will indubitably reſult from either a graceful and harmonious Contentment to the Eye: Which Speculation, though it may appear unto vulgar *Artizans*, perhaps too ſubtile, and too ſublime, yet we muſt remember, that *Vitruvius* himſelf doth determine many Things in his Profeſſion, by *Muſical* Grounds, and much commendeth in an *Architect*, a *Philoſophical* Spirit ; that is, he would have him (as I conceive it) to be no ſuperficial, and floating *Artificer*, but a Diver into Cauſes, and into the *Myſteries* of *Proportion*. Of the *Ornaments* belonging both to *Doors* and *Windows*, I ſhall ſpeak in another Place ; but let me here add one Obſervation; That our *Maſter* (as appeareth by divers Paſſages, and particularly *l. 6. c. 9.*) ſeems to have been an extream Lover of *Luminous Rooms* ; and indeed, I muſt confeſs, that a Frank Light can miſ-become no *Ædifice* whatſoever, Temples only excepted ; which were anciently dark, as they are likewiſe at this Day in ſome Proportion. *Devotion more requiring collected than diffuſed Spirits.* * Yet on the other Side, we muſt take heed to make a Houſe (tho' but for civil Uſe) all *Eyes*, like *Argus* ; which in *Northern Climes* would be too cold, in *Southern* too hot: And therefore the Matter indeed importeth more than a merry Compariſon. Beſides, There is no Part of *Structure* either more expenceful than *Windows*, or more ruinous ; not only for that vulgar Reaſon, as being expoſed to all Violence of Weather ; but becauſe conſiſting of ſo different and unſociable Pieces, as *Wood*, *Iron*, *Lead*, and *Glaſs*, and thoſe ſmall and weak, they are eaſily ſhaken ; I muſt likewiſe remember one Thing, (though it be but a *Grammatical* Note) touching *Doors*. Some were *Fores* and ſome were *Valvæ*. Thoſe (as the very Word may ſeem to import) did open *outwards*, theſe *inwards*, and were commonly of two *Leaves* or *Panes*, (as we call them) thereby requiring indeed a leſſer *Circuit* in their *Unfoldings*, and therefore much in Uſe among *Italians* at this Day : But I muſt charge them with an Imperfection, for though they let in as well as the former, yet they keep out worſe.

Of Stair-Caſes.

TO make a compleat *Stair-Caſe* is a curious Piece of *Architecture* ; The vulgar Cautions are theſe.

That it have a very liberal *Light* againſt all Caſualty of *Slips*, and *Falls*.

That the Space above the Head, be large and airy, which the *Italians* uſe to call *Un bel-ſfogolo*, as it were good *Ventilation*, becauſe a Man doth ſpend much Breath in mounting.

That the *Half-Paces* be well diſtributed at competent Diſtances, for repoſing on the Way.

That to avoid *Encounters*, and beſides to gratifie the Beholder, the whole *Stair-Caſe* have no nigard *Latitude*, that is, for the principal *Aſcent*, at leaſt ten Foot in *Royal Buildings*.

That the Breadth of every ſingle *Step* or *Stair* be never leſs than one Foot, nor more than eighteen Inches.

That they exceed by no Means half a Foot in their Height or Thickneſs, for our *Legs* do labour more in *Elevation*, than in *Diſtention* : Theſe I ſay are familiar Remembrances, to which let me add,

That the Steps may be laid where they join *Con un tantino di ſcarpa* ; we may tanſlate it ſomewhat *ſloaping*, that ſo the Foot may in a Sort both aſcend and deſcend together,

* *Lumen eſt diffuſium ſui & alieni.*

which though obſerved by few, is a ſecret and delicate Deception of the Pains in mounting.

Laſtly, to reduce this Doctrine to ſome natural, or at leaſt mathematical Ground (our *Maſter*, as we ſee, *l.* 9. *c.* 2. borroweth) thoſe Proportions that makes the Sides of a *Rectangular Triangle*, which the ancient School did expreſs in loweſt Terms, by the Numbers of 3. 4, and 5. That is, *Three* for the *Perpendicular*, from the *Stair-head* to the Ground. *Four* for the *Ground-line* it ſelf, or *Receſſion* from the Wall; and *Five* for the whole *Inclination* or Sloapneſs in the Aſcent; which Proportion, ſaith he,, will make *Temperatas graduum liberationes*. Hitherto of *Stair-caſes* which are direct: There are likewiſe *Spiral*, or *Cockle ſtairs*, either *Circular* or *Oval*, and ſometimes running about a *Pillar*, ſometimes vacant, wherein *Palladio*, (a Man in this Point of ſingular Felicity) was wont to divide the *Diameter* of the firſt Sort into three Parts, yielding one to the *Pillar*, and two to the *Steps*; of the ſecond into four, whereof he gave two to the *Stairs*, and two to the *Vacuity*, which had all their Light from above. and this in exact *Ovals* is a Maſter-piece.

Of Chimnies.

IN the preſent Buſineſs, *Italians* (who make very frugal Fires, are perchance not the beſt Counſellors.) Therefore from them we may better learn, both how to raiſe fair *Mantels* within the Rooms, and how to diſguiſe gracefully the Shafts of Chimnies abroad, (as they uſe) in ſundry Forms, which I ſhall handle in the latter Part of my Labour, and the reſt I will extract from *Philippe de l' Orme:* In this Part of his Work more diligent, than in any other; or, to do him Right, than any Man elſe.

Firſt he obſerveth very ſoberly, that who in the Diſpoſition of any Building will conſider the Nature of the *Region*, and the *Winds* that ordinarily blow from this, or that *Quarter*, might ſo caſt the Rooms which ſhall moſt need Fire, that he ſhould little fear the Incommodity of *Smoak*: And therefore he thinks that Inconvenience, for the moſt Part, to proceed from ſome inconſiderate Beginning. Or if the Error lay not in the *Diſpoſition*, but in the *Structure* it ſelf; then he makes a *Logical Enquiry*, that either the *Wind* is too much let in above, at the Mouth of the *Shaft*, or the *Smoak* ſtifled below: If none of theſe, then there is a Repulſion of the *Fume*, by ſome higher *Hill* or *Fabrick*, that ſhall overtop the Chimney, and works the former Effect: If likewiſe not this, then he concludes, that the Room which is infeſted, muſt be neceſſarily both little and cloſe, ſo as the Smoak cannot iſſue by a natural *Principle*, wanting a Succeſſion and Supply of new *Air*.

Now, In theſe Caſes he ſuggeſteth divers artificial Remedies, of which I will allow one a little *Deſcription*, becauſe it ſavoureth of *Philoſophy*, and was touched by *Vitruvius* himſelf, *l.* 1. *c.* 6. but by this Man ingeniouſly applied to to the preſent Uſe: He will have us provide two hollow *Braſs Balls* of reaſonable Capacity, with little Holes open in both, for Reception of Water, when the Air ſhall be firſt ſucked out; One of theſe we muſt place with the Hole upwards, upon an Iron Wire, that ſhall traverſe the *Chimney*, a little above the *Mantel* at the ordinary Height of the ſharpeſt Heat or Flames, whereof the Water within being rarified, and by Rarification reſolved into *Wind*, will break out, and ſo force up the Smoak, which otherwiſe might linger in the *Tunnel* by the Way, and oftentimes revert: With the other, (ſaith he) we may ſupply the Place of the former, when it is exhauſted; or, for a Need blow the Fire in the mean while: Which Invention I have interpoſed for ſome little Entertainment of the Reader; I will conclude with a Note from *Palladio*, who obſerveth that the Ancients did warm their Rooms with certain ſecret *Pipes* that came through the Walls, tranſporting Heat (as I conceive it) to ſundry Parts of the Houſe from one common *Furnace*; I am ready to baptize them *Caliducts*, as well as they are termed *Venti-ducts* and *Aquæ-ducts* that convey Wind and Water; which whether it were a Cuſtom or Delicacy. was ſurely both for Thrift, and for Uſe, far beyond the *German* Stoves; and I ſhould prefer it likewiſe before our own Faſhion, if the very Sight

of

of a Fire did not add to the Room a Kind of *Reputation*, * as old *Homer* doth teach us in a Verſe, ſufficient to prove that himſelf was not blind, as ſome would lay to his Charge.

Touching *Conducts* for the *Suillage*, and other Neceſſities of the Houſe, (which how baſe ſoever in Uſe, yet for Health of the Inhabitants, are as conſiderable, and perhaps more than the reſt) I find in our Authors, this Counſel; that *Art* ſhould imitate *Nature*, in thoſe ignoble Conveyances; and ſeparate them from Sight, (where there wants a running Water) into the moſt remote, and loweſt, and thickeſt Part of the Foundation; with ſecret Vents paſſing up thro' the Walls like a *Tunnel* to the wild Air aloft, which all the *Italian* Artizans commend for the Diſcharge of noiſome Vapours, though elſe-where to my Knowledge little practiſed.

Thus having conſidered the Precedent, *Apertions* or *Overtures*, in ſeveralty, according to their particular Requiſites, I am now come to the caſting and *Contexture* of the whole *Work*, comprehended under the Term of *Compartition*: Into which (being the maineſt Piece) I cannot enter without a few general Precautions, as I have done in other Parts.

Fitſt therefore, Let no Man that intendeth to build, ſettle his Fancy upon a Draught of the *Work* in Paper, how exactly ſoever meaſured, or neatly ſet off in *Perſpective*; and much leſs upon a bare *Plant* thereof, as they call the *Sciographia* or *Ground Lines*; without a Model or Type of the whole *Structure*, and of every Parcel and Partition in Paſtboard or Wood.

Next, that the ſaid Model be as plain as may be, without Colours or other beautifying, leſt the Pleaſure of the Eye preoccupate the *Judgment*; which Advice, omitted by the *Italian* Architects, I find in *Philippe de l'Orme*; and therefore, tho' *France* be not the Theater of beſt Building, it did merit ſome Mention of his Name.

Laſtly, the bigger that this Type be it is ſtill the better, not that I will perſwade a Man to ſuch an Enormity, as that Model made by *Antonio Lobaco*, of St. *Peter*'s Church at *Rome*, containing Twenty two Foot in Lenth, Sixteen in Breadth, and Thirteen in Height, and coaſting of 4184 Crowns: The Price, in Truth, of a reaſonable Chapel: Yet in a Fabrick of ſome 40 or 50 Thouſand Pounds Charge, I wiſh 30 Pounds at leaſt laid out beforehand in an exact *Model*; For a little Miſery in the Premiſes, may eaſily breed ſome Abſurdity of greater Charge, in the *Concluſion*.

Now, after theſe Premoniſhments, I will come to the *Compartition* itſelf, by which, the Authors of this *Art* (as hath been touched before) do underſtand a *graceful* and *uſeful* Diſtribution of the whole *Ground-plot*, both for Rooms of *Office*, and of *Reception* or *Entertainment*, as far as the Capacity thereof, and the Nature of the Country will comport; which Circumſtances in the preſent Subject, are all of main Conſideration, and might yield more Diſcourſe than on *Elemental Rhapſody* will permit (therefore, to anatomize briefly this Definition) the *Gracefulneſs* (whereof we ſpeak) will conſiſt in double *Analogy*, or *Correſpondency*; firſt between the *Parts* and the *Whole*, whereby a *great Fabrick* ſhould have *great Partitions*, *great Lights*, *great Entrances*, *great Pillars* or *Pilaſters*; in Sum, all the *Members great*. The next between the Parts themſelves, not only conſidering their Breadths and Lengths, ae before, when we ſpeak of Doors and Windows; but here likewiſe enters a third Reſpect of *Height*, a Point (I muſt confeſs) hardly reduceable to any general Precept.

True it is, that the *Ancients* did determine the *Longitude* of all Rooms, which were longer than broad, by the Double of their *Latitude*, *Vitruv. lib. 6. cap. 5.* And the

* Αἰθομένε δὲ πυρὸς γεραρώτερ᾽ οἶκ᾽ ἰδέσθαι, *Hom. Epigr.*

Heighth by the Half of the Breadth and Length ſummed together: But when the Room was preciſely Square, they made the *Heigth* half as much more as the *Latitude*; which Dimenſions the modern *Architects* have taken Leave to vary upon Diſcretion; ſometimes ſquaring the *Latitude*, and then making the *Diagonal* or *overthwart* Line, from *Angle* to *Angle*, of the ſaid *Square*; the Meaſure of the *Heighth* ſometimes more, but ſeldom lower than the full Breadth itſelf; which Boldneſs of quitting the old Proportions, ſome attribute firſt to *Michael Angelo da Buonaroti*, perchance upon the Credit he had before gotten in two other Arts.

The ſecond Point is *Uſefulneſs*, which will conſiſt in a ſufficient *Number* of Rooms, of all Sorts, and in their apt *Coherence*, without *Diſtraction*, without *Confuſion*, ſo as the Beholder may not only call it, *Una Fabrica ben reccolta*, as *Italians* uſe to ſpeak of well united Works; but likewiſe, that it may appear *airy* and *ſpiritous*, and fit for the Welcome of chearful Gueſts; about which, the principal Difficulty will be in contriving the Lights, and Stair-caſes, whereof I will touch a Note or two: For the firſt, I obſerve, that the ancient Architects were at much Eaſe; for both the *Greeks* and *Romans* (of whoſe private Dwellings *Vitruvius* hath left us ſome Deſcription) had commonly two cloiſtered open Courts, one ſerving for the *Womens* Side, and the other for the *Men*; who yet perchance now a-days would take ſo much Separation unkindly. Howſoever, by this Means, the Reception of *Light* into the Body of the Building was very prompt, both from without and from within; which we muſt now ſupply, either by ſome open *Form* of the *Fabrick*, or among graceful Refuges, by *tarraſing* any *Story* which is in danger of Darkneſs: Or, laſtly, by *perpendicular* Lights from the *Roof*, of all other the moſt natural, as ſhall be ſhewed anon. For the ſecond Difficulty, which is caſting of the Stair-caſes, that being in itſelf no hard Point, but only as they are Incumbrances of Room for other Uſe, (which Lights were not) I am therefore aptly moved here to ſpeak of them. And firſt, of Offices.

I have marked a Willingneſs in the *Italian* Artizans, to diſtribute the *Kitchin*, *Pantry*, *Bake-houſe*, *Waſhing-Rooms*, and even the *Buttery* likewiſe, under Ground, next above the *Foundation*, and ſometimes level with the *Plain* or *Floor* of the *Cellar*, raiſing the firſt Aſcent into the Houſe fifteen Foot, or more for that End, which, beſides the Benefit of removing ſuch Annoys out of Sight, and the gaining of ſo much more Room above, doth alſo, by Elevation of the *Front*, add *Majeſty* to the whole *Aſpect*. And with ſuch a Diſpoſition of the principal *Stair-caſe*, which commonly doth deliver us into the *Plain* of the Second *Story*, there may be Wonders done with a little Room, whereof I could alledge brave Examples Abroad, and none more artificial and delicious, than a Houſe built by *Daniele Barbaro*, *Patriarch* of *Aquileia*, before mentioned among the memorable Commenters upon *Vitruvius*. But the *Definition* (above determined) doth call us to ſome Conſideration of our own Country, where, tho' all the other petty Offices (before rehearſed) may well enough be ſo remote, yet, by the natural *Hoſpitality* of *England*, the *Buttery* muſt be more viſible, and we need perchance, for our *Ranges*, a more ſpacious and luminous *Kitchin* than the foreſaid Compartition will bear, with a more competent Nearneſs likewiſe to the *Dining-Room*, or elſe, beſides other Inconveniences, perhaps ſome of the Diſhes may ſtraggle by the Way: Here let me note a common Defect that we have of a very uſeful *Room*, called by the *Italians*, *Il Tinello*, and familiar, nay, almoſt eſſential in all their great Families. It is a Place properly appointed to conſerve the Meat that is taken from the Table, till the Waiters eat, which with us, by an old Faſhion, is more unſeemly ſet by in the mean While.

Now touching the Diſtribution of *Lodging* Chambers; I muſt here take Leave to reprove a Faſhion, which I know not how, hath prevailed thro' *Italy*, tho' without ancient Examples, as far as I can perceive by *Vitruvius*. The Thing I mean is, that they ſo caſt their Partitions, as when all Doors are open, a Man may ſee thro' the whole Houſe, which doth neceſſarily put an intolerable Servitude upon all the Chambers ſave the Inmoſt, where none

none can arrive but thro' the reſt; or elſe the *Walls* muſt be extreme thick for ſecret Paſſages. And yet this alſo will not ſerve the Turn, without at leaſt three Doors to every Room; a Thing moſt inſufferable in cold and windy Regions, and every Where no ſmall weakening to the whole Work. Therefore, with us that want no Cooling, I cannot commend the direct Oppoſition of theſe Overtures, being indeed meerly grounded upon the fond Ambition of diſplaying to a Stranger all our Furnitnre at one Sight, which therefore is moſt maintained by them that mean to harbour but a few; whereby they make only Advantage of the Vanity, and ſeldom prove the Inconveniency. There is likewiſe another Defect (as Abſurdities are ſeldom ſolitary) which will neceſſarily follow upon ſuch a ſervile Diſpoſing of inward Chambers; that they muſt be forced to make as many common great Rooms as there ſhall be ſeveral Stories, which (beſides that they are uſually dark, a Point hardly avoided, running, as they do, thro' the Middle of the whole Houſe) do likewiſe devour ſo much Place, that thereby they want other *Galleries* and Rooms of *Retreat*, which I have often conſidered among them (I muſt confeſs) with no ſmall Wonder; for I obſerve no Nation in the World, by Nature, more private and reſerved than the *Italian*; and on the other Side, in no Habitations leſs Privacy; ſo there is no kind of Conflict between their *Dwelling* and their *Being*. It might here perchance be expected, that I ſhould at leaſt deſcribe (which others have done in *Draughts* and *Deſigns*) divers Forms of Plants and Partitions, and Varieties of Inventions, but ſpeculative Writers (as I am) are not bound to compriſe all particular Caſes within the Latitude of the Subject which they handle: General Lights and Directions, and Pointings at ſome Faults, is ſufficient. The reſt muſt be committed to the Sagacity of the Architect, who will be often put to divers ingenious Shifts, when he is to wreſtle with Scarcity of Ground; as ſometimes † to damn one Room (tho' of ſpecial uſe) for the Benefit and Beauty of all the reſt; another While, to make thoſe faireſt which are moſt in Sight, and to leave the other, (like a cunning Painter) in ſhadow, *cum multis aliis*, which it were infinite to purſue; I will therefore cloſe this Part touching Compartition, as chearfully as I can, whith a ſhort Deſcription of a *Feaſting* or *Entertaining Room*, after the *Ægyptian* Manner, who ſeem (at leaſt till the Time of *Vitruvius*) from the ancient *Hebrews* and *Phenicians* (whence all Knowledge did flow) to have retained, with other Sciences; in a high Degree, alſo the Principles and Practice of this magnificent Art. For as far as I may conjecture by our Maſter's Text, *lib. 6. cap. 5.* (where, as in many other Places, he had tortured his Interpreters) there could no Form for ſuch a Royal Uſe be comparably imagined like that of the foreſaid Nation, which I ſhall adventure to explain.

Let us conceive a *Floor* or *Area* of goodly length, (for Example at leaſt of 120 Foot) with the Breadth ſomewhat more than the Half of the *Longitude*, whereof the Reaſon ſhall be afterwards rendred. About the two longeſt Sides and Head of the ſaid Room ſhall run an Order of *Pillars*, which *Palladio* doth ſuppoſe *Corinthian* (as I ſee by his Deſign) ſupplying that Point out of *Greece*, becauſe we know no Order proper to *Egypt*. The Fourth Side I will leave free for the *Entrance*. On the foreſaid *Pillars* was laid an *Architrave*, which *Vitruvius* mentioneth alone; *Palladio* adds thereunto (and with Reaſon) both *Freez* and *Cornice*, over which went up a continued *Wall*, and therein Half or Three-quarter *Pillars*, anſwering directly to the Order below, bvt a fourth Part leſs; and between theſe half Columns above, the whole Room was windowed round about.

Now, from the loweſt *Pillars* there was laid over a Contignation or Floor, born upon the outward *Wall*, and the Head of the Columns with Terrace and Pavement, *Sub dio* (ſaith our Maſter) and ſo indeed he might ſafely determine the Matter in *Egypt*, where they fear no Clouds: Therefore *Palladio* (who leaveth this Terrace uncovered in the Middle, and balliſed about) did perchance conſtrue him rightly, tho' therein diſcording from others: Always we muſt underſtand a ſufficient Breadth of Pavement left between the open Part and the Windows, for ſome Delight of Spectators that might look down into the Room. The Latitude I have ſuppoſed, contrary to ſome former Poſitions, a little more than the Half of the Length, becauſe the Pillars ſtanding at a competent Diſtance from the outmoſt *Wall*, will, by Interception of the Sight, ſomewhat in Appearance di-

 miniſh

† *The* Italians *call it* Una Stanza donata.

miniſh the Breadth; in which Caſes (as I have touched once or twice before) Diſcretion may be more licentious than Art. This is the Deſcription of an *Egyptian* Room for Feaſts and other *Jollities*. About the *Walls* whereof we muſt imagiue intire Statues placed below, and illuminated by the deſcending Light from the Tarrace, as likewiſe from the Windows between the half *Pillars* above, ſo as the Room had abundant and advantagious Light; and beſides other Garniſhing, muſt needs receive much State by the very Heighth of the Roof that lay over two Orders of Columns. And ſo having run thro' the four Parts of my firſt general Diviſion; namely, *Foundations*, *Walls*, *Apertitions* and *Compartitions*, the Houſe may now have Leave to put on his Hat, having hitherto been uncovered itſelf, and conſequently unfit to cover others. Which Point, tho' it be the laſt of this Art in Execution, yet it is always in Intention the firſt; for who would build but for Shelter? Therefore, obtaining both the Place and the Dignity of a final Cauſe, it hath been diligently handled by divers, but by none more learnedly than *Bernardino Baldi* Abbot of *Guaſtalla* (before cited upon other Occaſion) who doth *Fundamentally* and *Mathematically* demonſtrate the firmeſt Knittings of the upper Timbers, which make the Roof: But it hath been rather my Scope, in theſe Elements, to fetch the Ground of all from Nature herſelf, which indeed is the ſimpleſt Mother of Art: Therefore I will now only deliver a few of the propereſt, and (as I may ſay) of the naturaleſt Conſiderations that belong to this remaining Piece.

There are two Extremeties to be avoided in the Cover or Roof; that it be not too heavy nor too light. The firſt will ſuffer a vulgar Objection, of preſſing too much the Under-work. The other containeth a more ſecret Inconveniency; for the Cover is not only a bare Defence, but likewiſe a kind of Band or Ligature to the whole Fabrick, and therefore would require ſome reaſonable Weight: But of two Extremes, a Houſe Top-heavy is the worſt. Next, there muſt be a Care of Equality, that the Edifice be not preſſed on the one Side more than the other: And here *Palladio* doth wiſh (like a cautelous Artizan) that the inward *Walls* might bear ſome Share in the Burthen, and the outward be the leſs charged.

Thirdly, the *Italians* are very preciſe in giving the Cover a graceful Pendence of Sloapneſs, dividing the whole Breadth into nine Parts; whereof Two ſhall ſerve for the Elevation of the higheſt Top or Ridge from the loweſt. But in this Point the Quality of the Region is conſiderable: For (as our *Vitruvius* inſinuateth) thoſe Climes that fear the falling and lying of much Snow, ought to provide more inclining Pentices; and Comlineſs muſt yield to Neceſſity.

Theſe are the uſefulleſt Cautions which I find in Authors, touching the laſt Head of our Diviſion, wherewith I will conclude the firſt Part of my preſent Travel. The Second remaineth concerning Ornaments within or without the Fabrick; a Piece not ſo dry as the meer Contemplation of Proportions: And therefore, I hope therein ſomewhat to refreſh both the Reader and my ſelf.

THE

ELEMENTS

OF

ARCHITECTURE.

The Second Part.

EVERY Man's proper Manſion-Houſe and Home, being the Theater of his *Hoſpitality*, the Seat of *Self-Fruition*, the comfortableſt Part of his own Life, the nobleſt of his Son's *Inheritance*, a Kind of private *Princedom*; nay, to the *Profeſſors* thereof, an *Epitomy* of the whole *World*; may well deſerve by theſe Attributes, according to the Degree of the *Maſter*, to be decently and delightfully adorned. For which End, there are two *Arts* attending on *Architecture*, like two of her principal *Gentlewomen*, to dreſs and trim their Miſtreſs; Picture and Sculpture: Between whom, before I proceed any further, I will venture to determine an ancient Quarrel about their *Precedency*, with this Diſtinction; that in the garniſhing of *Fabricks*, *Sculpture* no doubt muſt have the Preheminence, as being indeed of nearer Affinity to *Architecture* it ſelf, and conſequently the more natural, and more ſuitablle *Ornament*. But on the other Side, (to conſider theſe two Arts as I ſhall do *Philoſophically*, and not *Mechanically*) An excellent Piece of *Painting*, is, to my Judgment, the more admirable Object, becauſe it comes near an *Artificial Miracle*, to make divers diſtinct *Eminences* appear upon a Flat by Force of *Shadows*, and yet the *Shadows* themſelves not to appear; which I conceive to be the uttermoſt Value and Virtue of a Painter, and to which very few are arrived in all *Ages*.

In theſe two Arts (as they are applicable to the Subject which I handle) it ſhall be fit firſt to conſider how to chooſe them; and next how to diſpoſe them, To guide us in the Choice, we have a Rule ſomewhere (I will remember) in *Pliny*, and it is a pretty Obſervation; that they do mutually help to cenſure one another. For *Picture* is beſt when it ſtandeth off, as if it were carved; and *Sculpture* is beſt when it appeareth ſo tender, as if it were painted: I mean, when there is ſuch a ſeeming Softneſs in the *Limbs*, as if not a *Chiſſel* had hewed them out of *Stone*, or other Material, but a *Pencil* had drawn and ſtroaked them in Oil, which the judicious *Poet*, took well to his Fancy.

Excudent alii ſpirantia mollius æra.

But this Generality is not ſufficient to make a good *Chooſer*, without a more particular Contraction of his Judgment. Therefore when a Piece of Art is ſet before us, let the firſt Caution be, not to ask who made it, leſt the *Fame* of the *Author* do captivate the Fancy of the Buyer. For, that excellent Men do always excellently, is a falſe Concluſion; where-

upon I obſerve among *Italian* Artizans three notable *Phraſes*, which well decipher the Degrees of their *Work*.

They will tell you, that a Thing was done *Con diligenza*, *Con ſtudio*, and *Con amore*; The firſt is but a bare and ordinary Diligence, the ſecond is a learned Diligence, and the third is much more, even a loving Diligence: They mean not with Love to the Beſpeaker of the Work, but with a Love and Delight to the Work it ſelf, upon ſome ſpecial Fancy to this, or that Story: And when all theſe concur (particularly the laſt) in an eminent Author, then perchance *Titianus fecit*, or ὁ Φιδίας ἐποίει will ſerve the Turn, without farther Inquiſition; otherwiſe Artizans have not only their Growths and Perfections, but likewiſe their *Vains* and *Times*.

The next Caution muſt be (to proceed logically) that in judging of the Work it ſelf, we be not diſtracted with too many Things at once; therefore firſt (to begin with *Picture*) we are to obſerve whether it be well drawn, (or as more elegant Artizans term it) well deſign'd: Then, whether it be well coloured, which be the two general *Heads*; and each of them hath two principal *Requiſites*: For in well deſigning, there muſt be *Truth* and *Grace*; in well colouring, *Force* and *Affection*; all other Praiſes are but Conſequences of theſe.

Truth (as we metaphorically take it in this Art) is a juſt and natural Proportion in every Part of the determined Figure. Grace is a certain free Diſpoſition in the whole Draught, anſwerable to that unaffected Frankneſs of Faſhion in a living Body, Man or Woman, which doth animate Beauty where it is, and ſupply it, where it is not.

Force conſiſteth in the Roundings and Raiſings of the Work, according as the Limbs do more or leſs require it; ſo as the Beholder ſhall ſpie no Sharpneſs in the bordering Lines, as when Taylors cut out a Suit, which *Italians* do aptly term according to that Compariſon, *Contorni taglienti*; nor any Flatneſs within the Body of the Figure, which how it is done, we muſt fetch from a higher Diſcipline, for the *Opticks* teach us. That a Plan will appear prominent, and, as it were, emboſſed, if the Parts fartheſt from the Axeltree, or middle Beam of the *Eye*, ſhall be the moſt ſhadowed, becauſe in all Darkneſs, there is a Kind of Deepneſs. But as in the Art of Perſwaſion, one of the moſt fundamental Precepts is the Concealment of *Art*; ſo here likewiſe, the Sight muſt be ſweetly deceived by an inſenſible Paſſage, from brighter *Colours* to dimmer, which *Italian* Artizans call the middle *Tinctures*, that is, not as the Whites and Yolks of Eggs ly in the *Shell*, with viſible Diſtinction; but as when they are beaten, and blended in a Diſh, which is the neareſt Compariſon that I can ſuddenly conceive.

Laſtly, *Affection* is the lively *Repreſentment* of any Paſſion whatſoever, as if the Figures ſtood not upon a *Cloath* or Board, but as if they were acting upon a Stage: And here I muſt remember, in Truth with much Marvel, a Note which I have received from excellent *Artizans*, that though Gladneſs and Grief be Oppoſiites in *Nature*, yet they are ſuch Neighbours and Confiners in Art, that the leaſt Touch of a Pencil will tranſlate a *Crying* into a *Laughing* Face, as it is repreſented by *Homer* in the Perſon of *Hector*'s Wife, as Painters and Poets have always had a Kind of Congeniality.

ΙΛΙΑΔ. ζ.

Ὡς εἰ πὼν ἀλόχοιε Φίλης ἐν χέρσιν ἔθηκε,
Παῖδ' ἑὸν, ἦδ' αρα μὶν κηώδεϊ δέξαλο κόλπῳ.
Δακρύειν γελάσασα.—— That is,

She took her Son into her Arms, weepingly laughing.

Which Inſtance, beſides divers other, doth often reduce unto my Memory that ingenions Speculation of the Cardinal *Cuſanus*, extant in his Works, touching the Coin-

Coincidence of Extreams. And thus much of the Four Requiſites, and Perfections in *Picture*.

In *Sculpture* likewiſe, the two firſt are abſolutely neceſſary; the Third impertinent; for ſolid Figures need no Elevation, by Force of Lights, or Shadows; therefore in the Room of this, we may put (as hath been before touched) a Kind of Tenderneſs, by the *Italians* termed *Morbidezza*, wherein the Chizel, I muſt confeſs, hath more Glory than the *Penſil*; that being ſo hard an Inſtrument, and working upon ſo unpliant Stuff, can yet leave *Stroaks* of ſo gentle *Appearance*.

The Fourth which is the expreſſing of Affection (as far as it doth depend upon the *Activity* and *Geſture* of the *Figure*) is as proper to the Carver, as to the Painter; though Colours, no doubt, have therein the greateſt Power; whereupon, perchance, did firſt grow with us the *Faſhion* of *colouring*, even *Regal Statues*, which I muſt take Leave to call an *Engliſh* Barbariſm.

Now in theſe four *Requiſites* already rehearſed, it is ſtrange to note, that no Artizan having ever been blamed for Exceſs in any of the three laſt; only *Truth* (which ſhould ſeem the moſt innocent) hath ſuffered ſome Objection; and all Ages have yielded ſome one or two *Artificers* ſo prodigiouſly exquiſite, that they have been reputed too natural in their Draughts, which will well appear by a famous Paſſage in *Quintillian*, touching the Characters of the ancient *Artizans*, falling now ſo aptly into my Memory, that I muſt needs tranſlate it, as in Truth it may well deſerve.

The Place which I intend, is extant in the laſt *Chapter* ſave one of his whole *Work*, beginning thus in *Latin*;

Primi, quorum quidem opera non vetuſtatis modo gratiâ viſenda ſunt clari Pictores, fuiſſe dicuntur, Polygnotus *atque* Aglaophon, *&c.*

The whole Paſſage in Engliſh *ſtandeth thus.*

THE firſt *Painters* of Name, whoſe Works be conſiderable for any Thing more than only *Antiquity*, are ſaid to have been *Polygnotus* and *Aglaophon*; whoſe bare Colourings (he means I think in white and black) hath even yet ſo many Followers, that thoſe rude and firſt *Elements*, as it were of that, which within a While, became an Art, are preferred before the greateſt *Painters* that have been extant after them, out of a certain Competition (as I conceive it) in Point of Judgment. After theſe, *Zeuxes* and *Paraſius* not far diſtant in Age, both about the Time of the *Pelopeneſian* War (for in *Xenophon* we have a Dialogue between *Paraſius* and *Socrates*) did add much to this Art. Of which the firſt is ſaid to have invented the due Diſpoſition of *Lights* and *Shadows*: The ſecond, to have more Subtilly examined, the Truth of *Lines* in the *Draught*; for *Zeuxes* did make Limbs bigger than the Life, deeming his Figures, thereby the more ſtately and Majeſtical; and therein (as ſome think) imitating *Homer*, whom the ſtouteſt Form doth pleaſe, even in *Women*. On the other Side, *Paraſius* did exactly limit all the Proportions ſo, as they call him the the Law-giver, becauſe in the Images of the Gods, and of *Heroical Perſonages*, others have followed his Patterns like a Decree; but *Picture* did moſt flouriſh about the Days of *Philip*, and even to the Succeſſors of *Alexander*, yet by ſundry Habilities; for *Protogenes* did excel in Diligence, *Pamphilus* and *Melanthius* in due *Proportion*, *Antiphilus* in a frank Facility; *Theon* of *Samos*, in Strength of Fantaſie and conceiving of Paſſions; *Appelles*, in Invention and Grace, whereof he doth himſelf moſt vaunt; *Euphranor* deſerves Admiration, that being in other excellent Studies a principal Man, he was likewiſe a wondrous Artizan, both in *Painting* and *Sculpture*. The like Difference we may obſerve among the *Statuaries*; for the Works of *Calon* and *Egeſias* were ſomewhat ſtiff, like the *Tuſcan* Manner: Thoſe of *Calamis* not done with ſo cold Stroaks; and *Myron* more tender than the former; a diligent Decency in *Polycletus* above others, to whom

though the higheſt Praiſe be attributed by the moſt; yet leſt he ſhould go free from Exception, ſome think he wanted Solemneſs; for as he may perchance be ſaid to have added a comely Dimenſion to humane Shape, ſomewhat above the Truth; ſo on the other Side, he ſeemed not to have fully expreſſed the Majeſty of the Gods: Moreover, he is ſaid not to have meddled willingly with the graver Age, as not adventuring beyond ſmooth Cheeks: But theſe Vertues that were wanting in *Polycletus*, were ſupplied by *Phidias* and *Alcmenes*; yet *Phidias* was a better Artizan in the repreſenting of Gods; than of Men; and in his Works of Ivory, beyond all Emulation,, even tho' he had left nothing behind him but his *Minerva* at *Athens*, or the *Olympian Jupiter* in *Elis*, whoſe Beauty ſeems to have added ſomewhat, even to the received Religion; the Majeſty of the Work, as it were equalling the Deity. To Truth, they affirm *Lyſippius* and *Praxiteles*, to have made the neareſt Approach: For *Demetrius* is therein reprehended, as rather exceeding than deficient; having been a greater Aimer at Likeneſs, than at Lovelineſs.

This is that witty Cenſure of the ancient Artizans which *Quintillian* hath left us where the laſt Character of *Demetrius* doth require a little Philoſophical Examination. How an Artificer, whoſe End is the Imitation of Nature, can be too natural, which likewiſe in our Days was either the Fault, or (to ſpeak more gently) the too much Perfection of *Albert Durer*, and perhaps alſo of *Michael Angelo da Buonaroti*, between whom I have heard noted by an ingenious Artizan a pretty nice Difference, that the *German* did too much expreſs that which was; and the *Italian*, that which would be: Which ſevere Obſervation of Nature, by the one in her commoneſt, and by the other in her abſoluteſt Forms, muſt needs produce in both a Kind of Rigidity, and conſequently more Naturalneſs than Gracefulneſs: This is the cleareſt Reaſon, why ſome exact *Symmetriſts* have been blamed for being too true, as near as I can deliver my Conceit. And ſo much touching the Choice of *Picture* and *Sculpture*: The next is, the Application of both to the beautifying of *Fabricks*.

Firſt therefore, touching *Picture*, there doth occur a very pertinent Doubt, which hath been paſſed over too ſlightly, not only by ſome Men, but by ſome Nations; namely whether this Ornament can well become the Outſide of Houſes, wherein the *Germans* have made ſo little Scruple, that their beſt Towns are the moſt painted, as *Auguſta* and *Noremberg*. To determine this Queſtion in a Word: It is true, that a Story well ſet out with a good Hand, will every Where take a judicious Eye: But yet withal it is as true, that various Colours on the Out-walls of Buildings have always in them more Delight than Dignity: Therefore I would there admit no Paintings but in Black and White, nor even in that Kind any Figures (if the Room be capable) under nine or ten Foot high, which will require no ordinary Artizan; becauſe the Faults are more viſible than in ſmall Deſigns. In unfigured Paintings the nobleſt is the Imitation of Marbles, and of *Architecture* it ſelf, as *Arches*, *Freezes*, *Columns*, and the like.

Now for the Inſide, here grows another Doubt, wherein *Groteſca* (as the *Italians*) or *Antique* Work (as we call it) ſhould be received, againſt the expreſs Authority of *Vitruvius* himſelf, *l.* 7. *c.* 5. where *Pictura* (ſaith he) *fit ejus, quod eſt, ſeu proteſt eſſe*; excluding by this ſevere Definition, all Figures compoſed of different Natures or Sexes; ſo as a *Syrene* or a *Centaur* had been intollerable in his Eye: But in this we muſt take Leave to depart from our Maſter, and the rather becauſe he ſpake out of his own Profeſſion, allowing *Painters* (who have ever been as little limited as *Poets*) a leſs Scope in their Imaginations, even than the graveſt Philoſophers, who ſometimes do ſerve themſelves of Inſtances that have no Exiſtence in Nature, as weſee in *Plato*'s *Amphisbæna*, and *Ariſtotle*'s *Hirco-Cervus*. And (to ſettle this Point) what was indeed more common and familiar among the *Romans* themſelves, than the Picture and Statue of *Terminus*, even one of their Deities? which yet if we well conſider, is but a Piece of *Groteſca*; I am for theſe Reaſons unwilling to impoveriſh that Art, though I could wiſh ſuch *medly* and *motly* Deſigns confined only to the Ornament of Freezes, and Borders, their propereſt Place. As for other ſtoried Works upon Walls, I doubt our Clime be too yielding and moiſt for ſuch Garniſhment; therefore, leav-

leaving it to the Dwellers Diſcretion, according to the Quality of his *Seat*, I will only add a Caution or two about the diſpoſing of Pictures within.

Firſt, That no Room be furniſhed with too many; which, in truth, were a *Surfeit* of *Ornament*, unleſs they be Galleries or ſome peculiar Repoſitory for Rarities of Art.

Next, That the beſt Pieces be placed not where there are the leaſt, but where there are the feweſt Lights: Therefore not only Rooms windowed on both Ends, which we call thorough-lighted; but with two or more Windows on the ſame Side, are Enemies to this Art: And ſure it is, that no Painting can be ſeen in full Perfection, but (as all Nature is illuminated) by a ſingle Light.

Thirdly, That in placing there be ſome Care alſo taken how the Painter did ſtand in the Working, which an intelligent Eye will eaſily diſcover, and that Poſture is the moſt Natural, ſo as *Italian* Pieces will appear beſt in a Room where the Windows are high, becauſe they are commonly made to a deſcending Light, which, of all other, doth ſet off Mens Faces in their trueſt Spirit.

Laſtly, that they be as properly beſtowed for their Quality, as fitly for their Grace, that is, chearful Paintings in Feaſting and Banqueting Rooms, Graver Stories in *Galleries*; Landskips and Boſcage, and ſuch wild Works, in open Tarraces, or in Summer-houſes (as we call them) and the like.

And thus much of Picture, which let me cloſe with this Note, That tho' my former Diſcourſe may ſerve perchance for ſome reaſonable leading in the Choice of ſuch Delights; yet let no Man hope by ſuch a ſpeculative Erudition, to diſcern the maſterly and myſterious Touches of Art, but an Artizan himſelf, to whom therefore we muſt leave the Prerogative to cenſure the Manner and Handling, as he himſelf muſt likewiſe leave ſome Points, perchance of no leſs Value to others; as for Example, whether the Story be rightly repreſented the Figures in true Action, the Perſons ſuited to their ſeveral Qualities, the Affections proper and ſtrong, and ſuch like Obſervations.

Now for Sculpture, I muſt likewiſe begin with a Controverſie, as before, (falling into this Place) or let me rather call it a meer Fancy ſtrangely taken by *Palladio*, who having noted in an old Arch or two at *Verona*, ſome Part of the Materials already cut in fine Forms, and ſome unpoliſhed, doth conclude (according to his Logick) upon this Particular, that the Ancients did leave the outward Face of their Marbles or Free-ſtone, without any Sculpture, till they were laid and cemented in the Body of the Building; for which likewiſe he findeth a Reaſon (as many do now and then very wittily, even before the thing itſelf be true) that the Materials being left rough, were more manageable in the Maſons Hand, than if they had been ſmooth, and that ſo the Sides might be laid together the more exactly, which Conceit once taken, he ſeems to have further imprinted, by marking in certain ſtoried *Sculptures* of old Time, how preciſely the Parts and Lines of the *Figures* that paſs from one Stone to another, do meet; which he thinks could hardly fall out ſo right, (forgetting, while he ſpeaks of ancient Things, the ancient Diligence) unleſs they had been cut after the joining of the Materials: But all theſe Inducements cannot countervail the ſole Inconvenience of ſhaking and disjointing the Commiſſures with ſo many Strokes of the Chizel, beſides an incommodious working on Scaffolds; eſpecially having no Teſtimony to confirm it, that I have yet ſeen among the Records of Art: Nay, it is indeed rather true, that they did ſquare and carve, and poliſh their Stone and Marble Works, even in the very Cave of the Quarry, before it was hardened by open Air: But (to leave Diſputation) I will ſet down a few poſitive Notes for the placing of Sculpture, becauſe the chuſing hath been handled before.

That, firſt of all, it be not too general and abundant, which would make a Houſe look like a Cabinet; and in this Point, moral Philoſophy, which tempereth Fancies, is the Superintendent of Art.

That eſpecially there be a due Moderation of this Ornament in the firſt Approach, where our Authors do more commend (I mean about the principle Entrance) a Dorick, than a *Corinthian* Garniſhment; ſo as if the great Door be arched with ſome brave Head, cut in fine Stone or Marble for the Key of the Arch, and two incumbent Figures gracefully leaning upon it towards one another, as if they meant to confer; I ſhould think this a ſufficient Entertainment for the firſt Reception of any judicious Sight, which I could wiſh ſeconded with two great ſtanding Statues on each Side of a paved Way that ſhall lead up into the Fabrick, ſo as the Beholder, at firſt Entrance, may paſs his Eye between them.

That the Niches, if they contain Figures of white Stone or Marble, be not covered in their Concavity too black: For tho' *Contraria juxta ſe poſita magis illuceſcunt* (by an old Rule,) yet it hath been ſubtily and indeed truly noted, that our Sight is not well contented with thoſe ſudden Departments from one Extreme to another: Therefore let them have rather a duskiſh Tincture than an abſolute black.

That fine and delicate *Sculptures* be helped with Nearneſs, and groſs with Diſtance, which was well ſeen in the old Controverſie between *Phidias* and *Alcmenes* about the *Statue* of *Venus*, wherein the firſt did ſhew Diſcretion and ſave Labour, becauſe the Work was to be viewed at good Height, which did drown the ſweet and diligent *Strokes* of his Adverſary: A famous Emulation of two principal *Artizans*, celebrated even by the *Greek* Poets.

That in the placing of ſtanding Figures aloft, we muſt ſet them in a Poſture ſomewhat bowing forward, becauſe (ſaith our Maſter, *lib.* 3. *cap.* 3. out of a better Art than his own) the viſual Beam of our Eye, extended to the Head of the ſaid Figures, being longer than to the Foot, muſt neceſſarily make that Part appear farther, ſo as to reduce it to an erect or upright Poſition, there muſt be allowed a due Advantage of ſtooping towards us, which *Albert Durer* hath exactly taught in his forementioned *Geometry*. Our *Vitruvius* calleth this Affection in the Eye, a *Reſupination of the Figure:* For which Word (being in truth his own for ought I know) we are almoſt as much beholding to him, as for the Obſervation itſelf: And let thus much ſummarily ſuffice touching the Choice and Uſe of theſe adorning Arts. For to ſpeak of garniſhing the Fabrick with a Row of erected *Statues* about the *Cornice* of every *Contignation* or *Story*, were Diſcourſe more proper for *Athens* or *Rome*, in the Time of their true Greatneſs, when (as *Pliny* recordeth of his own Age) there were near as many carved Images as living Men; like a noble Contention, even in Point of Fertility between Art and Nature: Which Paſſage doth not only argue an infinite Abundance both of *Artizans* and *Materials*, but likewiſe of *Magnificent* and *Majeſtical Deſires* in every common Perſon of thoſe Times, more or leſs, according to their Fortunes. And true it is indeed, that the *Marble Monuments* and *Memories* of well-deſerving Men; wherewith the very High-Ways were *ſtrewed* an each *Side*, was not a bare and tranſitory Entertainment of the Eye, or only a gentle Deception of Time to the *Traveller*, but had alſo a ſecret and ſtrong *Influence*, even into the Advancement of the Monarchy, by continual Repreſentation of virtuous Examples, ſo as in that Point, *Art* became a Piece of *State*.

Now, as I have before ſubordinated *Picture* and *Sculpture* to *Architecture*, as their Miſtreſs; ſo there are certain inferior Arts likewiſe ſubordinate to them: As Under-picture, *Moſaick*; Under-ſculpture, *Plaſtick*; which Two I only nominate as the fitteſt to garniſh Fabricks.

Moſaick

Moſaic is a kind of Painting in ſmall *Pebbles*, *Cockles* and *Shells* of ſundry Colours; and of late Days likewiſe with Pieces of Glaſs figured at Pleaſure; an Ornament in truth of much Beauty and long Life; but of moſt Uſe in *Pavements* and *Floorings*.

Plaſtick is not only under *Sculpture*, but indeed very *Sculpture* itſelf; but with this Difference, that the *Plaſterer* doth make his Figures by Addition, and the Carver by Subſtraction, whereupon *Michael Angelo* was pleaſed to ſay ſomewhat pleaſantly, That *Sculpture was nothing but a Purgation of Superfluities*. For, take away from a Piece of Wood or Stone all that is *ſuperfluous*, and the Remainder is the intended Figure. Of this *Plaſtick Art*, the chief Uſe with us is in the graceful fretting of Roofs: But the *Italians* apply it to the *mantling* of *Chimneys* with great Figures. A cheap Piece of *Magnificence*, and as durable almoſt within Doors, as harder Forms in the Weather. And here, tho' it be a little Excurſion, I cannot paſs unremembred again their Manner of diſguiſing the Shafts of *Chimneys* in various Faſhions, whereof the nobleſt is the *Pyramidal*, being, in truth, a Piece of polite and civil Diſcretion, to convert even the Conduits of Soot and Smoak into Ornaments, whereof I have hitherto ſpoken, as far as may concern the Body of the Building.

Now there are Ornaments alſo without, as *Gardens*, *Fountains*, *Groves*, *Conſervatories* of rare *Beaſts*, *Birds* and *Fiſhes*: Of which ignoble kind of Creatures, *We ought not* (ſaith our greateſt * Maſter among the Sons of Nature) *childiſhly to deſpiſe the Contemplatioe; for in all Things that are natural, there is ever ſomething that is admirable.* Of theſe external Delights a Word or two.

Firſt, I muſt note a certain Contrariety between *Building* and *Gardening*; for as Fabricks ſhould be regular, ſo Gardens ſhould be irregular, or at leaſt caſt into a very wild Regularity. To exemplify my Conceit, I have ſeen a Garden (for the Manner perchance incomparable) into which the firſt Acceſs was a high Walk like a Terrace, from whence might be taken a general View of the whole Plot from below, but rather in a delightful Confuſion, than with any plain Diſtinction of the Pieces. From this the Beholder deſcending many Steps, was afterwards conveyed again by ſeveral *Mountings* and *Valings*, to various Entertainments of his *Cent* and *Sight*, which I ſhall not need to deſcribe (for that were Poetical) let me only note this, that every one of theſe Diverſities was as if he had been *Magically* tranſported into a new *Garden*.

But. tho' other Countrys have more Benefit of Sun than we, and thereby more properly tied to contemplate this Delight, yet have I ſeen in our own a delicate and diligent Curioſity, ſurely without parallel among Foreign Nations, namely in the Garden of Sir *Henry Fanſhaw*, at his Seat in *Ware Park*, where, I well remember, he did ſo preciſely examine the Tinctures and Seaſons of his Flowers, that in their *Settings*, the *Inwardeſt* of thoſe which were to come up at the ſame Time, ſhould be always a little darker than the outmoſt, and ſo ſerve them for a kind of gentle *Shadow*, like a Piece, not of Nature, but of Art: Which mention (incident to this Place) I have willingly made of his Name, for the dear Friendſhip that was long between us, tho' I muſt confeſs, with much Wrong to his other Virtues, which deſerve a more ſolid *Memorial*, than among theſe vacant Obſervations. So much of *Gardens*.

Fountains are figured, or only plain Water'd-works; of either of which I will deſcribe a matchleſs Pattern.

The firſt, done by the famous Hand of *Michael Angelo da Buonaroti*, in the Figure of a ſturdy *Woman* waſhing and winding of Linnen Clothes; in which Act, ſhe wrings out

* *Ariſt. lib.* 1. *cap.* 5. *de part. Anim.* δεῖ μὴ δυσχεραίνειν παιδικῶς τὴν περι τῶν ἀτιμοτέρων ζώων ἐπίσκεψιν. Ἐν φᾶσι γὰρ τοῖς φυσικοῖς ἔνεστί τι θαυμαστόν.

the Water that made the *Fountain*, which was a graceful and natural Conceit in the Artificer, implying the Rule, that all Deſigns of this Kind ſhould be proper.

The other doth merit ſome larger Expreſſion, there went a long, ſtreight, moſſie Walk of competent Breadth, Green, and ſoft under foot, liſted on both Sides with an *Aquæduct* of *white Stone*, Breaſt-high, which had a *hollow Channel* on the Top, where ran a pretty trickling *Stream*, on the Edge whereof were *couched* very thick all along, certain ſmall Pipes of Lead, in little Holes, ſo neatly that they could not be well perceived, till, by the turning of a Cock, they did ſprout over interchangably from *Side* to *Side*, above Mans Height, in form of Arches, without any Interſection or Meeting aloft, becauſe the Pipes were not exactly oppoſite, ſo as the Beholder, beſides that which was fluent in the *Aquædacts* on both Hands in his View, did walk as it were under a *continual Bower* and *Hemiſphere* of Water, without any Drop falling on him. An *Invention* for Refreſhment ſurely far excelling all the *Alexandrian* Delicacies, and *Pneumaticks* of *Hero*.

Groves and artificial Devices under Ground are of great Expence and little Dignity, which, for my Part, I could wiſh here converted into thoſe *Crypteria*, whereof Mention is made among the curious Proviſions of *Tycho Braghé* the *Daniſh* Ptolomy, as I may well call him, which were deep Concaves in Gardens, where the *Stars* might be obſerved even at Noon. For (by the Way) to think that the Brightneſs of the *Suns* Body above, doth drown our diſcerning of the leſſer Lights, is a Popular Error, the ſole Impediment being that Luſtre, which, by Reflection- doth ſpread about us from the Face of the Earth; ſo as the *Caves* before touched, may well conduce, not to a delicious, but to a learned Pleaſure.

In *Aviaries* of *Wire*, to keep Birds of all *Sorts*, the *Italians* (tho' no waſteful Nation) do in ſome Places beſtow vaſt Expence, including great *Scope* of Ground, Variety of Buſhes, Trees of good Height, running Waters, and ſometime a *Stove* annexed, to contemper the Air in Winter: So as thoſe *Chantereſſes*, unleſs they be ſuch as perhaps delight as much in their Wing as in their Voice, may live long among ſuch good Proviſions and Room, before they know that they are *Priſoners*, reducing often to my Memory that Conceit of the *Roman Stoick*, who, in Compariſon of his own free Contemplations, did think divers great and ſplendent Fortunes of his Time, little more than *commodious Captivities*.

Concerning *Ponds* of Pleaſure near the Habitation, I will refer my ſelf to a grave Author of our own (tho' more illuſtrious by his other † Work) namely, *Sarisburienſis de Piſcinâ*.

And here I will end the ſecond Part, touching Ornaments, both within and without the Fabrick.

Now, as almoſt all thoſe which have delivered the Elements of *Logick*, do uſually conclude with a Chapter touching *Method*; ſo I am here ſeized with a Kind of critical Spirit, and deſirous to ſhut up theſe Building *Elements* with ſome methodical Direction how to cenſure Fabricks already raiſed: For indeed, without ſome Way to contract our Judgment, which among ſo many Particulars would be loſt by Diffuſion; I ſhould think it almoſt harder to be a good Cenſurer, than a good Architect; becauſe the working Part may be helped with Deliberation, but the judging muſt flow from an extemporal Habit. Therefore (not to leave this laſt Piece without ſome Light) I could wiſh him that cometh to examine any nobler *Work*, firſt of all to examine himſelf, whether perchance the Light of many brave Things before (which remain like impreſſed Forms) have not made him apt to think nothing good but that which is the beſt, for this Humour were too ſowre. Next, before he come to ſettle any imaginagle Opinion, let him by all Means ſeek to inform

† *De nugis Curial, &c.*

form himſelf preciſely, of the Age of the Work, upon which he muſt paſs his *Doom.* And if he ſhall find find the apparent Decays to exceed the Proportion of Time, then let him conclude without farther Inquiſition, as an abſolute Decree, that either the Materials were too ſlight, or the Seat is nought. Now, after theſe Premiſſes, if the Houſe be found to bear his Years well, (which is always a Token of ſound *Conſtitution)* Then let him ſuddenly run backwards, for the Method of cenſuring is contrary to the Method of compoſing, from the Ornaments (which firſt allure the Eye) to the more eſſential Members, till at laſt he be able to form this Conclvſion, that the Work is commodious, firm, and delightful; which (as I ſaid in the Beginning) are the three capital Conditions required in good Buildings, by all Authors, both Ancient and Modern. And this is, as I may term it, the moſt ſciential Way of Cenſuring. There are two other which I muſt not forget: The firſt in *Georgio Vaſſari*, before his laborious Work of the Lives of *Architects*, which is to paſs a running Examination over the whole *Edifice*, according to the Properties of a well ſhapen Man. As whether the Walls ſtand upright upon clean Footing and Foundation; whether the Fabrick be of a beautiful Stature; whether for the Breadth it appear well burniſhed; whether the principal Entrance be on the middle Line of the Front or Face, like our Mouths; whether the Windows, as our Eyes, be ſet in equal Number and Diſtance on both Sides; whether the Offices, like the Veins in our Bodies, be uſefully diſtributed, and ſo forth. For this allegorical Review may be driven as far as any Wit will, that is at Leiſure.

The ſecond Way is in *Vitruvius* himſelf, *l.* 1. *c.* 2. where he ſummarily determineth ſix Conſiderations, which accompliſh this whole Art.

Ordinatio.
Diſpoſitio.
Eurythmia.
Symmetria.
Decor, and
Diſtributio.

Whereof (in my Conceit) we may ſpare him the firſt two; for as far as I can perceive, either by his Interpreters or by his own Text (which in that very Place, where perchance he ſhould be cleareſt, is of tll other the cloudieſt) he meaneth nothing by *Ordination*, but a well ſettling of the Model or Scale of the whole Work. Nor by Diſpoſition, more than a neat and full Expreſſion of the firſt Idea or Deſignment thereof; which perchance do more belong to the Artificer, than to the Cenſurer. The other four are enough to condemn, or abſolve any Fabrick whatſoever. Whereof *Eurythemia* is that agreeable Harmony between the Breadth, Length, and Height of all the Rooms of the *Fabrick*, which ſuddenly, where it is, taketh every Beholder by the ſecret Power of Proportion; wherein let me only note this, that though the leaſt Error or Offence that can be comitted againſt Sight, is Exceſs of Height, yet that Fault is no Where of ſmall Importance, becauſe it is the greateſt Offence againſt the Purſe.

Symmetria is the Convenience that runneth between the Parts and the Whole, whereof I have formerly ſpoken.

Decor is the keeping of a due Reſpect between the Inhabitant and the Habitation. Whence *Palladius* did conclude, that the principal Entrance was never to be regulated by any certain Dimenſions, but by the Dignity of the Maſter; yet to exceed rather in the more, than in the leſs, is a Mark of Generoſity, and may always be excuſed with ſome noble Emblem, or Inſcription, as that of the *Conte di Bevilacqua*, over his large Gate at *Verona*, where perchance had been committed a little *Diſproportion.*

Patet Janua : Cor magis.

And here likewiſe I muſt remember our ever memorable Sir *Philip Sidney*, (whoſe Wit was in Truth the very Rule of Cougruity) who well knowing that *Baſilius* (as he had painted the State of his Mind) did rather want ſome extraordinary Forms to entertain his Fancy, than Room for Courtiers; was contented to place him in a *Star-like Lodge*; which otherwiſe in ſevere Judgment, had been an incommodious *Figure*.

Diſtrubutio is that uſeful Caſting of all *Rooms* for *Office*, *Entertainment*, or *Pleaſure*, which I have handled before at more Length than any other Piece.

Theſe are the four *Heads* which every Man ſhould run over, before he paſs any determinate *Cenſure* upon the Works that he ſhall view, wherewith I will cloſe this laſt Part, touching *Ornaments*. Againſt which (me thinks) I hear an Objection, even from ſome well-meaning Man; that theſe delightful *Crafts*, may be divers Ways ill applied in a Land. I muſt confeſs indeed, there may be a laſcivious, and there may be likewiſe a ſuperſtitious Uſe, both of *Picture* and of *Sculpture*: To which Poſſibility of Miſapplication, not only theſe *Semi-liberal Arts* are ſubject, but even the higheſt Perfections and Endowments of *Nature*. As *Beauty* in a light Woman, *Eloquence* in a mutinous Man, *Reſolution* in an Aſſaſinate, prudent *Obſervation* of Hours and Humours in a corrupt Courtier, *Sharpneſs of Wit* in a ſeducing Scholar, and the like. Nay, finally let me ask, What *Art* can be more pernicious, than even *Religion* itſelf. if itſelf be converted into an Inſtrument of *Art*: Therefore, *ab abuti ad non uti, negatur conſequentia.*

F I N I S.

A

JUDGMENT in General,

UPON

All the AUTHORS (cited in the Parallel.)

By ROLAND FREART, *Sr. De Chambry.*

THE following Diſcourſe is intended, to give a general Hint of the ſeveral Talents and Abilities which I have remark'd in every one of thoſe Maſters.

The firſt of all is, without any Conteſt, the famous *Andrea Palladio*, to whom we are oblig'd for a very rare Collection of antique Plans and Profiles, of all Sorts of Buildings, deſign'd after a moſt excellent Manner, and meaſured with a Diligence ſo exact, that there is nothing more in that Particular left us to deſire: Beſides, the very advantageous Opportunities which he has had at *Venice*, and in all the *Vincentine*, his native Country, do leave us ſuch Marks as clearly ſhew'd him, not only to have been a Spectator of theſe great Maſters of Antiquity, but even a Competitor with them, and emulous of their Glory.

The Man who neareſt approaches to him, is alſo another Native of *Vincenza*, *Vincent Scamozzi* by Name, a far greater Talker (as well appears in his Books) but a much inferior Workman, and leſs delicate in Point of Deſign; a Man may eaſily perceive it by the Profiles he has left us of the five Orders, the manner whereof is a little dry; beſides that, he is very poor and trite in his Ornaments, and but of an ill Guſto: He is notwithſtanding this, the neareſt that approaches him as to the Regularity of his Proportions, and the moſt worthy to be paralled with *Palladio*.

Sebaſtian Serlio, and *Jacomo Barozzio*, ſurnamed *Vignola*, hold of the ſecond Claſs; and albeit they have both follow'd contrary Ways, and very different Manners, yet I forbear not to place them in the ſame Range, and am indeed in ſome Difficulty to determine which of the two has deſerv'd more of the Publick; were it not that one might ſay, the firſt had the good Fortune to work for Maſters who needed only to be ſhew'd the Idea of the Things in Groſs, without having any Thing to do with the Retail of their Proportions; and that the other only propos'd to himſelf the Inſtruction of young Beginners, and to deliver to them the Rules of Art and good Deſign: But it had been of excellent Advantage for us all, that *Serlio*'s Book had been deſign'd like that of *Vignola*, or that *Vignola*'s Study and Diligence in ſearching, had been equal to that of *Serlio*.

The famous Commentator of *Vitruvius*, *Daniel Barbaro*, Patriarch of *Aquilea*, with very great Juſtice we may fitly ſtile the *Vitruvius* of our Times, ſhall in this Place be ſeated in the Middle of all the Maſters to be their Preſident, as being indeed the Interpreter and Oracle of the very Father of Architects, and his Companion *Pietro Cateneo* (whom I aſſign only to preſerve an equal Conformity in my Deſigns of comparing modern Authors) ſhall ſerve only as a petty Chaplain in the Retinue of this great Prelate, though he might well claim Peerage even with the moſt Part of the reſt.

Among the other latter four, I have a particular Eſteem for one above the reſt, and that is *Leon Baptiſta Alberti*, the moſt ancient of all the Moderns, and haply too, the moſt knowing in the Art of Building, as may be eaſily collected by a large and excellent Volume which he has publiſh'd, wherein he fundamentally ſhews whatever is neceſſary for an Architect to know. But as to the Profiles of the Orders themſelves and his Regulation of them, I cannot but ſtrangely admire at his Negligence in drawing them no more correctly, and with ſo little Art, himſelf being a Painter; ſince it had ſo notably contributed to its Recommendation, and to the Merit of his Works. But this I have reform'd in my Collection, and believe in ſo doing to have perform'd him no little Service, as haply in Danger to have otherwiſe never been follow'd, there being hardly any Appearance, that whilſt the Deſigns of his Book were ſo pitifully drawn, being made Uſe of in Work, they ſhould ever produce ſo good Effect.

To the moſt ancient I would aſſign for *Co-rival*, the moſt modern, that by confronting them to each other, we might the better come to diſcover whether the Art it ſelf improve and proceeds to any farther Perfection, or does not already begin to impair and decline. This laſt Author, namely *Viola*, is of the Category of thoſe which the *Italians* call *Cicaloni*, eternal Talkers to no Purpoſe. He, whilſt he propoſes to himſelf to write of the Orders and Proportions of *Architecture*, of the Rules of Perſpective, of ſome Elements of *Geometry*, and other the like Dependencies on his principal Subject, amuſes himſelf poor Man in telling Stories; ſo that inſtead of a Book of *Architecture*, he has made (e're he was aware) a Book of *Metamorphoſes*. Beſides, he has this in common with *Leon Baptiſta Alberti*, that his Deſigns are both very ill contrived and executed, notwithſtanding he follows a more elegant Manner, and conformable enough to that of *Palladio*; but the Method which he uſes in his Partitions, is ſo groſs and mechanick, that he reckons all upon his Fingers, and ſeems to have never ſo much as heard ſpeak either of Arithmetick or Cyphers.

Concerning the two which remain, a Man cannot well affirm them to have been inferior to thoſe who preceeded them, nor yet to have been of the ſame Force with the firſt, though I conceive they may well compare with three or four of them at leaſt. And, Theſe are two *French* Maſters ſufficiently renown'd both by their Works and Writings, *Philibert de Lorme* and *John Bullant*, whom yet I do not here place in the laſt Range, as being at all their Inferiours; but only that I may ſeparate them from the *Italians* who are in far greater Numbers.

A

Practical Treatiſe

ON THE

Five ORDERS of *Architecture.*

On the Five Orders in General.

IN the following Diſcourſe, I intend a brief Explanation of the general principal Terms made Uſe of; *viz.* Ordonance, and Order; the Etymology of the Terms are needleſs here, I think it ſufficient to explain, what is meant when either of the Terms is uſed: By Ordonance is to be underſtood that which regulates the Size of all the Parts of a Building, with reſpect to their Uſe. Now, by the Parts of a Building are underſtood, not only the Pieces of which it is compoſed, ſuch as a Court, Veſtibule, or a Hall, but alſo thoſe which go to the Conſtruction of each of them, ſuch as Pedeſtals, Columns, Entablatures, *&c.* and of which, Ordonance directs the Proportions, giving each Dimenſions proper to the Uſes for which they are deſign'd; as that of being more or leſs ſtrong, and fit to ſuſtain a great Weight, or more or leſs capable of receiving thoſe delicate Ornaments, either of Sculpture or Moldings, wherewith they may be enrich'd: For the Ornaments and Embeliſhments belong alſo to the Ordonance, and give even more viſible Characters, to deſign and regulate the Orders, than the Proportions do, in which the moſt eſſential Differences of the Order conſiſt.

An Order of *Architecture*, then, is that which is regulated by the Ordonance: An Order conſiſts of two Parts at leaſt, as the Column and Entablature, and of four Parts at moſt, as when a Pedeſtal is placed under the Column, and Pedeſtal or Acrotere above the Entablature; excluſive of Impoſts and Arches which may be added to the Order with two Parts, or to that of four Parts.

The Orders in Number are five, three *Greek* Orders, *viz. Doric*, *Ionic*, and *Corinthian*; and two *Italian* Orders, as *Tuſcan*, and *Compoſita*: The three *Greek* Orders repreſent the three Sorts of Building, *viz.* the Solid, the Fine, and a Medium between both, and are therefore eſteem'd the moſt eſſential to be put in Execution; the other two being deem'd ſuperfluous, the *Tuſcan* being abſtracted from the *Doric*, and the *Compoſita* a *Compoſitian* from the *Corinthian* and *Ionic*.

The Pedeſtal to each Order conſiſts of three Parts, *viz. Baſe*, *Dye*, and *Cornice* or *Cymatium*.

The Column conſiſts of three Parts, *viz. Baſe*, *Shaft*, and *Capital*: And the Entablature conſiſts of three Parts, *viz. Architrave*, *Freeze*, and *Cornice*.

The Column is proportion'd according to the Order it repreſents, *viz.* the *Doric* is eight Diameters high, the *Ionic* nine Diameters, and the *Corinthian* ten Diameters, the *Tuſcan* is ſeven Diameters, and the *Compoſita* is ten Diameters.

The Pedeſtal to each Order, is equal in Height to one Third of the Column which it ſupports.

The Entablature is likewiſe regulated by the Column, and is allowed not to be leſs than one Fifth, nor more than one Fourth of the Height of the Column; as when the Order is erected without Pedeſtals, then the Entablature of one Fifth is to be uſed: But when the Columns ſtand on Pedeſtals or a high Baſement equal thereto, and not confin'd to a View of a ſhort Diſtance, then it will be proper to introduce the Entablature of one Fourth of the Height of the Column.

On the foregoing Principles, the ingenious Mr. *Abraham Boſſe* (of the Royal Academy of *Paris*) has made an accurate Calculation and Diſpoſition of all the Parts of the five Orders, which are not only collected from the moſt approved Proportions of *Palladio*, *Scamozzi*, and *Vignola*, but alſo from the moſt valuable Remains of antique Buildings, the Delicacy of which will appear in the following Plates.

There are different Sentiments or Opinions on the Practice, of placing the Orders above or upon one another, by ſome the Practice is totally condemned, by others juſt favourably countenanced, but by no one applauded: Nevertheleſs, as ſometimes the Scituation of a Fabrick may not admit of a favourable Proſpect for large Columns, or Pillaſters, *&c.* it is then at the Diſcretion of the Architect to introduce two or three Orders at moſt, one upon the other, provided he place the ſtrongeſt and moſt ſubſtantial, to ſupport the weakeſt, as the *Doric* under the *Ionic*, and the *Ionic* under the *Corinthian*.

And altho' a long Uſe has prevailed, to place the *Compoſita* upon the *Corinthian*, yet the *Compoſita* being partly made of the *Ionic*, it ought to be accounted moſt material and placed under the *Corinthian*. It is the Opinion of many that the *Corinthian* and *Compoſita* ought not to be introduced to appear together in the ſame Front.

The Columns ought to ſtand exactly over each other, ſo that their two Axes may be both found in the ſame Perpendicular.

The Diameter of the Columns of the upper Order, at the *Baſe*, muſt be equal to that of the Top of the under Columns.

When two Arcades are placed over each other, the higher ought to be regulated by the lower, that is, the Width of the upper Arch ſhould be made equal to that of the Under; it being juſt that the two Arches ſhould have the ſame Width.

On ſuch an Occaſion, one may make the lower Arch ten or twelve Minutes narrower than uſual, that the Width of the upper Arch may be the better proportion'd.

As Pilaſters are the ſame Bigneſs from Top to Bottom, one would imagine at firſt Sight, that to preſerve a Regularity, the Pilaſters placed one over another ſhould likewiſe be of the ſame Bigneſs; but there are two Reaſons to the contrary.

The firſt is, that as Orders increaſe in Delicacy, they likewiſe increaſe in Height with Regard to their Diameter; ſo that were the Module to continue the ſame in the upper and the under Pilaſters, the Conſequence would be, that the Orders and Storys would increaſe in Height and Proportion as they riſe over one another, which would be prepoſterous.

The ſecond Reaſon is, that if there ſhould be Columns along with the Pilaſters of the lower Order, the Diameter of the upper Pilaſters would be bigger than that of the Top of the Columns underneath, which would be another Fault.

Tho' Columns be conjugate or coupled, and for that Reaſon can have but one common Pedeſtal; yet 'twould not be amiſs, if on this Occaſion they appeared to have each its ſeveral one, which may be done by making a ſmall Indenture or Retreat in the Dye, not exceeding a Minute in Depth.

Pilaſters ſplit or cloven from Top to Bottom in an inner Angle, never have a good Effect; for beſides that their Halves have no Symetry with the intire Pilaſters that anſwer to them, their Capitals do likewiſe become very defective.

When Columns and Pilaſters are placed under the ſame Entablature, they ſhould never, if poſſible, ſtand in the Front Line, by reaſon of the manifeſt Irregularities that would follow thereupon, they muſt therefore be ſeperated by a Reſaut or Difference in the Range.

When Pillaſters accompany Inſulate Columns, and ſerve them as a Ground or Arriere Corps, they ought to be at a competent Diſtance from each other, to prevent their Capitals from interfereing, which is a conſiderable Fault that we find frequently committed, but which, however, ought to be carefully avoided. And the Breadth of the upper Part of the Capital of the Pilaſter, ſhould be reduced to that of the upper Part of the Capital of the Column; to the End, that their *Baſes* being of the ſame Breadth, their Abacus and Volutes may be ſo too.

Rather place a Pilaſter in an Angle than a Column; Columns ſtanding alone, and diſtributed one by one, ought to have no Pedeſtals, for theſe would make them appear too ſlender and weak.

In a Periſtyle conſiſting of Columns placed one by one, with Pedeſtals underneath, a Poggio or one ſingle Pedeſtal ſhould ſerve for all the Columns, that is, the ſame Pedeſtal muſt be continued throughout: But then, the Pedeſtal ought to be diſtinguiſhed by Breaks into two Parts, a fore and a hind Part; ſo that each Column may ſeem to have its ſeveral Pedeſtal.

When the Columns ſtand two by two, they may be placed pretty near each other; but it is to be obſerved, that their *Baſes* ought never to touch; the Reaſon of this Rule is, that when the two Plinths come to be joyn'd into one, they form a new Body which ſeems to have no Relation to the Columns themſelves. This Failing becomes very viſible when the Columns have but a ſingle Pedeſtal; for in that Caſe, this continued Plinth appears rather as a Part of the Pedeſtal, than of the Column.

Columns inſerted or let into the Wall behind them, ought never to loſe above one Third, nor leſs than one Fourth of their Diameter.

The Projecture of flat Pilaſters beyond the Wall is ten or twelve Minutes, the Number of Flutes in the Face of a Pilaſter are ſeven, the firſt and laſt whereof may be twice the Diſtance from the Angle than the reſt are from each other, that the Extremity of the Pilaſters may not be too much weakned. The Angles may be work'd with a Staff or Bead, ſee *Plate* 9. *Fig.* 2. One may add a ſingle Fluting in the Projecture or Thickneſs of the Pilaſter, or leave it quite plain, provided it don't exceed ten Minutes in Breadth. The *Tuſcan* Pilaſter is never fluted.

When fluted Columns or Pilaſters without Pedeſtals, are placed level on the Ground; or at leaſt ſo little rais'd as to be within the Reach of the Hand; their Flutings muſt be rudented, or cabled as far as one Third of their Height; that is, they muſt be filled up in Part to that Height, with theſe Rudentures, in order to ſtrengthen the Sides which might otherwiſe be ſoon defaced. See *Plate* 9. *Fig.* 2. and 3.

Columns ſtanding expoſed to the open Air, I mean thoſe on the Outſide of a Building, ought not to have any Flutings; for beſides, that ſuch Kind of Ornaments can't ſubſiſt any long Time intire, plain uniform Columns carry always; in that Caſe, a better Appearance, and ſuſtain the Magnificence of the Building much better to the Eye: And the Reaſon is obvious, for the Light diffuſed on fluted Columns being divided, and as it were cut by the Streaks of Shadow from the Channels, the Eye, when at a little Diſtance, receives a faint confuſed Impreſſion: To this it may be added, that the hollow Flutings found towards the Extremities, make the Columns appear more ſlender than they really are; inſomuch, that, when view'd from any conſiderable Diſtance, they ſhew mean and pitiful.

The Flutings of the *Doric* Column ought not to exceed twenty, of the *Ionic*, *Corinthian* and *Compoſita* are to be twenty four. See *Plate* 9. *Fig.* 1. and 3. Theſe Flutes ought always to be ſo diſpoſed, as that there may be one to ſtand full in the Middle of the Column.

To raiſe an Order of Column; a Module muſt be taken of ſuch a Bigneſs, as that when the Pedeſtal is deſcribed in its proper Meaſures, the Cornice may not be found on a Level with the Eyes of thoſe who paſs, or who are to be Spectators of it; it being a Pain to the Sight to bear projecting Bodies, juſt at its own Height, inaſmuch as they ſeem to menace the Eye with a Rencounter.

When Tables or Pannels are made in the Die of a Pedeſtal, they ought to be equal to the Width of the Column, and the remaining Space is to be continued round for a Border, the Tables or Pannels ought to lye fluſh or even with the Dye, if they are required to be ſunk, the Inequality ought not to be above one Minute and a Half: In theſe Tables are ſometimes added *Baſſo Relievo*'s, and then Care muſt be taken that the *Relievo* never project beyond the Dye.

When one Order is rais'd over another, and the upper Column has its due Bigneſs, its Pedeſtal neceſſarily goes beyond the Naked of the under Column, which to ſome Perſons has a diſagreeable Effect: On this Account 'tis neceſſary to introduce the *Convex Freeze* to the under Order; for by this Swelling, the Pedeſtal of the upper Order appears leſs to exceed the Naked of the under Order: On this Occaſion the *Convex Freeze* may be introduced to any Order but the *Doric*, which will not admit of a *Convex Freeze* on Account of the Triglyphs.

Two Ordonances of *Architecture* ſhould never be plac'd within one another, a little one within a great one, with Deſign only to compoſe a ſingle one.

Columns of different Bigneſſes and different Orders, ſhould never be placed by the Side of one another, for they can't chuſe but make a very unpleaſing Diſcord.

Entablatures is ſometimes made to give back or retreat a little between the Columns; but ſuch Breaks ſhould never be uſed but on extraordinary Occaſions and for ſpecial Reaſons, as where they are not large Stones ſufficient to carry out the whole Entablature to its due Pitch; or where a great Projecture between the Columns might intercept the Light neceſſary underneath, or prevent the View of any Thing above. The principal End of the Entablature is to ſhelter what is underneath, which where there are Breaks 'tis only done by Halves, as having nothing beſides the bare Projecture of the *Cornice* for that Purpoſe.

Entablatures are ſometimes crown'd or finiſhed on the Top with a Blocking Courſe, a *Balluſtrade* or *Attick* Order, on which are placed Statues or Vaſes, *&c.*

A blocking Courſe is a plain Plinth or Zocle, and muſt be in Height equal to the Projecture of the *Cornice* it ſtands on. A Balluſtrade muſt be in Height equal to four Modules or two Diameters of the Column.

The *Attic* Order, which is a kind of Pedeſtal or Mock-Pilaſters, are of the ſame Breadth with the Column or Pilaſter underneath, and of Height equal to one Third of the ſame Column or Pilaſter, whoſe Moldings are to be adorned more or leſs according to the Relation they bear to thoſe in the *Architecture* underneath. Alſo the Name *Attick* is given to the whole Story, wherein this Order reigns.

A Figure or Statue, raiſed over an Order or Building, may have its Height equal to one Third of that of the Column: If a Figure be too large it will make the other Parts ſmall; and if it be too ſmall it will cauſe the Building to appear much larger.

That in Proportion, as a Statue is raiſed above the Eye, it appears to diminiſh in Bulk till ſuch Time as being elevated to a very great Pitch it becomes almoſt imperceptible. Figures muſt always be proportioned to the Orders, and the Storys where they are placed, however it is better they ſhould appear too little than too big.

PLATE 60.

To find the Height required of a Statue or Figure elevated.

ADMIT from the Point of Sight B at the Diſtance L you view the Figure L M, and you are deſirous to place another Figure ſtanding on the Line W, that ſhall appear equal in Height to L M: Draw the Lines B M, B L and B W; upon the Point B deſcribe the Arc 1, 2, of any Radius, and make 5 6, equal to 3 4, and from the Center (or Point of Sight) B thro' the Point 6, draw the Line B, 6, 7; and the Height W L is the Height required.

N. B. *All Objects view'd under equal Angles appear equal; and as the Angle* 5, 6, *is equal to* 3, 4, *the Height* W, 7, *muſt appear in the Eye equal to the Height* L M.

I ſhall now proceed to explain the following Plates, on which there is no Occaſion to make any long Diſcourſe, the Figures which I add will explain themſelves; nor ſhall I make any Remarks but ſuch as are abſolutely neceſſary.

The Module made Uſe of is equal to the Semidiameter of the *Baſe* of the Shaft of the Column, which is ſuppoſed to be divided into thirty equal Parts or Minutes. The Foot (is equal to the Module,) which is ſuppoſed to be divided in twelve equal Parts call'd Inches, each Part or Inch is divided into twelve equal Parts call'd Lines, and each Part called Lines is divided into ten equal Parts called Points; ſo that two Modules is equal to two Feet, and two Foot or two Modules is equal to the whole Diameter, or twenty four Inches, or ſixty Minutes, *&c.*

For the Eaſe of thoſe who may be willing to reduce (into Feet, Inches, *&c.*) the Proportions of any other Authors, the following Table is calculated, as the Module is divided into ſixty Parts or Minutes, and one of them into one Half, one Third, one Fourth, *&c.*

	In.	Lin.	Pts.
One Part or Minute of the 30 of the Module is equal to — —	0	4	8
2 is equal to	0	9	6
3 is equal to	1	2	4
4 is equal to	1	7	2
5 is equal to	2	0	0

Minutes or Parts,	
2	½ is equal to
7	½ is equal to
12	½ is equal to
17	½ is equal to
22	½ is equal to
27	½ is equal to

In.	L.	Min. or Pts.
1	0	½ is equal to
3	0	¼ equal to
5	0	⅛ equal to
7	0	⅓ equal to
9	0	⅙ equal to
11	0	$\frac{1}{12}$ equal to
		⅜ equal to
		⅝ equal to

L.	Pts.
2	4
1	2
0	6
1	6
0	8
0	4
3	0
4	0

Of *Arcades*, PLATE 10, 11, 12, 13, 14 *and* 15.

'TIS the ordinary Proportion of Arches, that the Height be made double the Width. But this may be varied; made a little more or leſs as Occaſion ſhall require, See *Plate* 10 and 11.

The moſt perfect Arches are thoſe which conſiſt of a Semicircle; and the Impoſts are uſually placed on a Level with their Center. There are ſome, however, who from an Optical Conſideration, place them a few Minutes lower, and it is with Judgment they do it; for as the Projecture of the Impoſt hides a little Part of the Arch from the Eye, 'tis but reaſonable it ſhould be lower'd a little, to leave the intire Semicircle in View, which otherwiſe would appear defective.

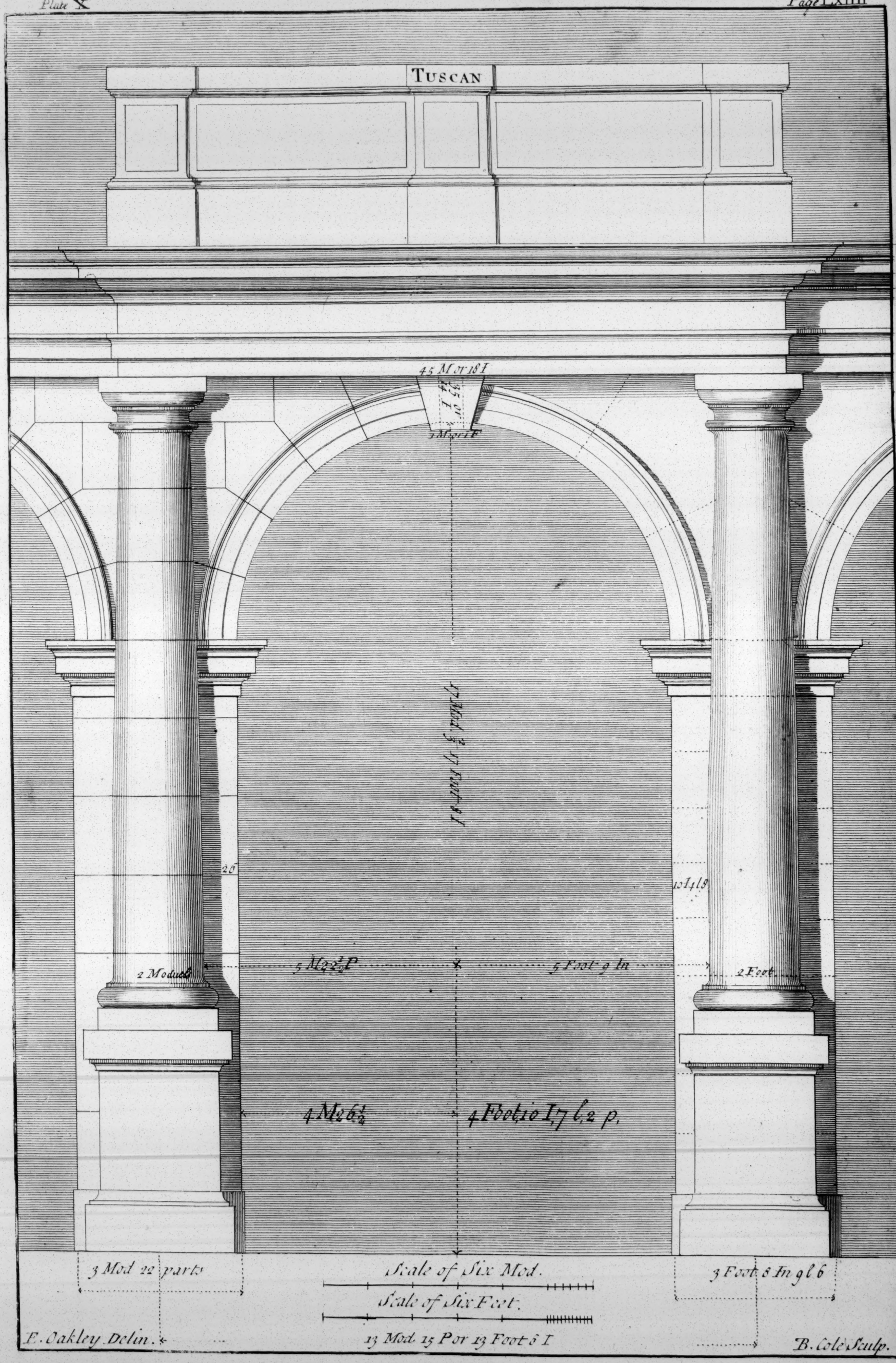
In *Arcades*, where the Columns have Pedeſtals, the Pillars or Piedroits ought to be not leſs than three Modules and an Half in Breadth, nor more than four Modules. See *Plates* 13 and 14.

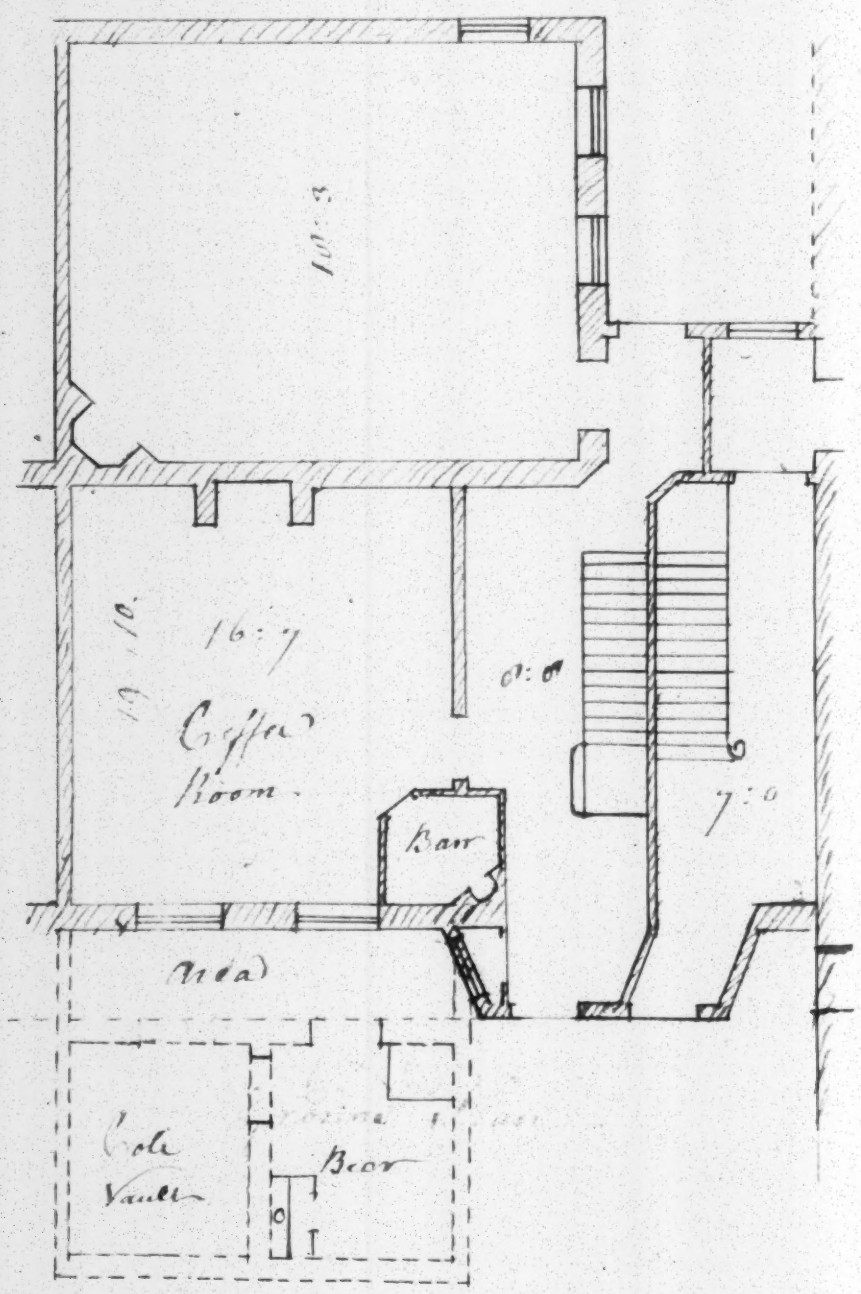
Palladio terminates theſe Piedroits with the Mouldings of the Baſe of the Pedeſtal, which he continues quite round, as at *Plate* 13, which by ſome are condemn'd as that they are incommodious by advancing a good Way in the Paſſage, and are ſoon broken and defaced.

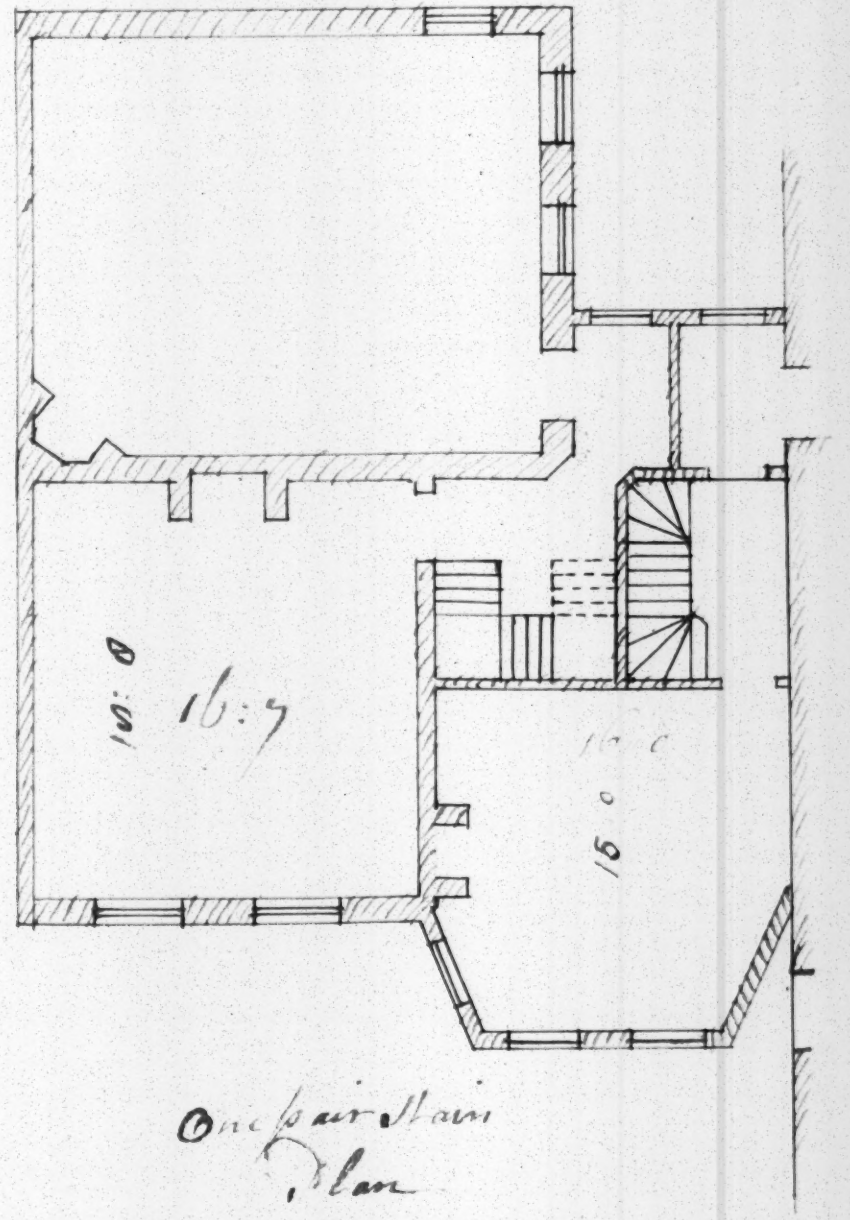
Vignola terminates theſe Pillars or Piedroits with a plain Zocle, which ſuits very well. See *Plate* 12.

Impoſts are little Cornices which terminate the Piedroits, and are peculiarly appointed to receive the Extreams of their Arches, with their Archivolts or Head-bands. Care muſt

TUSCAN


45 Mod 18 P
1 Mod 6 P
17 Mod 2 P 17 Foot 9 I
20
10 I 4 P
2 Module
5 Mod 2½ P
5 Foot 9 In
2 Foot
4 Mod 6½
4 Foot 10 I 7 l 2 p.
3 Mod 22 parts
Scale of Six Mod.
Scale of Six Feet.
3 Foot 8 In 9 l 6
E. Oakley Delin.
13 Mod 15 P or 13 Foot 6 I
B. Cole Sculp.

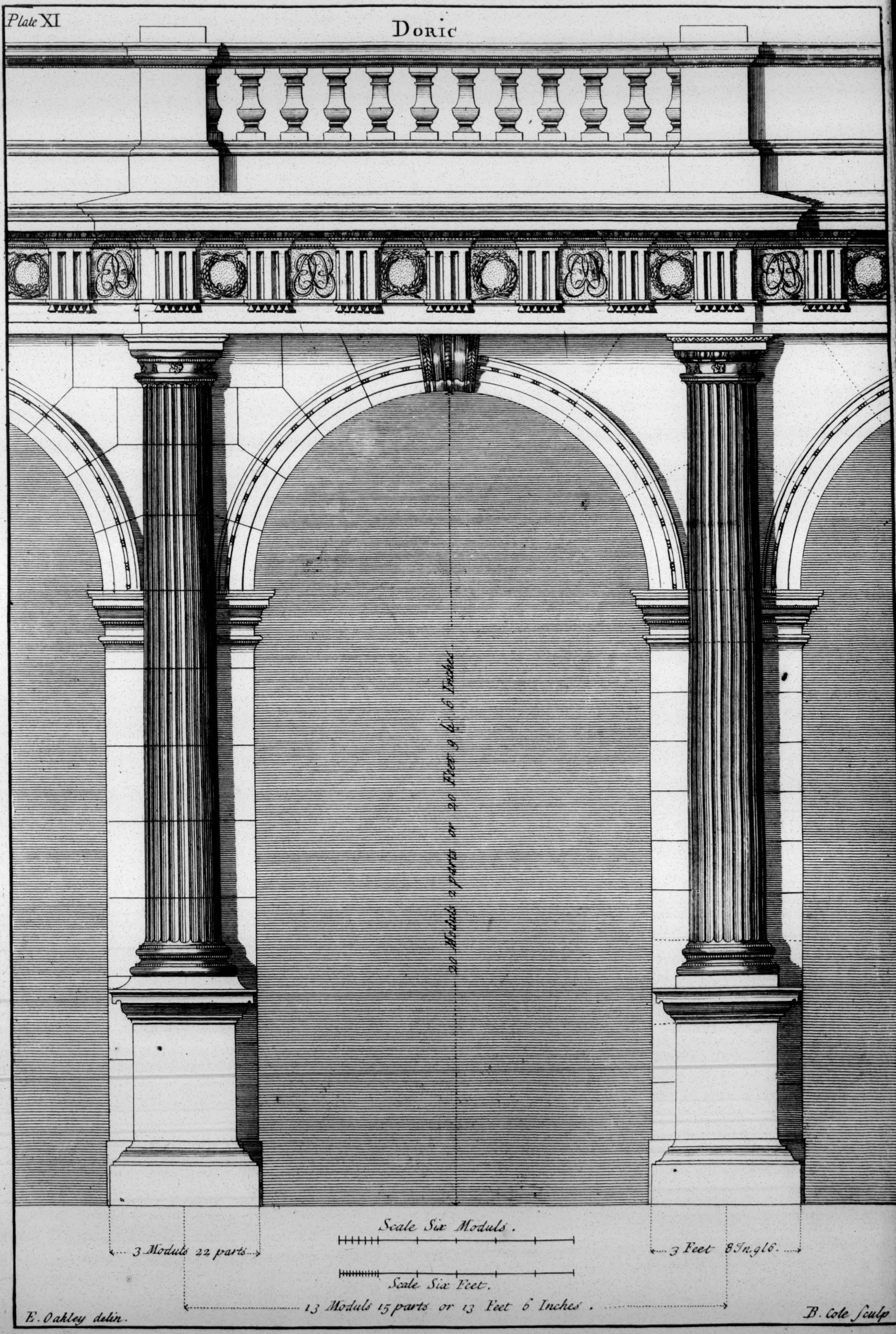




One pair Stairs Plan

Plate XI

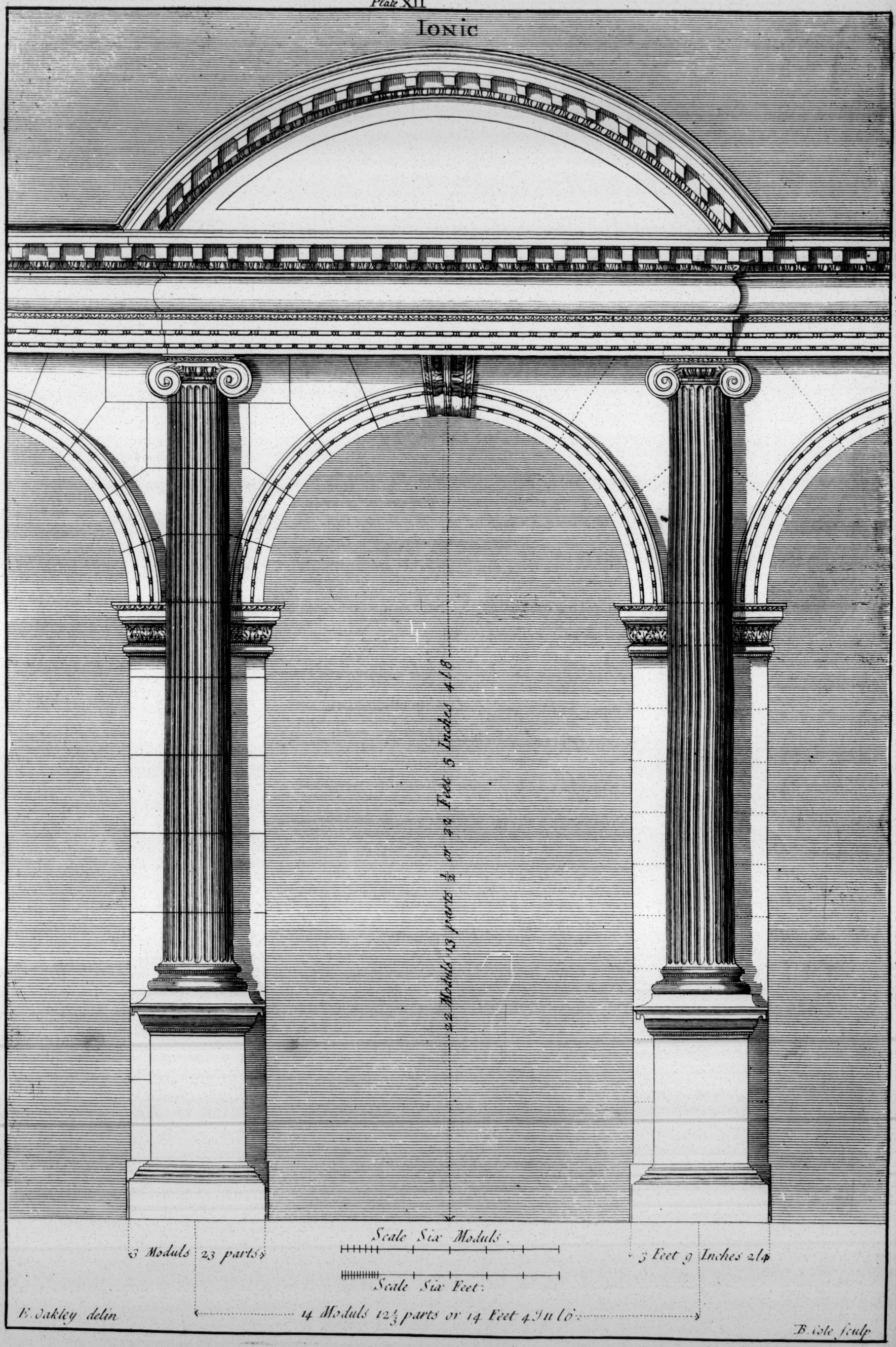
Doric



E. Oakley delin. *B. Cole Sculp*

Plate XII

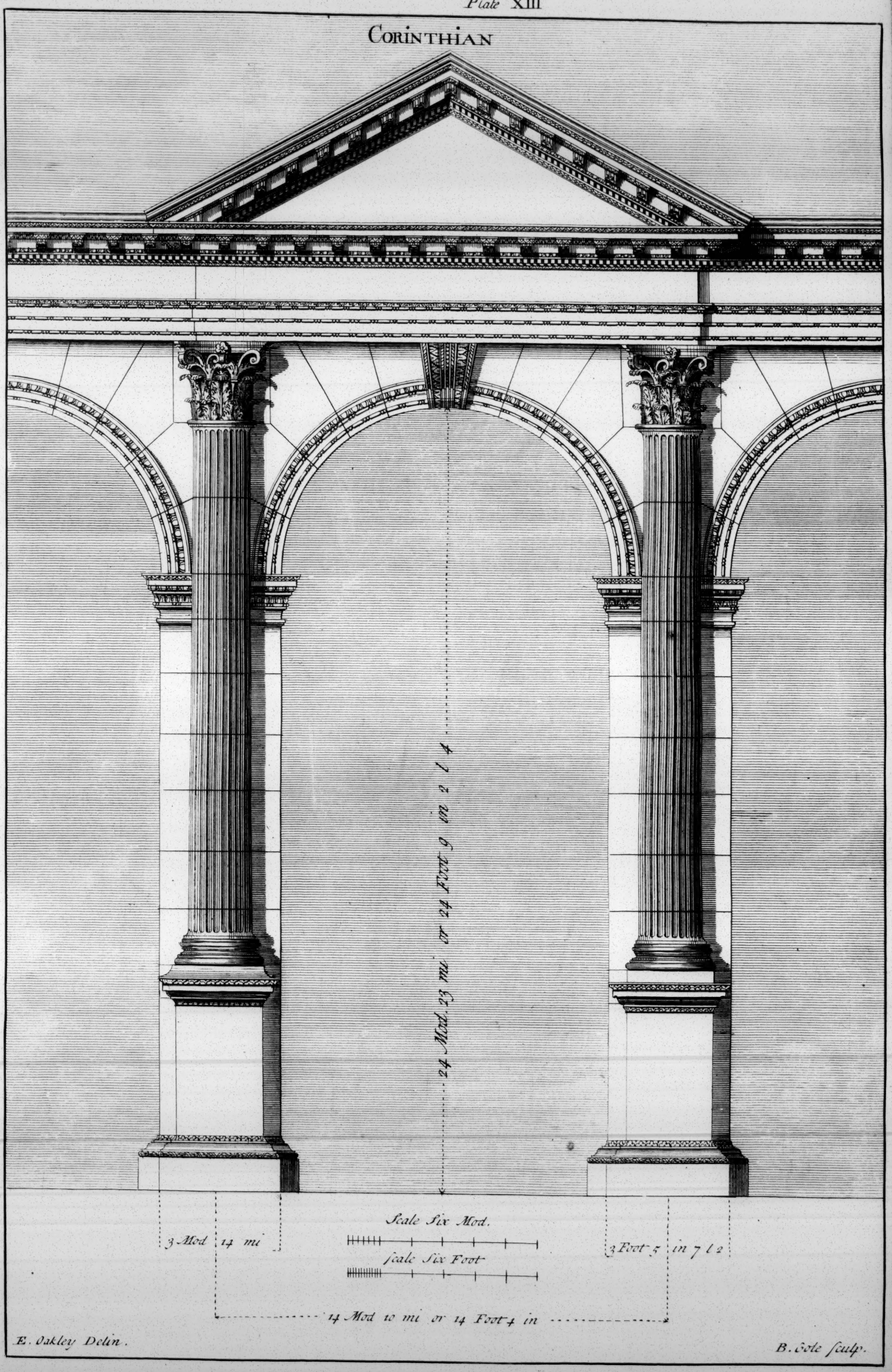
Ionic



F. Oakley delin

B. Cole sculp

CORINTHIAN



Scale Six Mod.

3 Mod *14 mi*

Scale Six Foot

3 Foot 5 in 7 l 2

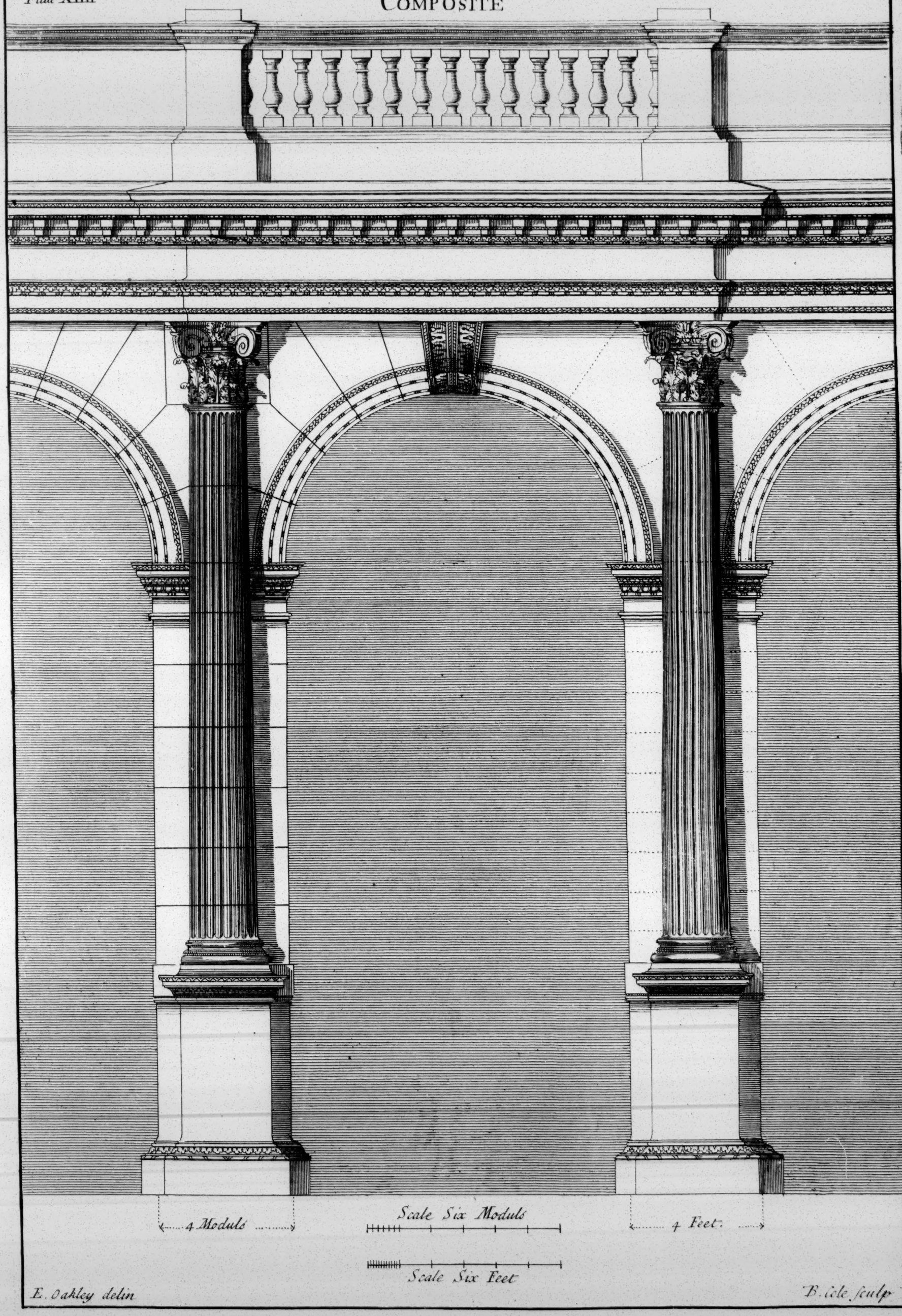
14 Mod 10 mi or 14 Foot 4 in

E. Oakley Delin.

B. Cole sculp.

Plate XIIII

COMPOSITE



E. Oakley delin

B. Cole sculp

Plate XV

Tuſcan.

Doric.

Ionic

1 Mod
1 Foot

37 1/2
15

3 Mod. 3 Feet

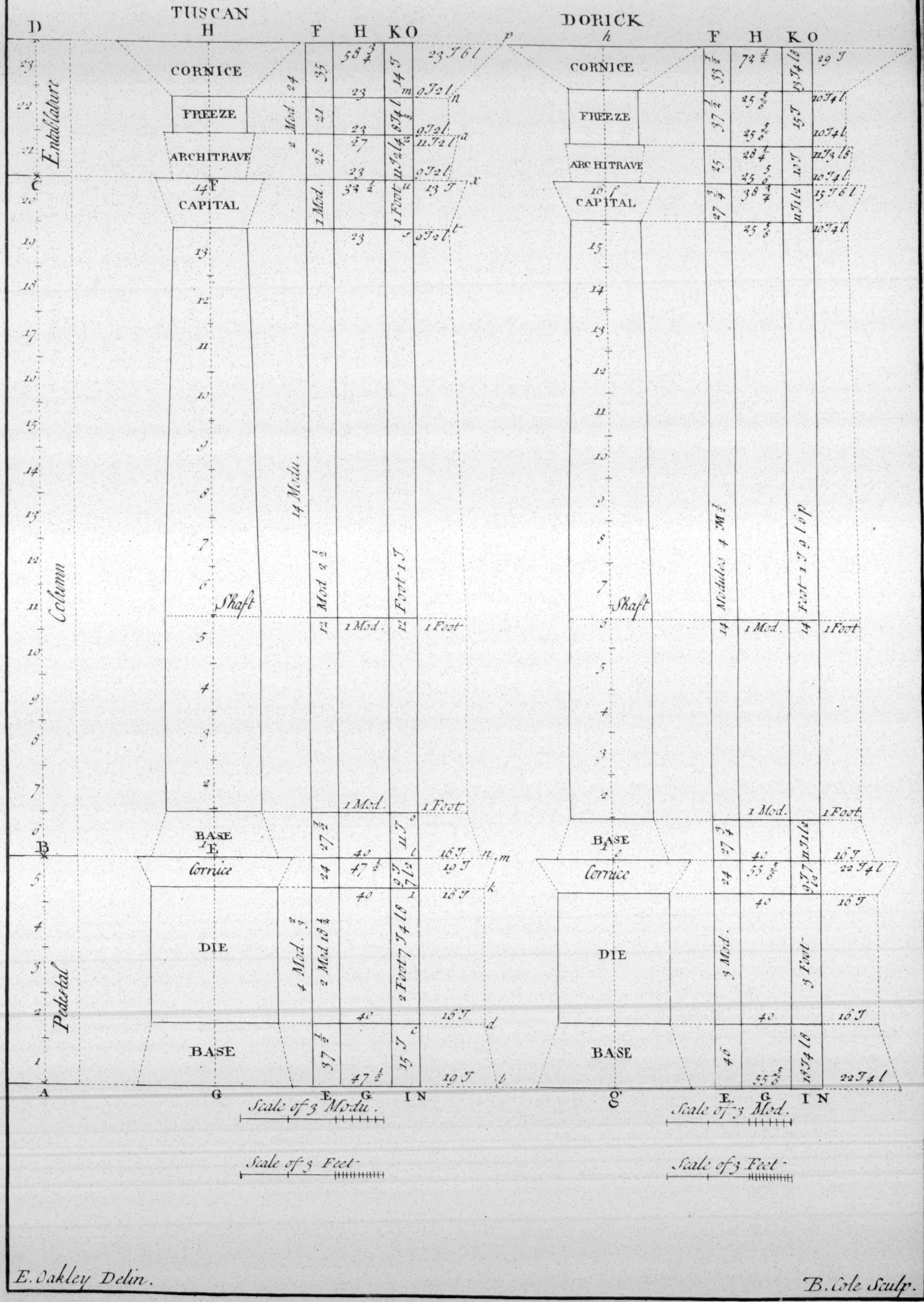
3 Mod. 3 Feet

3 Mod. 3 Feet

E. Oakley Delin.

B. Cole ſculp.

Plate XVI



E. Oakley Delin.

B. Cole Sculp.

Plate XVII

IONICK

CORNICE	45	72 ½ / 26	18 I	29 I / 10 I 4 l 8
FREEZE	27 ½	26	10 I / 10 I 4	10 I 4 l 8
ARCHITR.	35 ⅚	33 ⅓ / 26	14 I 4 l	13 I 4 l / 10 I 4 l 8
CAPITAL	40 ¼	31 ¼ / 26	7 I 10	22 I 6 l / 10 I 4 l 8
Shaft	16 Mod 10 M_4^3	1 Mod.	16 Foot 4 Inc. 3 l 4 p	1 Foot
BASE	1 Mod.	41 ¼	1 Foot	16 I 6 l
Cornice	24	56 ⅝	3 I 7	22 I 4 l
DIE	3 Mod. 18 M	41 ¼	3 Foot 7 I 3 l	16 I 6 l
BASE	48	56 ⅝	3 I 21	22 I 4 l

CORINTHIAN

CORNICE	50	74 / 26 ¼	20 I	29 I 8 l / 10 I 6 l
FREEZE	1 Mod.	26 ¼	1 Foot	10 I 6 l
ARCHITR.	40	34 ⅔ / 26 ¼	16 I	13 I 10 l / 10 I 6 l
CAPITAL	2 Mod. 12 M_2^1	45	2 Foot 5 Inc.	18 I
Shaft	16 Mod. 12 M_2^1	1 Mod.	16 Foot 7 Inc.	1 Foot
BASE	1 Mod.	42 ½	1 Foot	17 I
Cornice	25	57 ½	10 I	23 I
DIE	4 Mod. 5 M	42 ½	4 Foot 2 Inc.	17 I
BASE	50	57 ½	20 I	23 I

COMPOSITE

CORNICE	50	76 ¼ / 29 ¼	20 I	30 I 6 l / 11 I 8 l
FRE.	1 Mod.	25 ⅚	1 Foot	10 I 4 l
ARCH.	40	35 ⅔ / 25 ⅚	16 I	14 I 4 l / 10 I 4 l
CAPI.	2 Mod. 12 M_2^1	45	2 Foot 5 Inc.	18 I
Shaft	16 Mod. 12 M_2^1	1 Mod.	16 Foot 7 Inc.	1 Foot
BASE	1 Mod.	42 ½	1 Foot	17 I
Cornice	24	57 ½	9 I 12	23 I
DIE	4 Mod. 8 M	42 ½	4 Foot 3 I 4 l 8	17 I
BASE	47 ½	57 ½	10 I	23 I

Scale of 3 Mod.

Scale of 3 Foot

Scale of 3 Mod.

Scale of 3 Foot

E. Oakley Delin.

B. Cole sculp.

muſt be taken, that the Projecture of the Impoſt never exceed the Semidiameter of the Column, behind; nor intercept any Thing of its roundneſs, before. See *Plate* 33.

The Simplicity or Richneſs of the Architrave, ought to determine the Simplicity or Richneſs of the Archivolte, which ought not to exceed one Module in Breadth. See *Plate* 33:

Keys that have a Projecture, and are made in Manner of Conſoles, and placed in the Middle of Arches or Portico's, are particularly deſtin'd to ſuſtain the Weight and Preſſure of the Entablature, where it happens to be very great between the Columns: For this Reaſon they ought to be made in ſuch Manner as that they may prove a real Support, and not placed for mere Ornaments as they frequently are: Without this Precaution I think they had better be intirely omitted. See *Plate* 11 and 15.

PLATE 10. is Part of a Arcade of the *Tuſcan* Order finiſhing with a plain Pedeſtal.

PLATE 11. is Part of a Arcade of the *Doric* Order, terminating with a Balluſtrade of ſquare Ballaſters, as moſt ſuitable to the Order.

PLATE 12. is Part of a Arcade of the *Ionic* Order, with a circular Pedement.

PLATE 13. is Part of a Arcade of the *Corinthian* Order, with a pitch'd Pedement.

PLATE 14. Is Part of a Arcade of the *Compoſite* Order, terminating with a Balluſtrade of round Balliſters.

PLATE 15. is the Section of the *Tuſcan Doric* and *Ionic* Arcades, as high as the Top of the Entablement: *N. B.* In the Section of the *Ionic*, the Depth or Thickneſs of the Wall in the Plan and Upright, are intended the ſame as the two former, as appears by the Figures of the Plan; but the Width of the *Plate* not allowing Room it is contracted in the Drawing.

The Intercoluminations, *&c.* of the foregoing, are deſcribed by the common Meaſure of Feet, Inches and Parts, and by the ancient and moſt approved Cuſtom of Modules and Minutes. The following Plates are likewiſe deſcribed by the ſame Meaſures, as appears by the Plates.

N. B. *On the Right Hand of the* Doric Ionic *and* Compoſite *Arcades, the Joints of the Stones I have altered, to make them more agreeable to the preſent Practice.*

PLATE 16. and 17. By theſe two *Plates* is deſcribed the Proportions of the general Heights and Projectures of the Pedeſtal, Column and Entablature to each Order, *viz.* Baſe, Die, and Cymatium or Cornice, Baſe Shaft and Capital; Architrave, Freeze and Cornice.

The Axis or Central Line of the Column, is that which paſſes thro' the Midſt of the Pedeſtal Column and Entablature, as the Line G H in the *Tuſcan* Order, (*Plate* 16.) it is on the Central Line, that the Height of all the ſeveral Members are adjuſted, and 'tis from thence that all their Projectures are determined, in this and the following *Plates*.

To proportion the Pedeſtal, Column, and Entablature to any given Height, divide the Height (as A D *Plate* 16) into twenty three equal Parts; allow five Parts as A B for the Pedeſtal, fifteen as B C for the Column, and the remaining three, as C D is the given Height for the Entablature; to find the Module to adjuſt the other Parts or Members; If for the *Tuſcan* Order, divide the fifteen equal Parts, as B C into fourteen equal Parts, and one of thoſe fourteen equal Parts is the Semidiameter of the Column; which here is called the Module, which is ſuppoſed to be divided into thirty equal Parts

or Minutes; or the Foot divided into twelve Inches, &c. If for the *Doric* Order, divide the fifteen equal Parts, as B C into ſixteen equal Parts; if for the *Ionic*, into eighteen equal Par s; if for the *Corinthian* or *Compoſite*, into twenty equal Parts, and one of thoſe Parts will be the Module or Foot Meaſure to each Order, whoſe Entablature is equal to one Fifth, and Pedeſtal equal to one Third of the Column.

Make a Scale of Modules and Minutes, or Parts; or of Feet, Inches, Lines and Points, according to the preceeding Rules, to which apply for the Intervals of the Meaſures hereafter deſcribed by Figures, denoting the ſeveral Parts.

I ſhall here deſcribe the *Tuſcan* Order, as explain'd by its out Lines and Boundaries for the general Heights and Projectures; Draw the Line A b for the Baſe Line, erect the Perpendicular G H as the Central Line, on G H with the Interval A B, deſcribe G E the Height of the Pedeſtal, which draw Parallel to the Baſe. With the Interval B C deſcribe E F, the Height of the Column; with the Interval C D, deſcribe the Height of the Entablature F H; ſo that the Interval A B or G E is found to be equal to four Modules two Thirds: B C or E F equal to fourteen Modules, C D or F H equal to two Modules twenty four Minutes or Parts; as appears on the Right Hand mark'd by Figures: In the Column E F is deſcribed the Heights of the Parts of the Pedeſtal Column and Entablature, in Modules and Minutes or Parts; and in the Column I K the ſame Parts are deſcribed, in Feet, Inches, Lines and Points: In the Column G H is deſcribed the Projectures of the Parts from the Central Line in Modules and Minutes or Parts: And the Central Line N O is deſcribed the ſame Projections in Feet, Inches, Lines and Points.

As for Example, take the Interval thirty ſeven and one Half Minutes or Parts, as in the Bottom of the Column E F, or fifteen Inches as in the Bottom of the Column I K, and ſet it from G towards E, on the Line G H, or N *c*, on the Line N O, which gives the Height of the Baſe of the Pedeſtal; take the Interval twenty four Minutes or Parts as in the Column E F, or nine Inches ſeven Lines and two Points as in the Column I K, and ſet it from E towards G on the Line G H or l i in the Line N O, which gives the Height of the Cornice or Cimatium of the Pedeſtal: Then for the Projecture take the Interval forty ſeven Minutes and one Half, as at G in the Column G H, or nineteen Inches as N *b* from the Line N O, and ſet either of the Meaſures or the Baſe Line to G H, or on N *b* which is the Projecture of the Baſe of the Pedeſtal; then with the Interval of ſeven Minutes or ſixteen Inches, on each Side of the Central Lines G H as on N O, deſcribe the Width of the Pedeſtal as i k, *c d*; make the Projecture of the Cornice equal to the Baſe, as l m from N O, and the Heights of the Projecture of the Pedeſtal is compleated. In the ſame Manner proceed in the Column and Entablature and the four following Orders, and they will be compleated.

Plate 18.

In this Plate is deſcribed the particular Members that conſtruct each Part of the *Tuſcan* Order, and in the Front of the Profile it is mark'd with, a, b, c, &c. to deſcribe each Member ſo mark'd refer to the Letters A B C, &c. on the Side of the Profile, the the Platfond M M is the Larmier, Guttœ, Ovolo, and Cavetto, as ſeen from below; the Figures as 1, 2, 3, 4, &c. On the Members is to denote the Names of the Members, as 1. is Liſtello, 2. Cima recta, 3. Liſtello, 4. Corona, 5. Ovolo, 6. Liſtello, 7. Cavetto, 8. Freeze, 9. Liſtello, 10. is firſt Facia, 11. ſecond Facia, 12. Abacus, 13. Ovolo, 14. Tenia, 15. Neck of Capital, 16. Aſtragal, 17. Upper Cincture, 18. Shaft, 19. Lower Cincture, 20. Torus, 21. Orlo, 22. Abacus, 23. Liſtello, 24. Cavetto, 25. Die, 26. Cavetto inverta, 27. Liſtello, 28. Plinth. The reſt is ſufficiently explained by Letters and Figures, by being perfect in this the reſt will eaſily be underſtood.

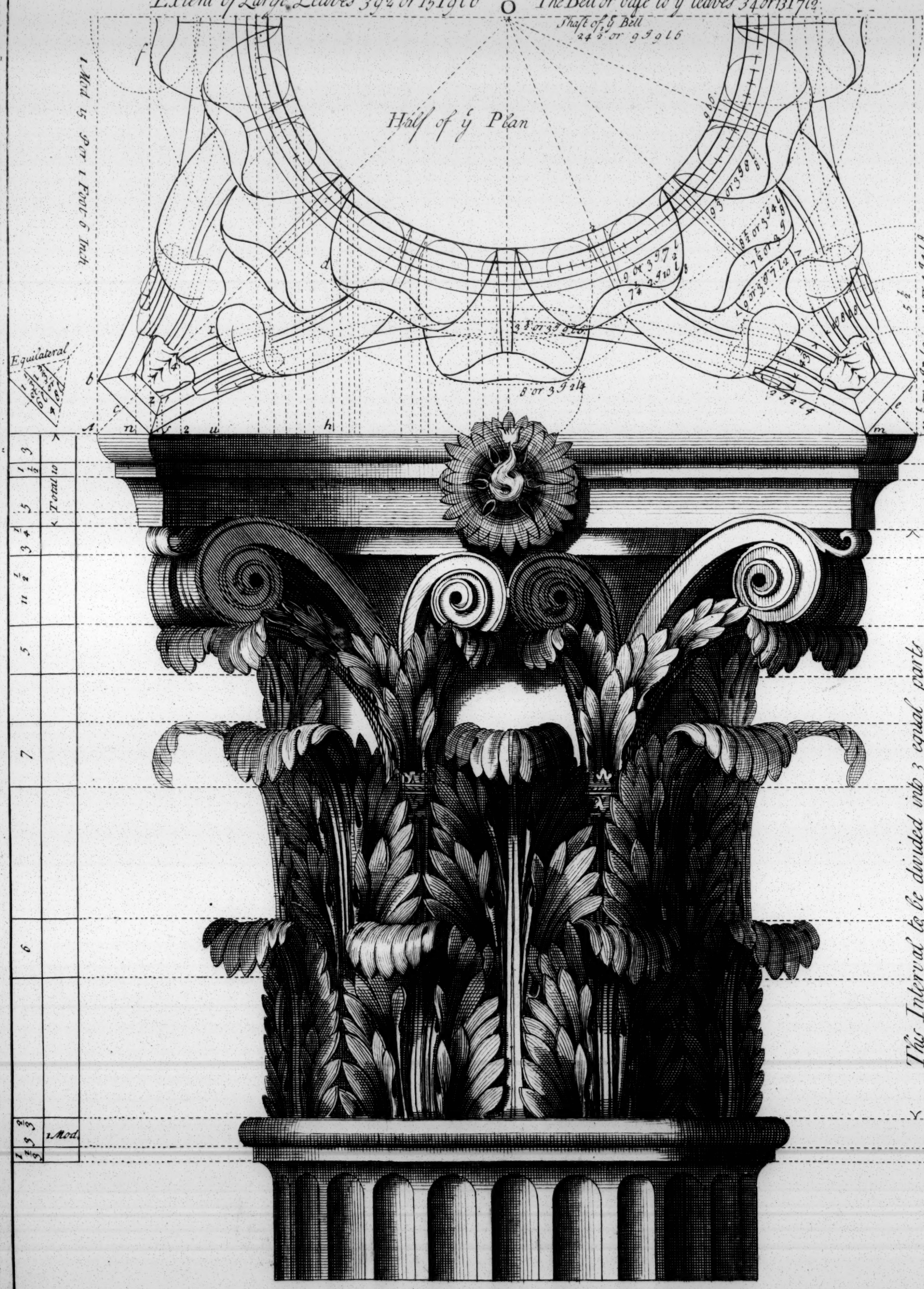
Plate XVIII

B. Cole fecit.

E. Oakley Delin.

Plate XXVIII

Corinthian Capital of Olive Leaves

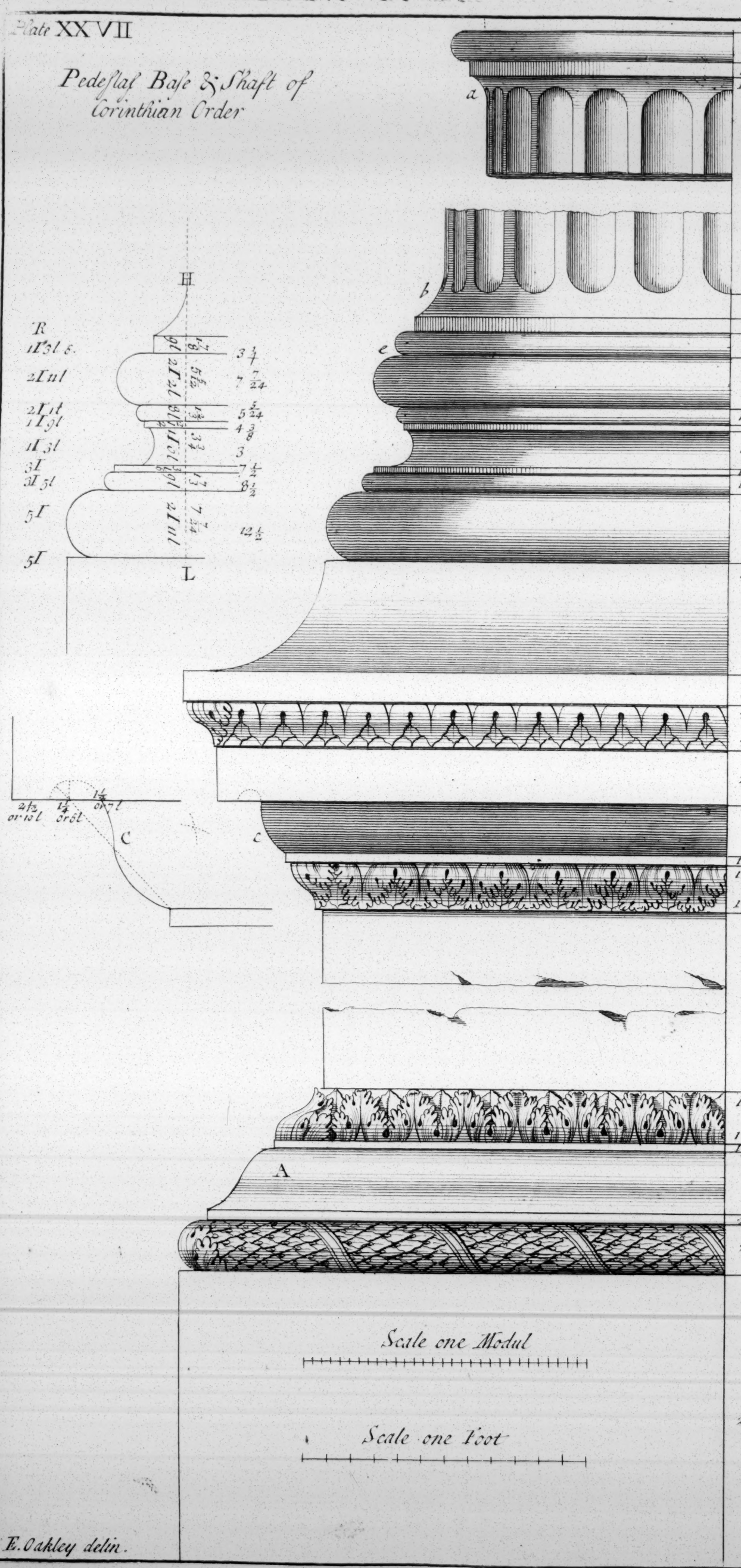


E. Oakley Del.

B. Cole sculp.

Plate XXVII

Pedestal Base & Shaft of Corinthian Order

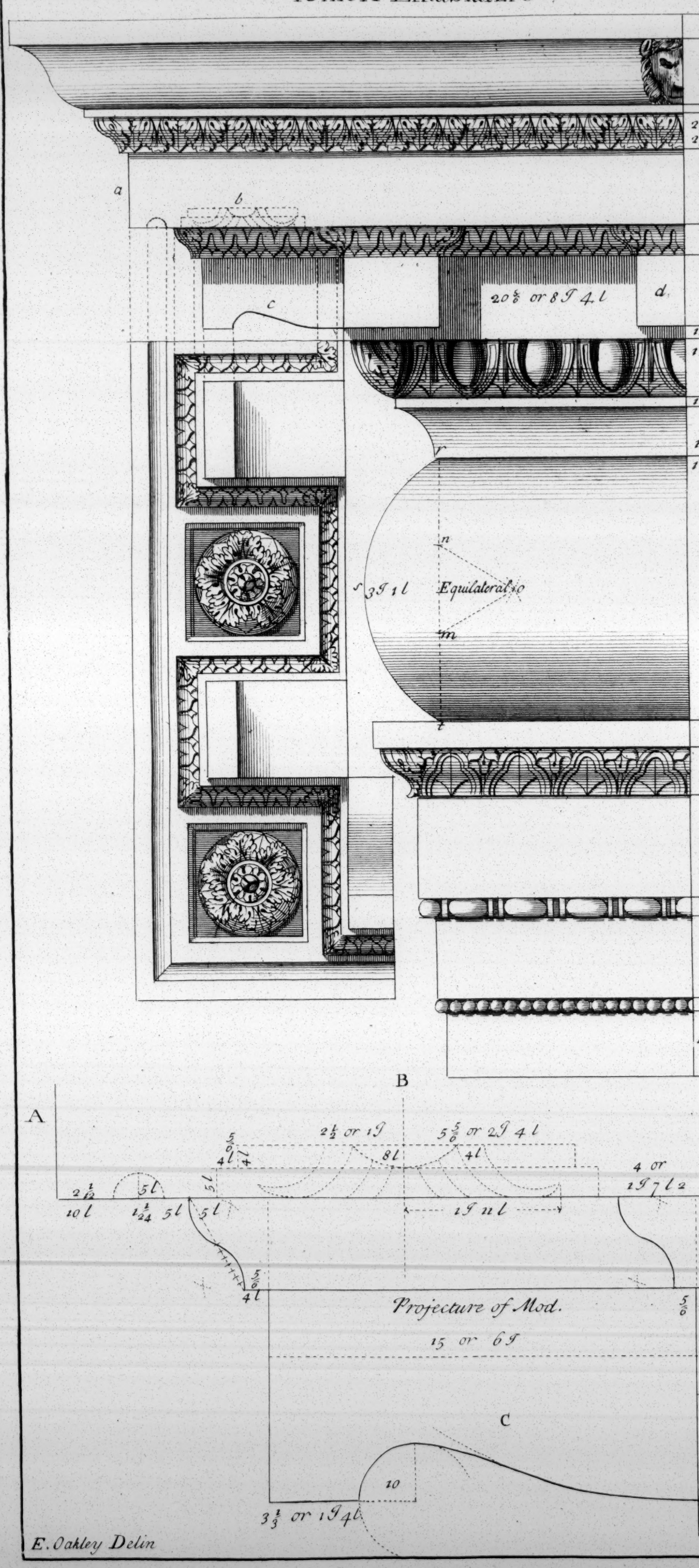


F. Oakley delin.

B. Cole Sculp

Plate XXVI

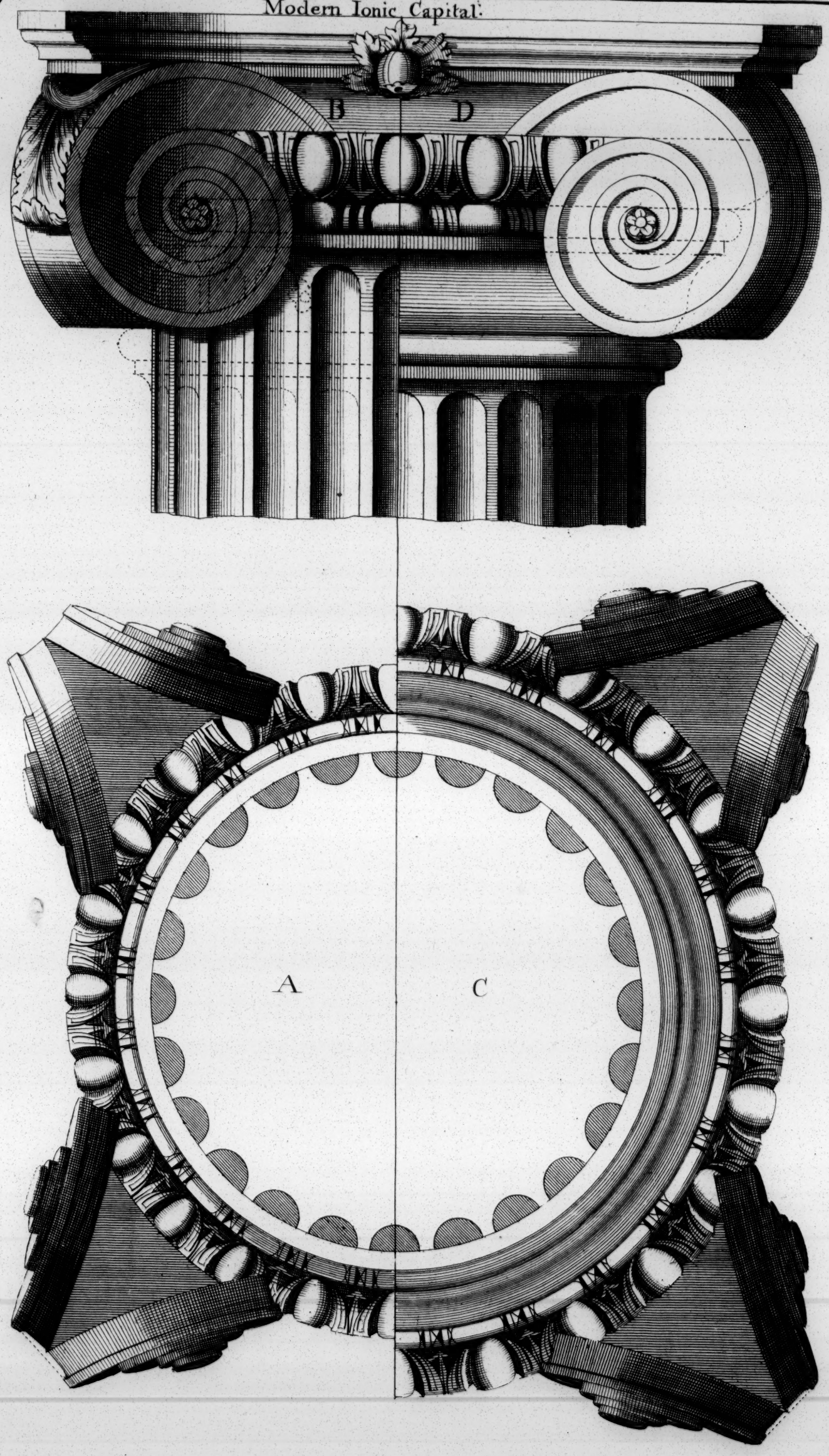
Ionick Entablature



29 I	1 I		72½	2½	Cornice 11 Members
	2 I 8 l			6⅔	
26 I	1 l		65	5/6	
25 I 9 l	1 l		64 3/8	3 1/3	
24 I 4 l			60 5/6		
24 I	3 I 2 l 4		60	8	
	1 l 16			2 5/6	
	3 I			7½	
14 I 4 l	7 l		35 5/6	4½	
14 I	2 I 4 l		35	5 5/6	
12 I 2 l	5 l		30½	1	
10 I 8 l	2 I		26⅔	5	
10 I 4 l 8			20		Freeze 1
13 I 4 l	1 I		33⅓	2½	Architrave 7 Members
13 I 1 l	2 I		32¾	5	
11 I 9 l			29⅜		
11 I 5 l	4 I 2 l		27½	10 5/12	
11 I 5 l	9 l		27½	4⅛	
10 I 9 l	3 I 3 l		26⅞	8⅛	
10 I 9 l	6 l		26⅔	1/12	
10 I 4 l 8	2 I 8 l		26	6⅔	Entablature

Plate XXV

Modern Ionic Capital.



Minuts 30 — Scale two Modules — 1 Mod

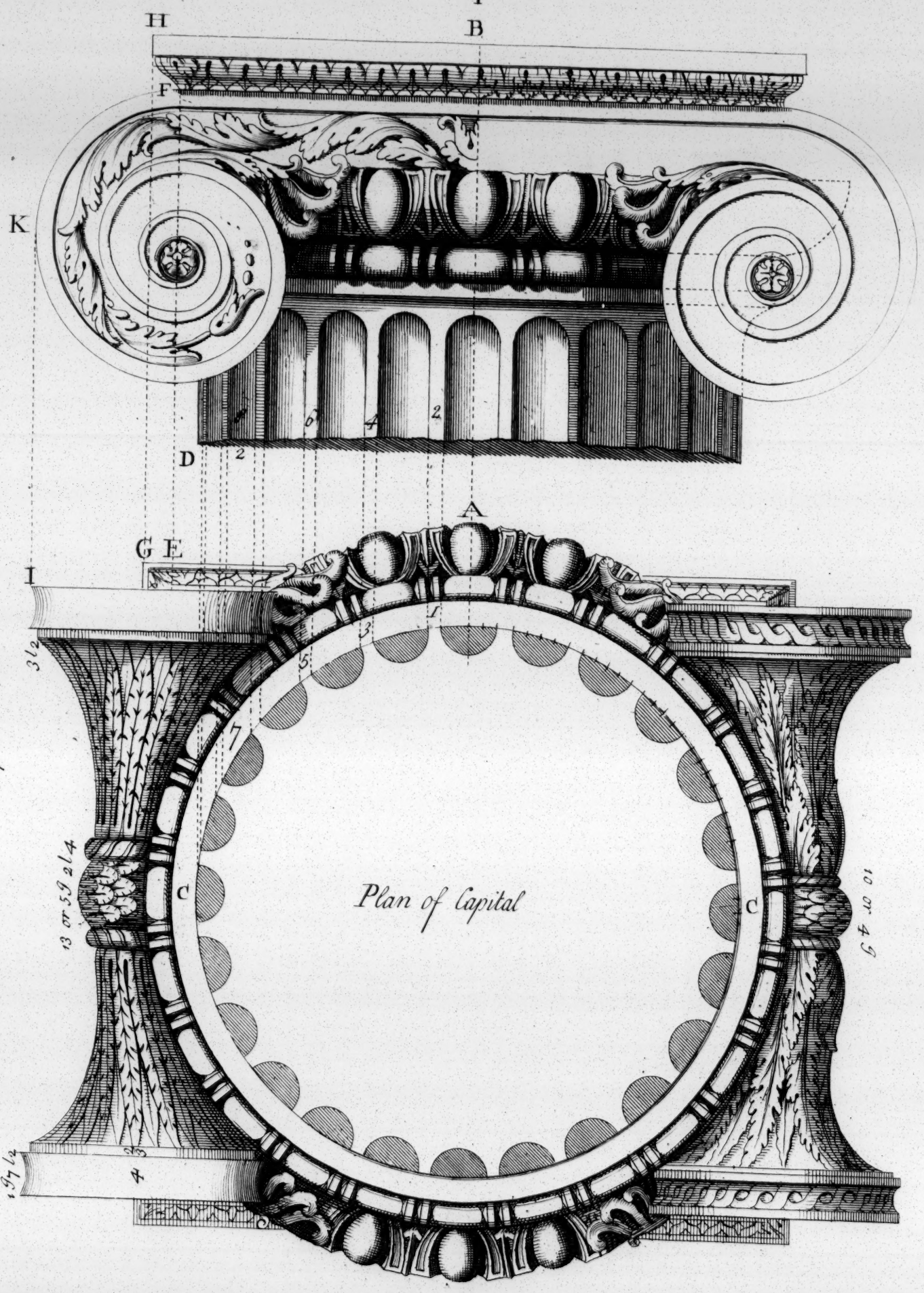
Inches 12 — Scale two Foot — 1 Foot

E. Oakley Architecto

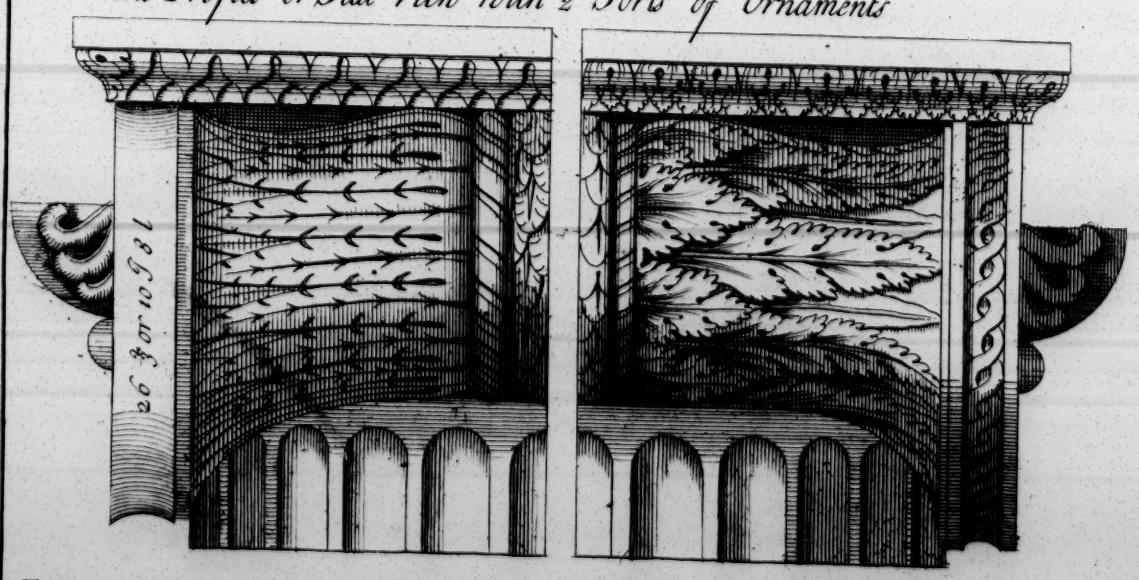
B Cole Sculp

Plate XXIIII

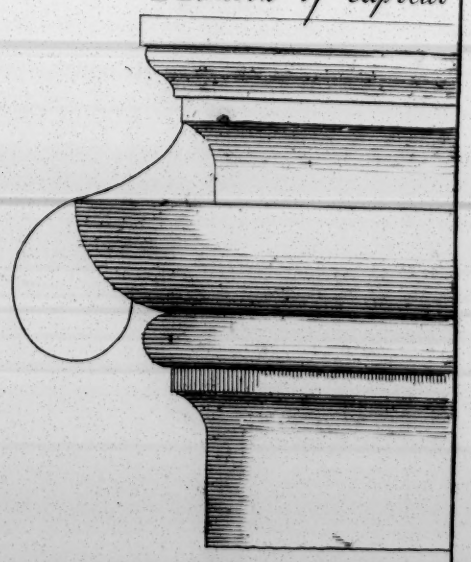
Ionick Capital



the Profile or Side View with 2 Sorts of Ornaments



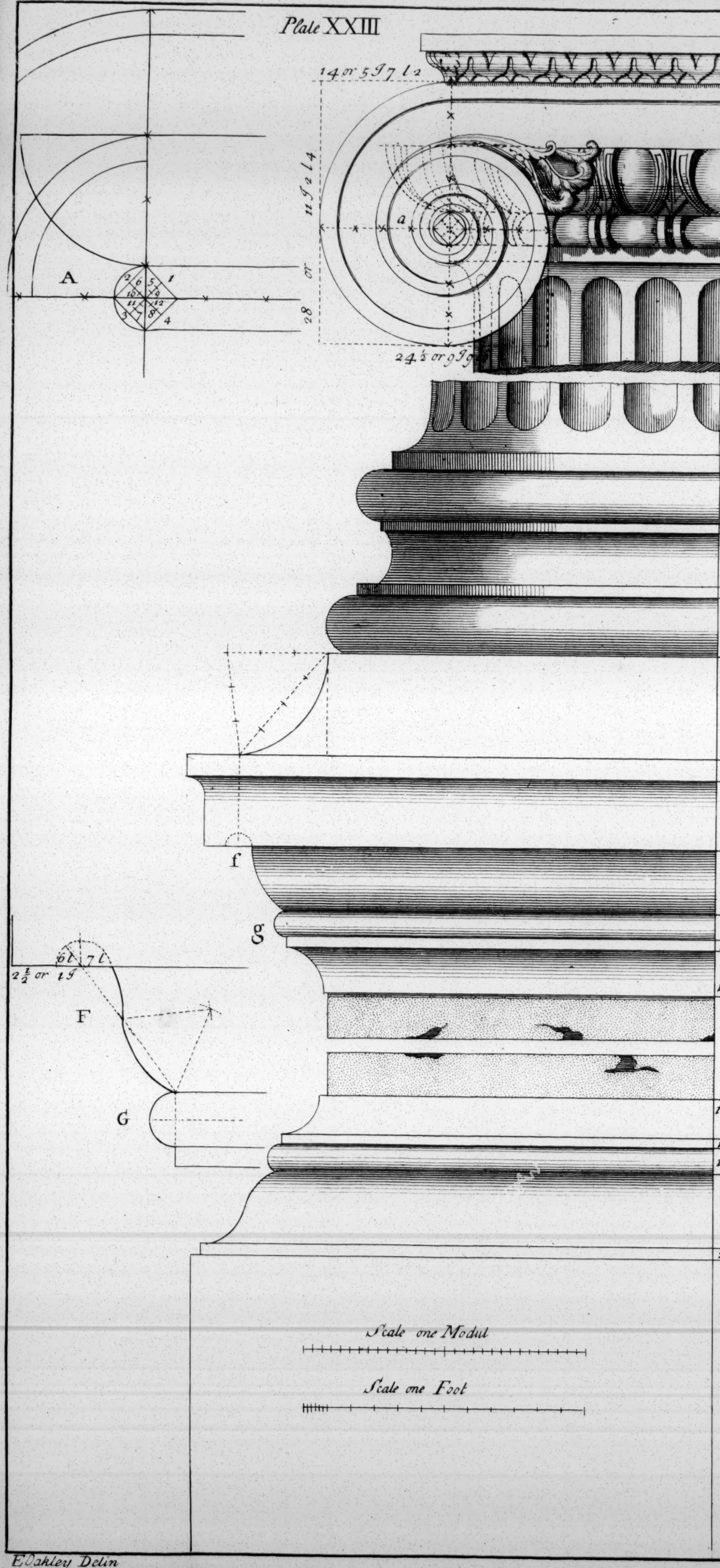
Members of Capital



E. Oakley Delin

B. Cole Sculp.

Plate XXIII



12 J 6 l	10		31 ¼	2	Capital 5	Column
12 J 4 l	8		30 5/6	1 ⅔		
11 J 6 l	8		27 ¾			
	8			5 ½		
14 J	9		35	7		
1 Foot	8		1 Mod.	3 ½	Shaft 4	
	8			1 ⅔		
	8			½		
	1					
13 J 9 l	19		34 ⅜	2 ½		
15 J 3 l	2	11	38 ⅛	5 ¼	Base 6	
14 J 3 l	4		35 5/8	5/6		
13 J 9 l	2	3	34 ⅜	5 ⅝		
15 J 3 l	6		38 ⅛	1 ¼		
16 J 6 l	2	8	41 ¼	6 ⅔		
16 J 6 l	4	2	41 ¼	10 ⅜		
22 J 4 l	1	9	55 5/6	2 ½	Cornice 6	
21 J 6 l	2	10	53 ¾	7 ½		
18 J	2	8	45	6 ⅔		
18 J 8 l	1	7	46 ⅔	1 ½		
18 J	1	8	45	1		
16 J 10 l	1	8	42 ½	4 ¼	Dye 1	
16 J 10 l	1	9	42 ½	1 ½	Pedestal	
18 J 2 l	1	7	45 5/12	1		
18 J 6 l	1	9	46 ¼	3		
	3	9		7 ½		
22 J	6		55	1 ¼		
					Base 6	
22 J 4 l			55 5/6			

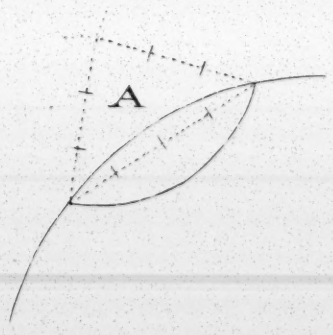
E Oakley Delin

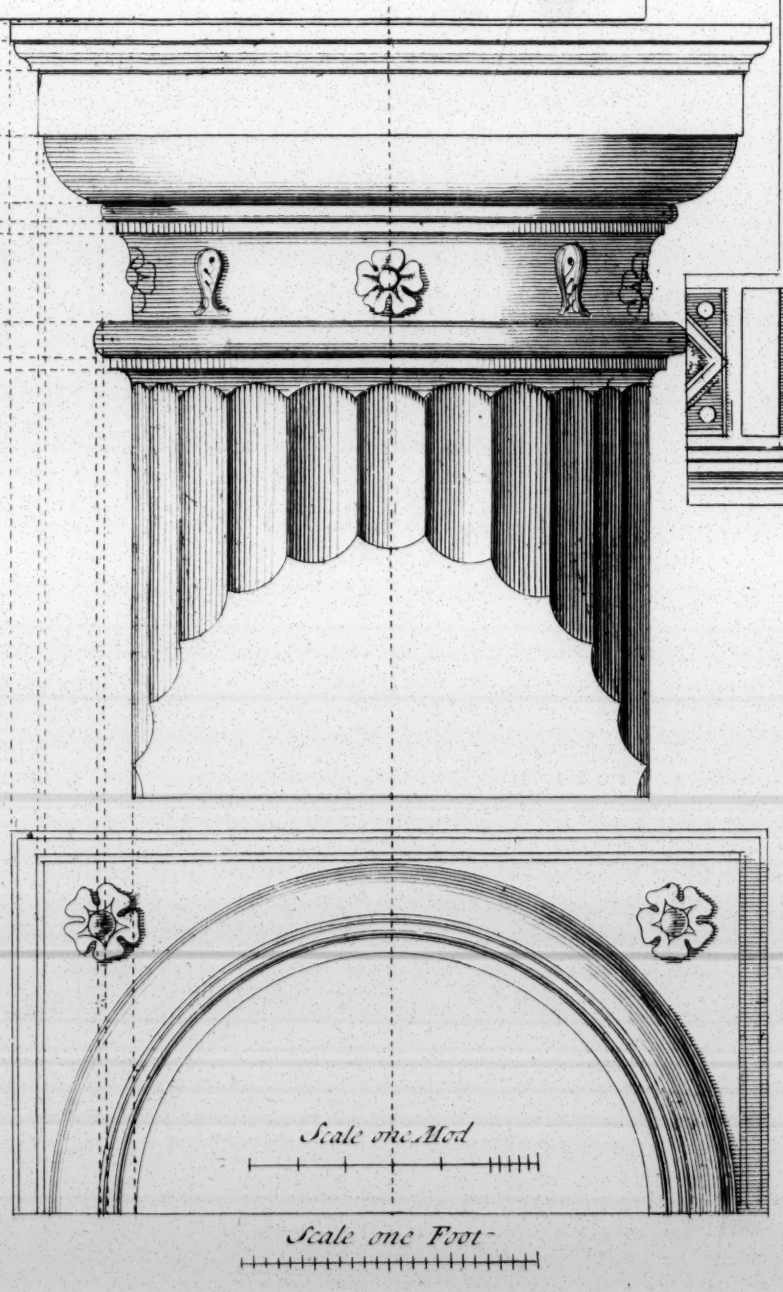
B Cole Sculp

Plate XXII

Dorick Entablature & Capital

9 1/4	76		12 1/2	30 J 4 l 8
7 1/4			10 J 9 l 6	
3 3/4	60		8 J 3 l 4	
	57 1/2		7 J 5 l 2	
8 1/4	64 1/4		8 J 3 l 4	25 J 9 l 4
6 1/4	39 1/2		5 J 2 l 6	15 J 9 l 6
	35 1/2		4 J 7 l 4	
5	31 1/2		4 J 1 l 2	12 J 7 l 2
5	27		3 J 5 l 6	10 J 9 l 6
45 Minutes		18 In		
	26			10 J 4 l 8
	28		3 J 6 l 4	11 J 2 l 4
3 1/3			1 J 1 l 4	
9 1/2	27		3 J 5 l 6	10 J 9 l 6
	26		3 J 4 l 8	10 J 4 l 8
1	39		5 l 4	15 J 7 l 2
2 3/4	38 1/2		5 l 2	15 J 4 l 8
	30 1/2		3 l 6	11 J 9 l 4
6 3/4	36		4 l 8	14 J 4 l 8
6 1/2	35 1/4		4 l 7	14 J 1 l 2
	1 Mod 24			1 Foot 11 J 3 l
9	26		3 J 4 l 8	10 J 4 l 8
3 1/2	1 Mod 24		3 l 2	1 Foot 11 J 2 l 4





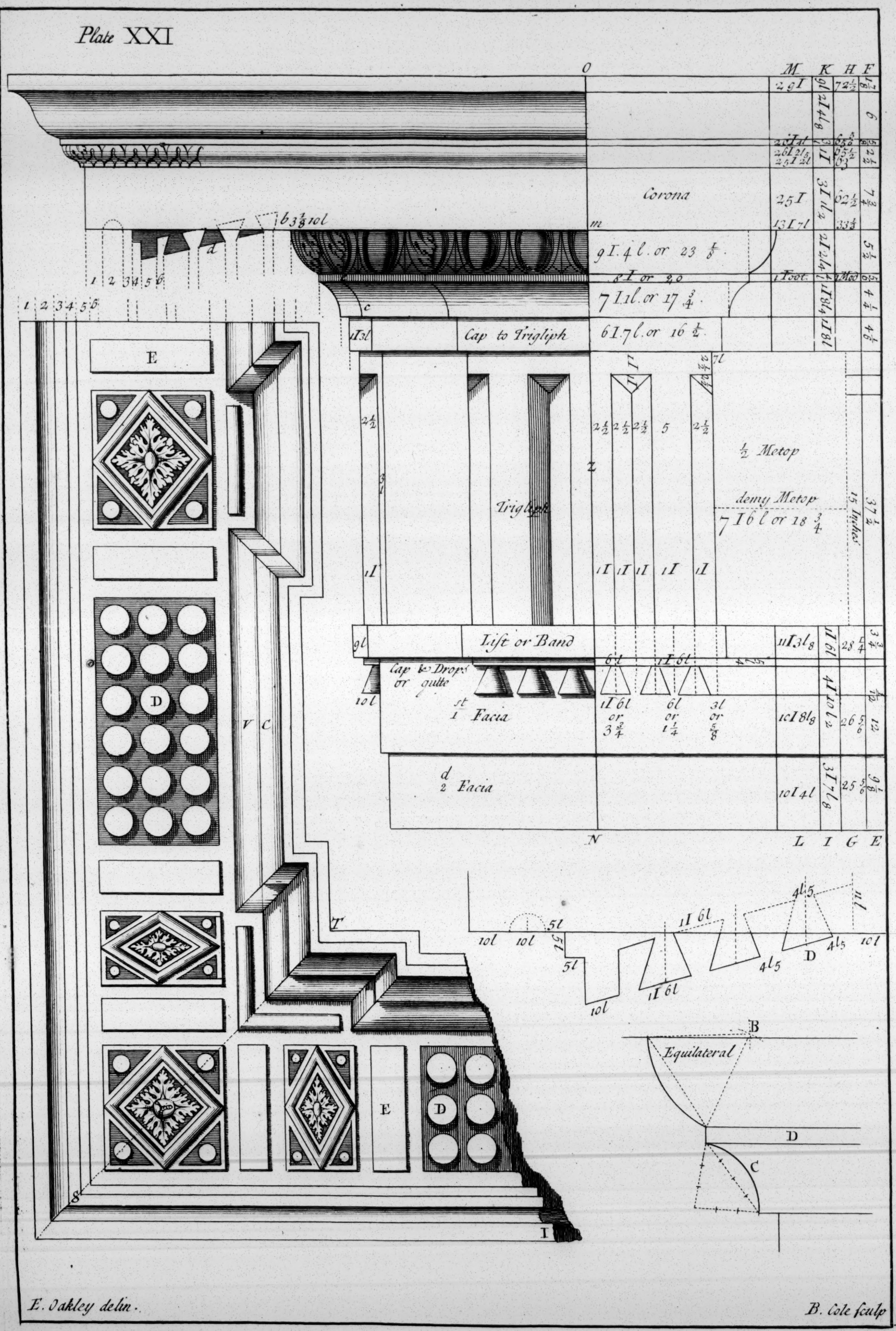
Scale one Mod

Scale one Foot

E. Oakley Delin

B. Cole sculp.

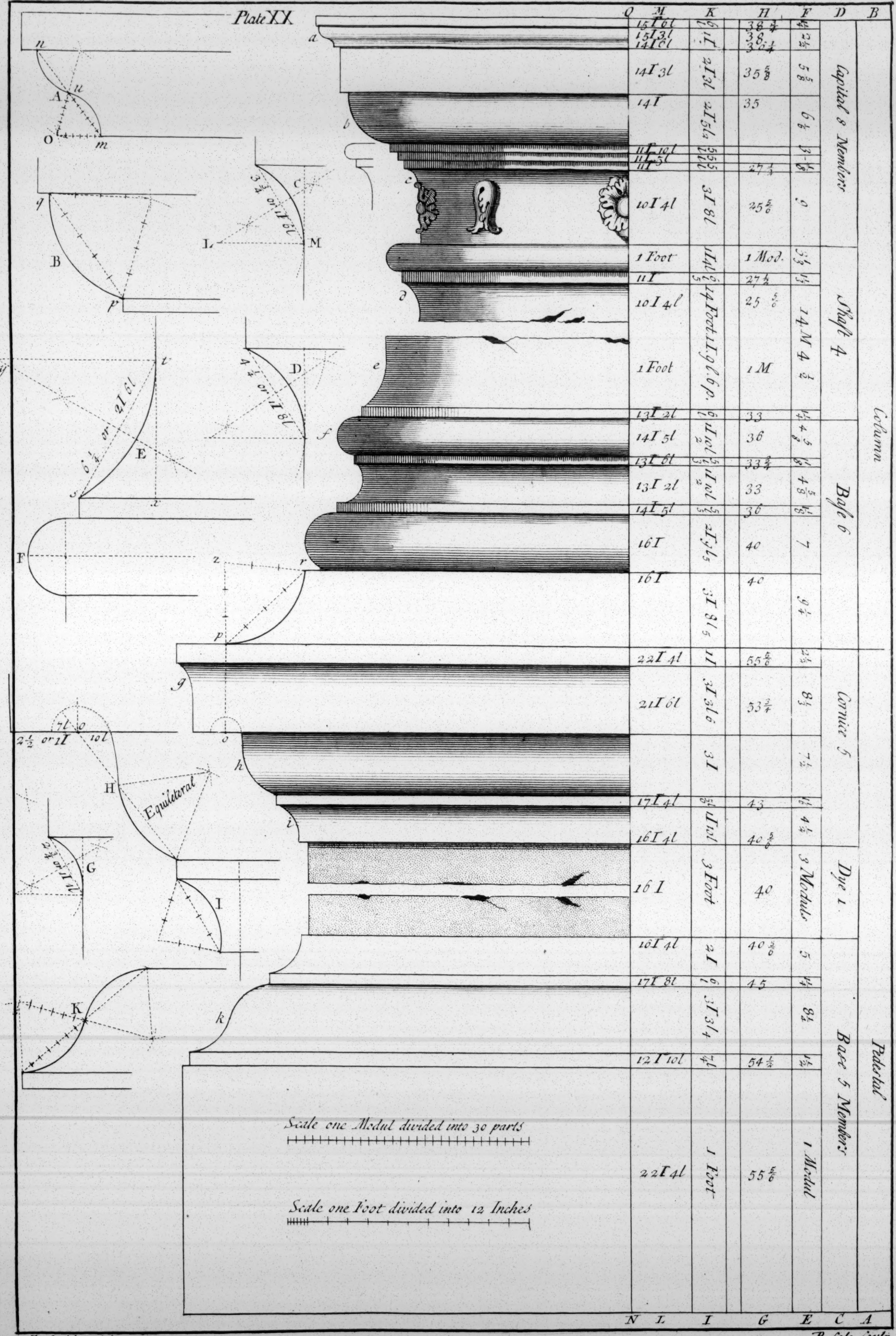
Plate XXI



E. Oakley delin.

B. Cole sculp

Plate XX.

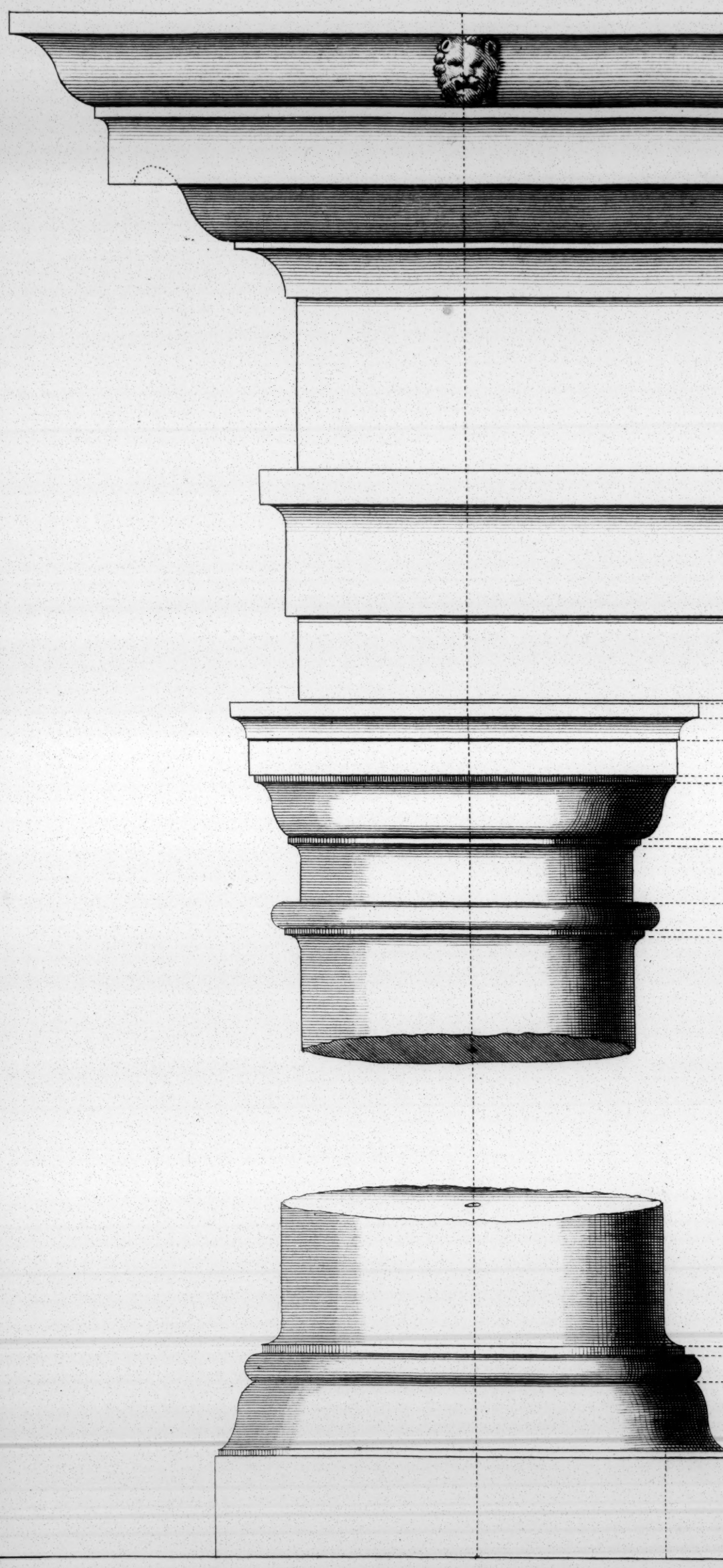


Q	M	K	H	F	D	B
15 I 6 l	6 l		38 7/12	2 1/2	Capital & Members	Column
15 I 3 l	1 I		38			
14 I 6 l			36 4/12			
14 I 3 l	2 I 3 l		35 5/8	5 5/8		
14 I	2 I 5 l 4		35	6 1/4		
11 I 10 l	5/12			3 1/8		
11 I 5 l	1/12		27 1/3			
10 I 4 l	3 I 8 l		25 5/6	9		
1 Foot	11 l 6/5		1 Mod.	3 1/3	Shaft 4	
11 I			27 1/2	1 1/3		
10 I 4 l	1 Foot 11 l 6/5 p.		25 5/6	14 M 4 1/2		
1 Foot			1 M			
13 I 2 l	6/7		33	1 1/4		
14 I 5 l	1 I 10 l 1/2		36	4 5/8	Base 6	
13 I 6 l	5/7		33 3/4	1/8		
13 I 2 l	1 I 10 l 2/3		33	4 5/8		
14 I 5 l	5/7		36	1/8		
16 I	2 I 5 l 5		40	7		
16 I	3 I 8 l 5		40	9 1/4		
22 I 4 l	1 I		55 5/6	2 1/2	Cornice 5	
21 I 6 l	3 I 3 l 6		53 3/4	8 1/3		
	3 I			7 1/2		
17 I 4 l	5/8		43	1/6		
16 I 4 l	1 I 10 l		40 5/6	4 1/2		
16 I	3 Foot		40	3 Modul.	Dye 1.	
16 I 4 l	2 I		40 5/6	5		
17 I 8 l	1 6/7		45	1/4		
	3 I 3 l 4			8 1/2	Base 5 Members	Pedestal
12 I 10 l	7/12		54 1/2	1/12		
22 I 4 l	1 Foot		55 5/6	1 Modul		

N L I G E C A

E. Oakley delin. B. Cole sculp

Plate XIX



26 J 4 l 8	12 1/4	66	3 1/2	
4 J			10	
21 J 9 l 4	9 1/4	54 1/4	9	
20 J 10 l 8	3 J 7 l 2	52 1/4	10 1/4	
10 J 11 l 8	2 1/2	31	6	
9 J 7 l 2	3 J	24	7 1/2	
9 J	1 J 10 l 8	22 1/2	20 3/4	
11 J	2 J	27 1/2	5	
9 J 7 l 2	7 J	24	17 1/2	
9 J	5 J	22 1/2	12 1/2	
13 J	2 J 12 l 4	32 1/2	2 1/2	
			3	
11 J 9 l 6	2 J 14 l 2	29 1/2	5 1/2	
11 J 4 l 8	2 J 6 l 8	28 1/2	4	
	3 J 9 l 8		8 1/2	
9 J 6 l 8	2 J 4 l 8	24 1/2	4 1/2	
9 J	2 J 4 l 8	22 1/2	8 1/2	
10 J 10 l 4	1 J 17 l 2	27 1/2	4	
10 J	2 J	25	5	
13 J 8 l	2 J 17 l 2	33 1/2	2	
14 J 2 l 4	2 J 17 l 2	35 1/2	4	
	3 J 9 l 8		9 1/2	
15 J 8 l 4	2 J 17 l 2	39 1/2	6	
16 J	6 J	40	15	

Scale one Mod:

Scale one Foot:

E. Oakley Delin.

B. Cole Sculp.

PLATE 19.

ANOTHER Deſign of the *Tuſcan* Order, according to the Manner of *Palladio.*

PLATE 20.

THE *Doric* Column and Pedeſtal, with the Moldings deſcribed as *Plate* 18.

PLATE 21.

THE *Doric* Entablature to one Fifth of the Height of the Column; to which is added the Platfond of the Cornice, D, D, Drops or Guttœ in Platfond E, E, plain Pannels.

PLATE 22.

THE *Doric* Entablature and Capital, the Entablature being eighteen Minutes higher than the former, which adds a better Proportion to the Triglyphs, which in the former was ſquare, this being in the Manner of *Palladio.*

PLATE 23.

THE *Ionic* Pedeſtal, with the Column and ancient Capital

PLATE 24.

THE *Ionic* (Ancient) Capital, Plan, Elevation and Profiles.

PLATE 25.

THE Modern *Ionic* Capital, differently practiſed, as by the Plan A and Elevation B; and the Plan C and Elevation D.

PLATE 26.

THE *Ionic* Entablature, with Platfond of Cornice, and the Projection and half Modilion at large.

PLATE 27.

THE Pedeſtal and Column (without Capital,) of the *Corinthian* Order.

PLATE 28.

THE *Corinthian* Capital, the Leaves of this Capital are in Number 16, eight in each Row.

Each Leaf is divided into ſeven or nine Plumes; two whereof, or to ſpeak more properly, one Whole and an Half on each Side go to form the Return or Deſcent. Sometimes the Return conſiſts of three Plumes almoſt intire; each Plume being divided according to the Nature of the Leaf.

The Leaves of this Capital are either Olive, Acanthus, or Smallage, But the firſt ought rather to have the Preference. For its Leaves being flat and plain, reflect more Light than the others, which are more wrought and uneven; for which Reaſon, the firſt have a better Effect when ſeen at a Diſtance, than the laſt; which are fitter to be view'd nearer Hand.

In making the Leaves of this or the *Roman* Capital, great Care muſt be taken that they be well deſign'd; particularly, that in dividing them into Plumes, thoſe Plumes don't

run too far from one another, but that all together appear to form one ſingle Leaf; which muſt not be too narrow towards the Top: That each Plume direct to its Origin, *&c.* without which Precaution the Leaves will loſe all their Grace.

Plate 29.

THE Entablature of the *Corinthian* Order, the Platfond of the enriched Part of the Cornice, and at the Bottom is the Modilions explained, and adjoining to the ſame, is deſcribed the Projecture of the Facias of Architrave by Beads or Pearls.

Plate 30, 31, 32.

THE Compoſite Pedeſtal, Baſe and Shaft. The Compoſite Capital and Plan. And the Compoſite Entablature and Platfond of the enrich'd Part of the Cornice.

Plate 33.

THE Impoſts and Arches to the *Doric*, *Ionic*, *Corinthian*, and *Compoſite* Orders.
N. B. The Impoſt and Arch to the *Tuſcan* Order, is on *Plate* 34.

In the Orders following, the Entablatures are all calculated to one Fourth of the Column.

Plate 34.

THE *Tuſcan* Order with the Entablature one Fourth of the Column, *Fig.* 3. on the Left Hand *Fig.* 1. is the general Heights and Projectures on the Pedeſtal; to find the Height of the Parts to this Proportion, divide the whole Height A, L, B, I, C, into twenty two equal Parts and one Sixth, as the Line A, x, D, E, give four Parts and two Thirds to the Pedeſtal; fourteen to the Column, and the remaining three and one half to the Entablature: If for the *Tuſcan* Order, then one of thoſe equal Parts is the Module or Foot Meaſure: If for the *Doric*, divide the Interval of fourteen equal Parts into ſixteen equal Parts, and one of thoſe are the Module or Foot Meaſure: If for the *Ionic*, into eighteen: If for the *Corinthian* or *Compoſite*, into twenty equal Parts, and one of thoſe Parts is the Module or Foot Meaſure; otherwiſe, divide the whole Height into one hundred and thirty three equal Parts, and twenty eight will be the Height of the Pedeſtal, eighty four the Height of the Column, and the remaining twenty one equal Parts will be the Height of the Entablature. On the ſame *Plate* is the Impoſt and Arch to the ſame Order.

Plate 35, 36, 37, 38 *and* 39.

THE two firſt are different Profiles of the *Doric* Order: And the three following are the *Ionic*, *Corinthian* and *Compoſite* Orders; the Entablatures to one Fourth of the Column.

Plate 40, 41, 42, 43.

IN theſe four *Plates*, are Frontiſpieces of the *Tuſcan*, *Doric*, *Ionic*, and *Corinthian* Orders.

Plate XXIX

Corinthian Entablature

Entablature

Cornice 15

Freeze 1

Architrave 8

E. Oxley Delin.

B. Cole Sculp.

Plate XXX

Composite Pedestal Base & Shaft

Column without Capital

Shaft 5

	4	1 Mod.		1 Foot
	3 13/24	28		11 ♃ 2 ℓ 4
	3 11/24	25 3/8		10 ♃

Base 11

	3	1 Mod.		1 Foot
	1 1/2	34		13 ♃ 7 ℓ 2
	3	35 5/12		14 ♃ 2 ℓ
	5	36 2/3		14 ♃ 8 ℓ
	4 11/24	33		13 ♃ 2
	4 3/12	34		13 ♃ 7 ℓ 2
	3 23/24	36 3/4		14 ♃ 8 ℓ 4
	3 11/12	36 1/4		14 ♃ 5 ℓ
	3	35		14 ♃
	3 11/24	38		15 ♃ 2 ℓ 2
	6 1/2	41 7/8		16 ♃ 9 ℓ
	7 1/2	41 7/8		16 ♃ 9 ℓ

Cornice 7

	2 11/12	56 2/3		22 ♃ 8 ℓ
	3 1/6	56 1/4		22 ♃ 6 ℓ
		54		21 ♃ 7 ℓ
	5 3/4	53		21 ♃ 4 ℓ
	1 1/24	52 1/2		21 ♃
	8 1/3	45		18 ♃
	2 3/4	46 3/4		18 ♃ 8 ℓ
	1 1/24	45		18 ♃

Dye 1

		41 7/8		16 ♃ 9 ℓ
	1 1/24	45 5/8		18 ♃ 3 ℓ
	2 3/4	47 1/2		19 ♃
	6 7/8	46 1/4		18 ♃ 6 ℓ
	1 1/24	54		21 ♃ 9 ℓ
	4 3/4	56 2/3		22 ♃ 8 ℓ

Pedestal

Base 6

	1 Mod. 1	56 2/3	1 Foot 5	22 ♃ 8 ℓ

Scale one Modul.

Scale one Foot.

A

B

C

D

E

E. Oakley Delin.

B. Cole sculp.

Plate XXXI

Composed Capital Acanthus Leaf

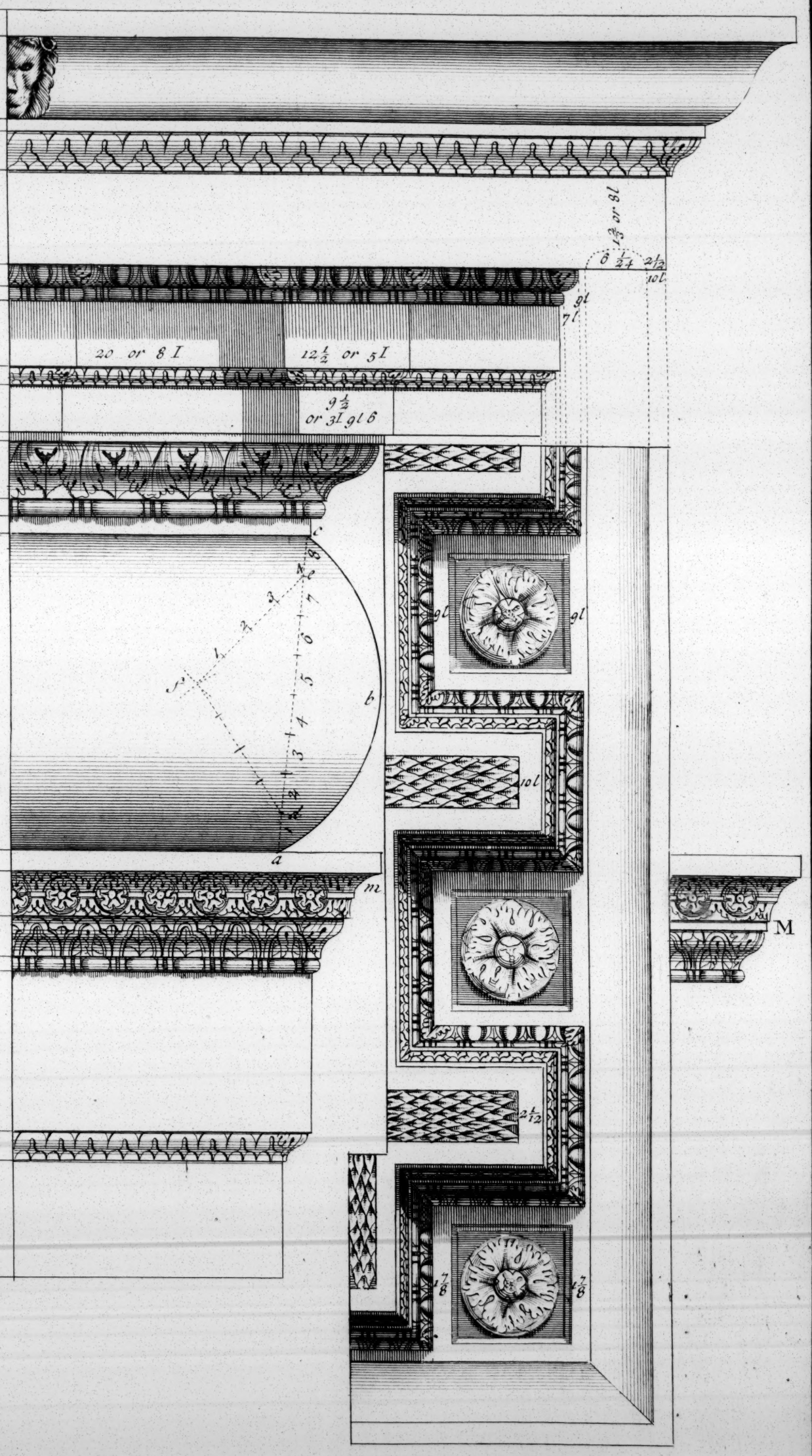
E. Oakley delin.

B. Cole sculp.

Plate XXXII

Composite Entablature

	2½	7 6 ¼		11	2 9 6 l
	7¾			3 l 12.	
	¼	6 8		5l	27 9 2 l
	3½	6 7 ½		11 l 8.	27 9
		6 4 ¾			25 9 9 l
14	9 ⅓	6 3 ¾		3 l 8l 8.	25 9 6 l
	½ 2⅔	5 5 ·		6l 1l	22 l
	¼	5 3 ¾			21 l 5 l
	3¼				21 l 2 l
	¼	5 2 ½			21 l 1l
					20 l 10 l
	4⅓	5 1 ⅞		1l 9l 6.	20 l 9 l
	¼	3 6 ½		5l	14 l 6 l
	4½	3 5 ⅝		1l 9l 7	14 l 4 l
		3 0 ⅚			12 l 3 l
	2	3 0 ⅝		9l 8.	12 l 2 l
	2	2 9 ¼		9l 8.	11 l 8 l
Entablature	1 Mod			1 Foot	
	2⅛	3 5 ⅚		10l 2.	14 l 4 l
	4⅛	3 2 ½		1l 7l 8.	13 l
	⅓ 3⅔	3 2 ½		11 5l 6.	12 l 10
		2 9 ¾			11 l 11
	½	2 9 ½		7l 2.	11 l 10
la Frize 1	15	2 9		6l	11 l 8 l
	2⅓	2 8 ¾		1l 8.	11 l 6 l
		2 6 ¼			10 l 6 l
l'Architrave 1	10 11/12	2 5 ⅚		4l 4l 4	10 l 4 l

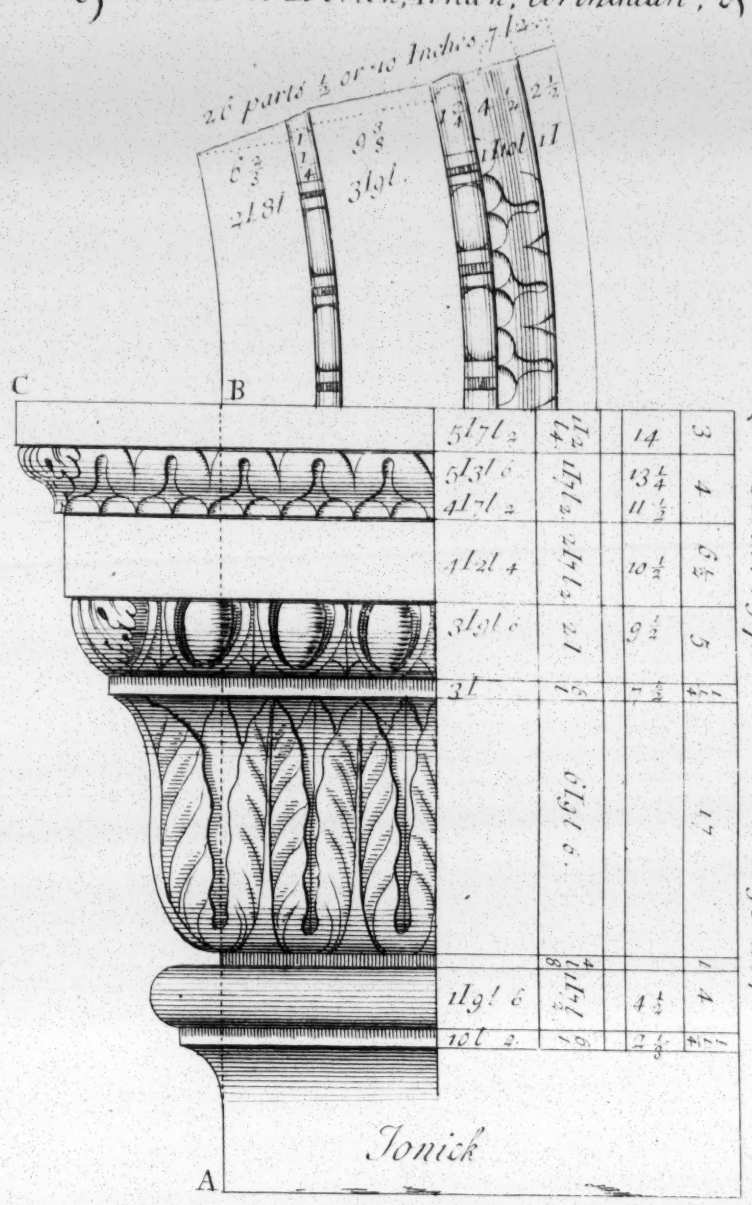


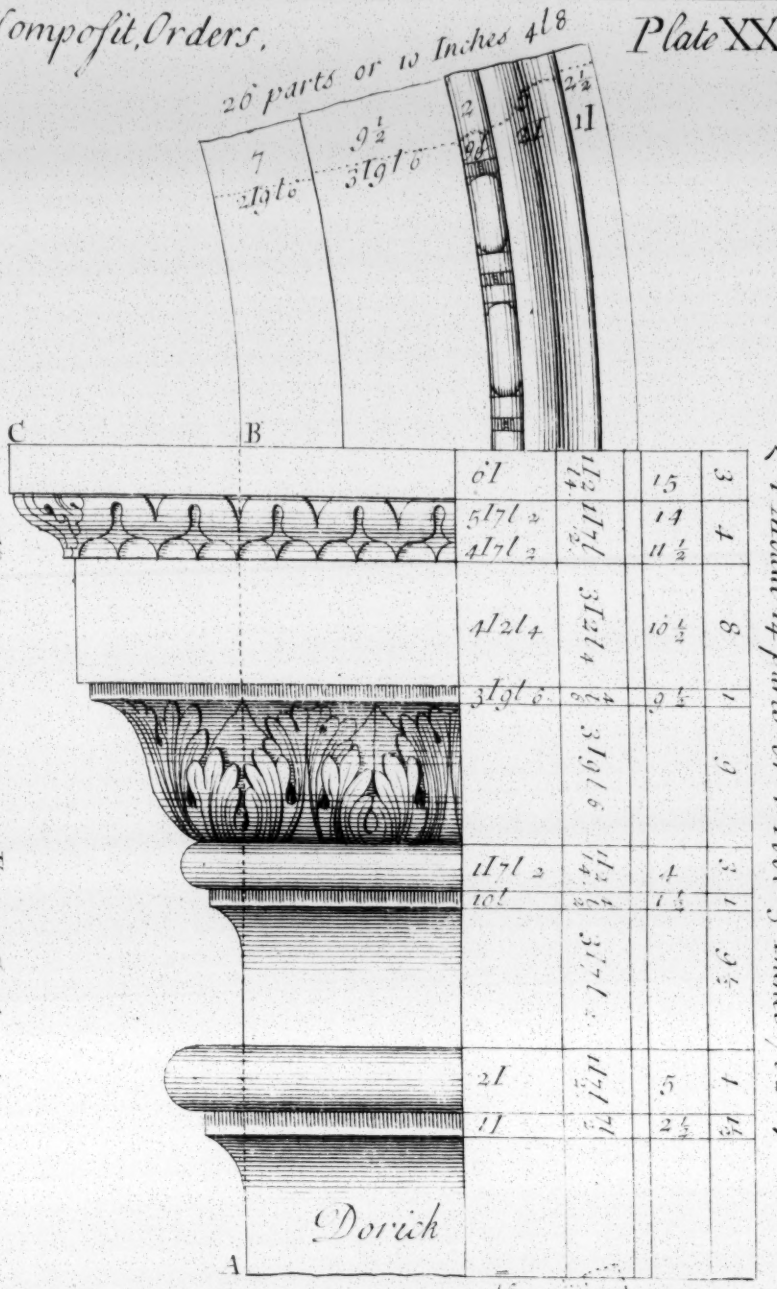
E. Oakley Delin.

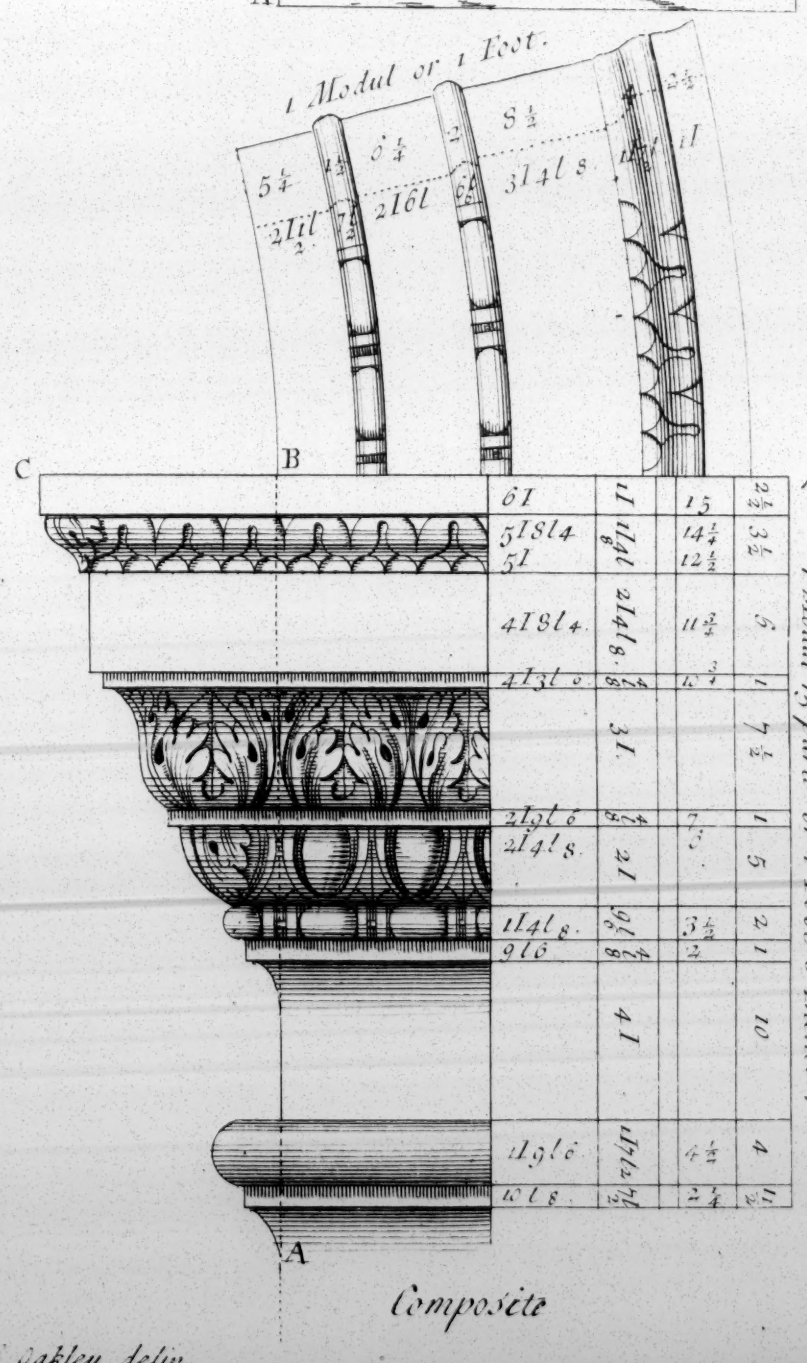
B. Cole Sculp

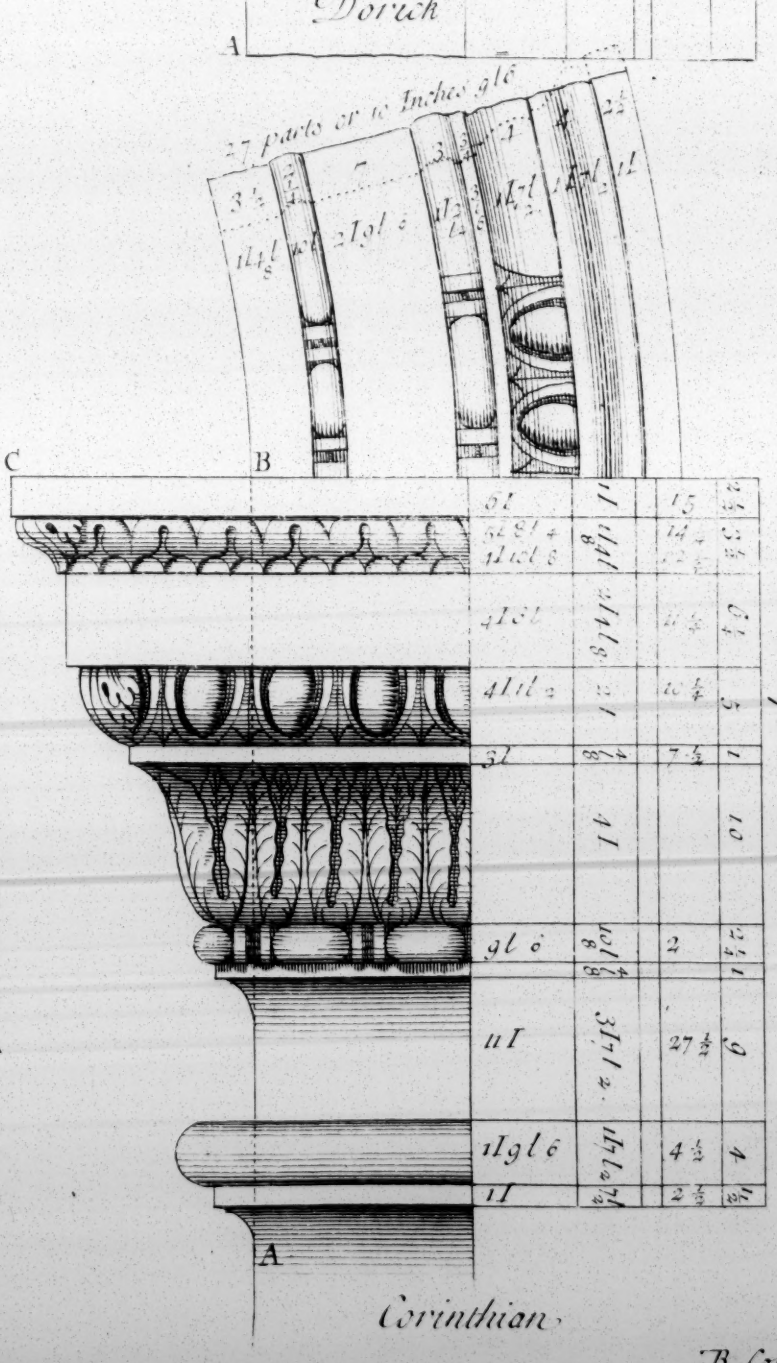
Imposts & Arches to Dorick, Ionick, Corinthian, & Compositt Orders.

Plate XXXIII









E. Oakley delin.

B. Cole sculp.

Plate XXXIIII

Tuscan *Order Entablatre* $\frac{1}{4}$ *of y^e Hight of Column*

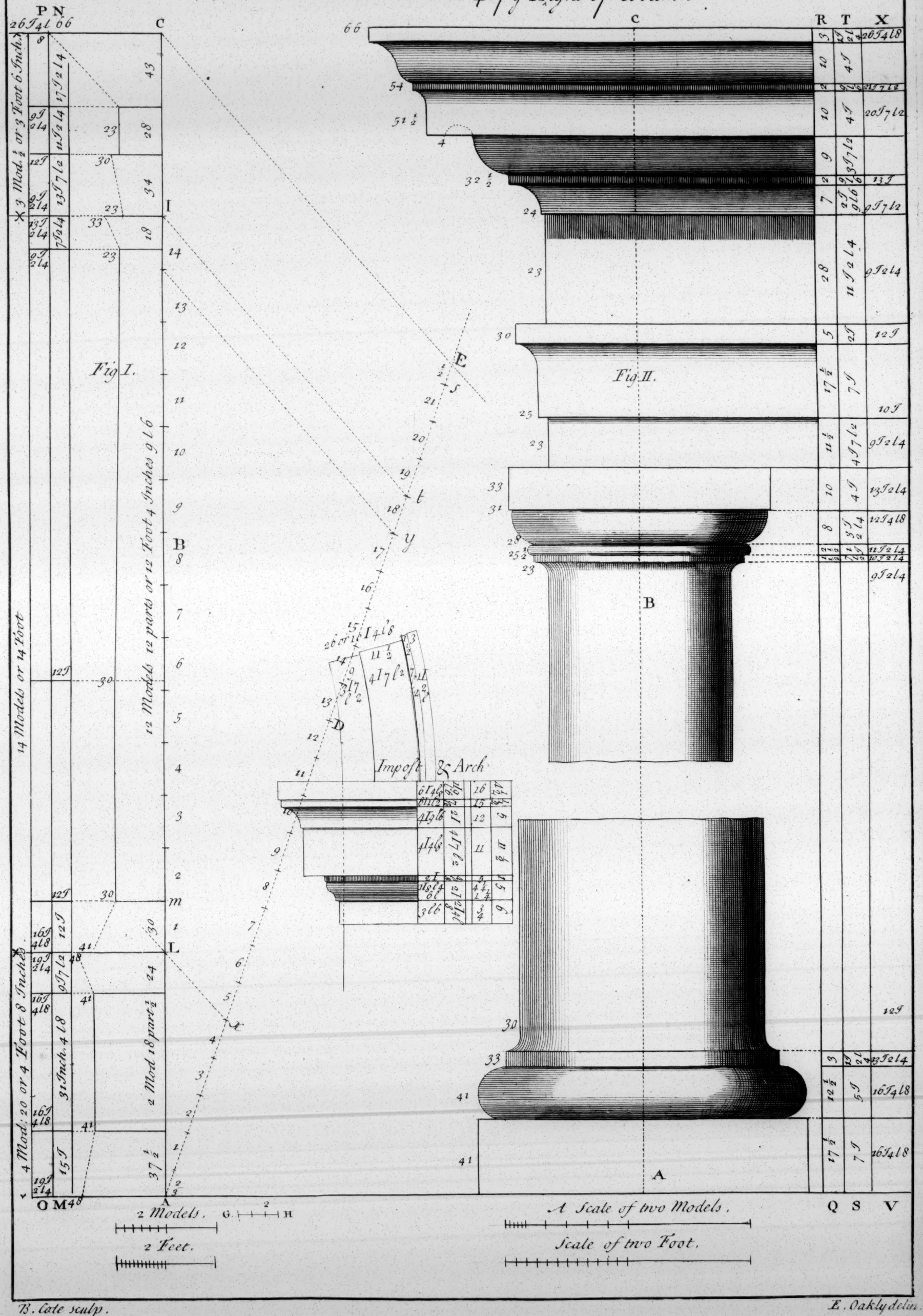
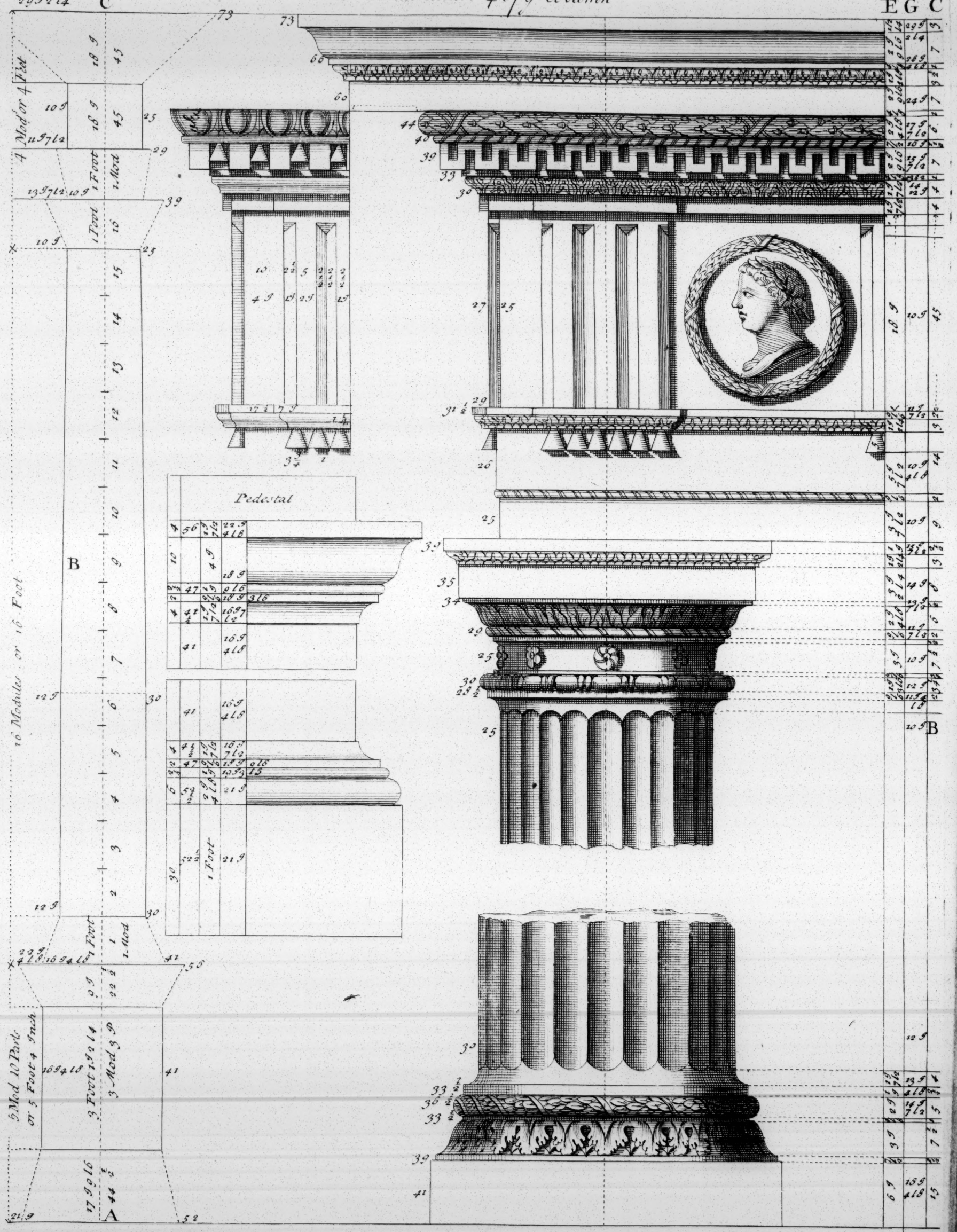


Plate XXXV

Dorick *Order Entablature ¼ of ye Column*



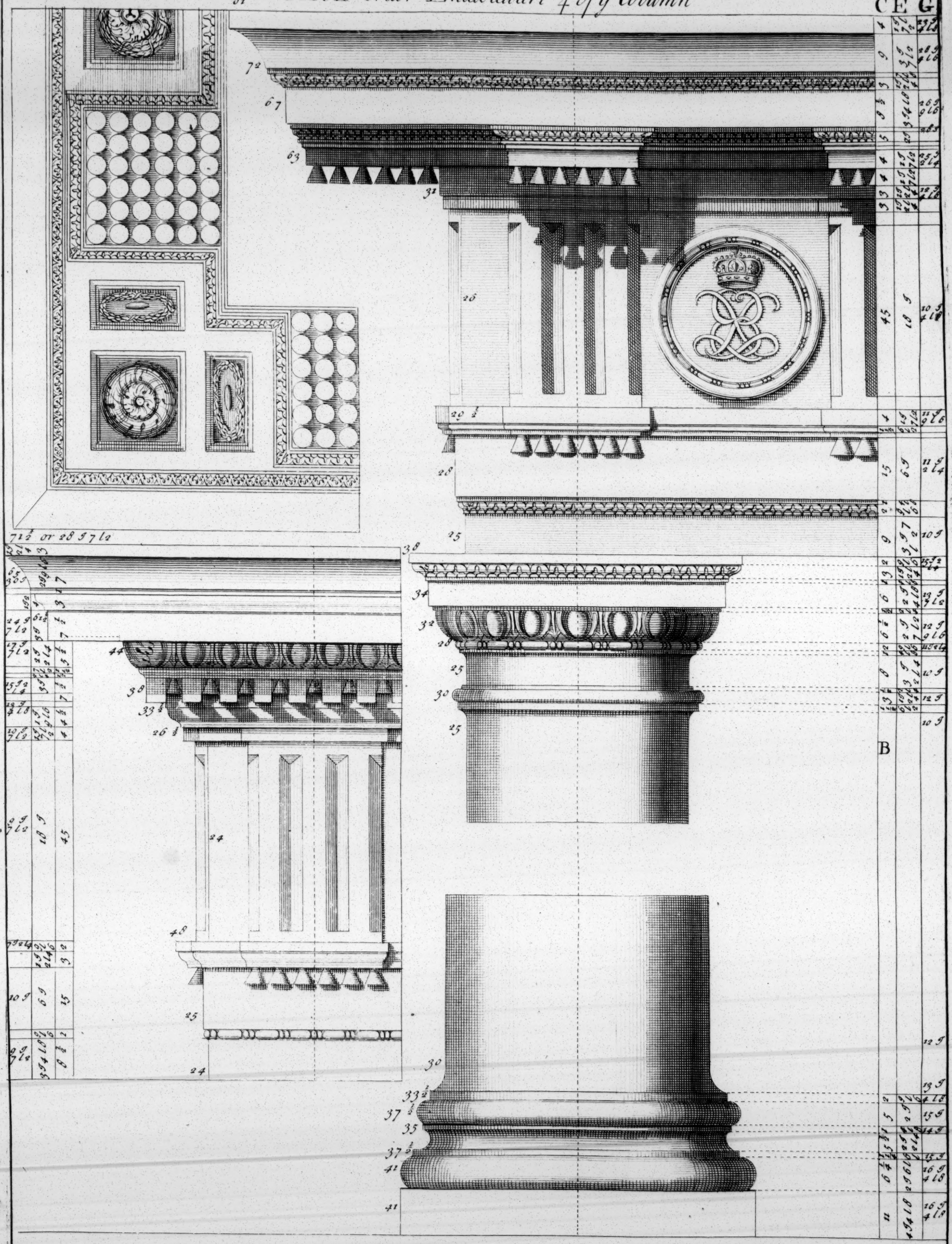
E. Oakley Del.

B. Cole Sculp.

Plate XXXVI

81. Dorick Order Entablature ¼ of ye Column

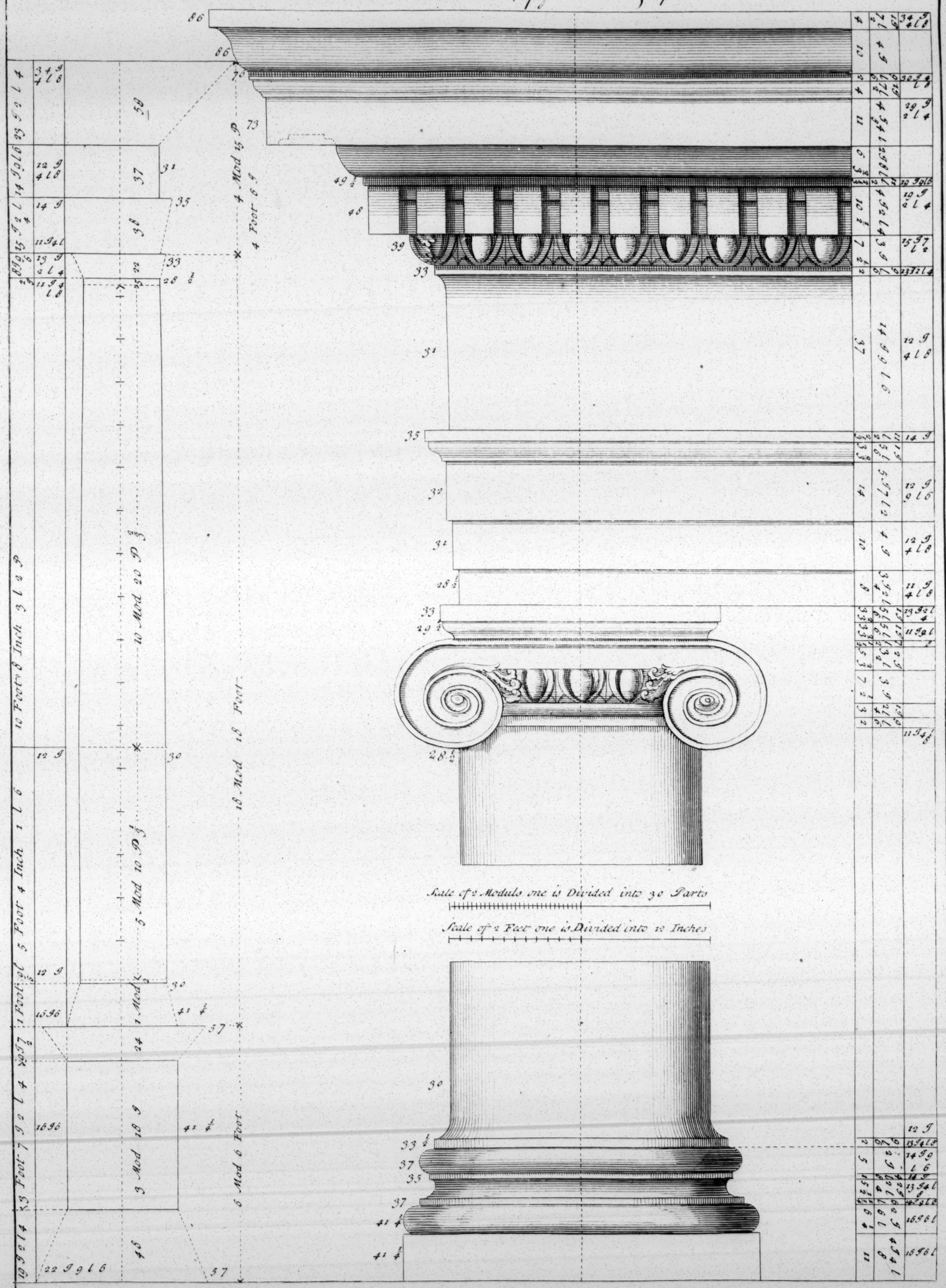
C E G



E. Oakley Delin.

B. Cole sculp.

Plate XXXVII — Ionick Order Entablature ¼ of ye Column & Capital Oval Volutes



E. Oakley Del.

B. Cole sculp.

Plate XXXVIII

Corinthian Order Entablature & of ℣ Column

Fig I

Fig II

Fig III

1 Mod 16 ½ or 18 ℣ 7 l2

Plan of Half ℣ Capital

Half of Equilateral Triangle

Scale four Modules

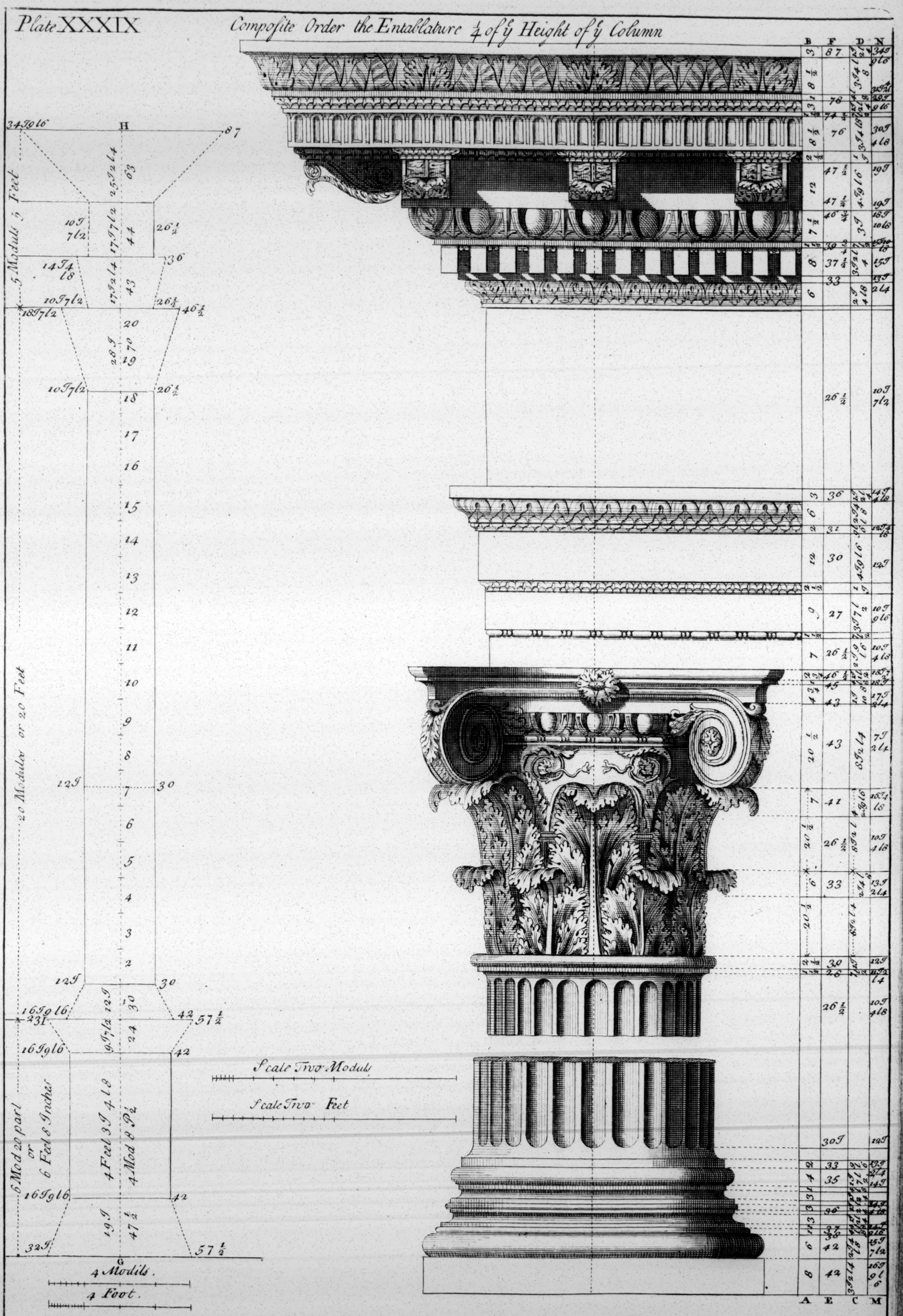
Scale four Feet

E. Oakley Delin.

B. Cole sculp.

Plate XXXIX

Composite Order the Entablature ¼ of ye Height of ye Column

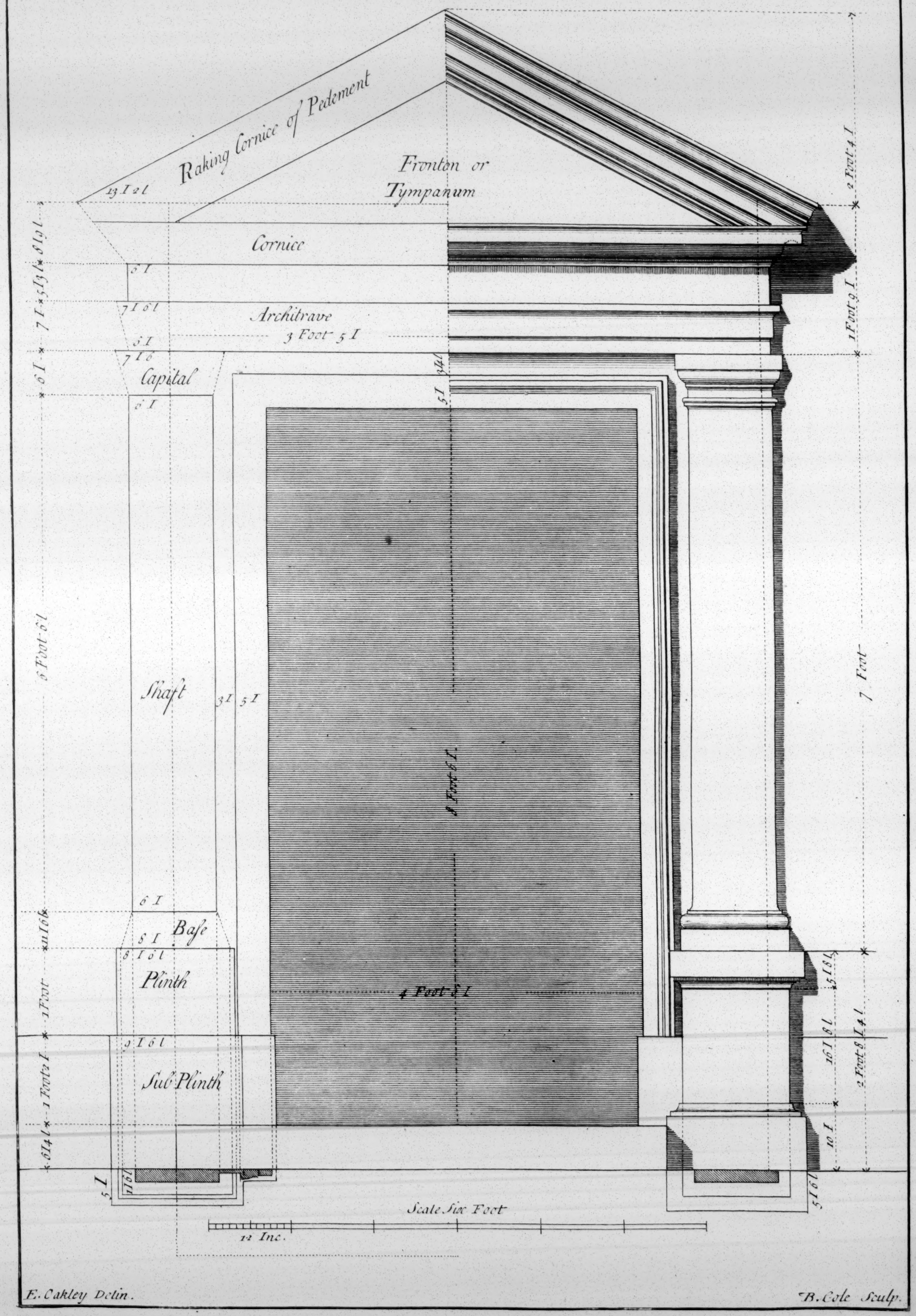


E. Oakley Delin

B. Cole Sculp.

Plate XL

Tuscan Frontispiece

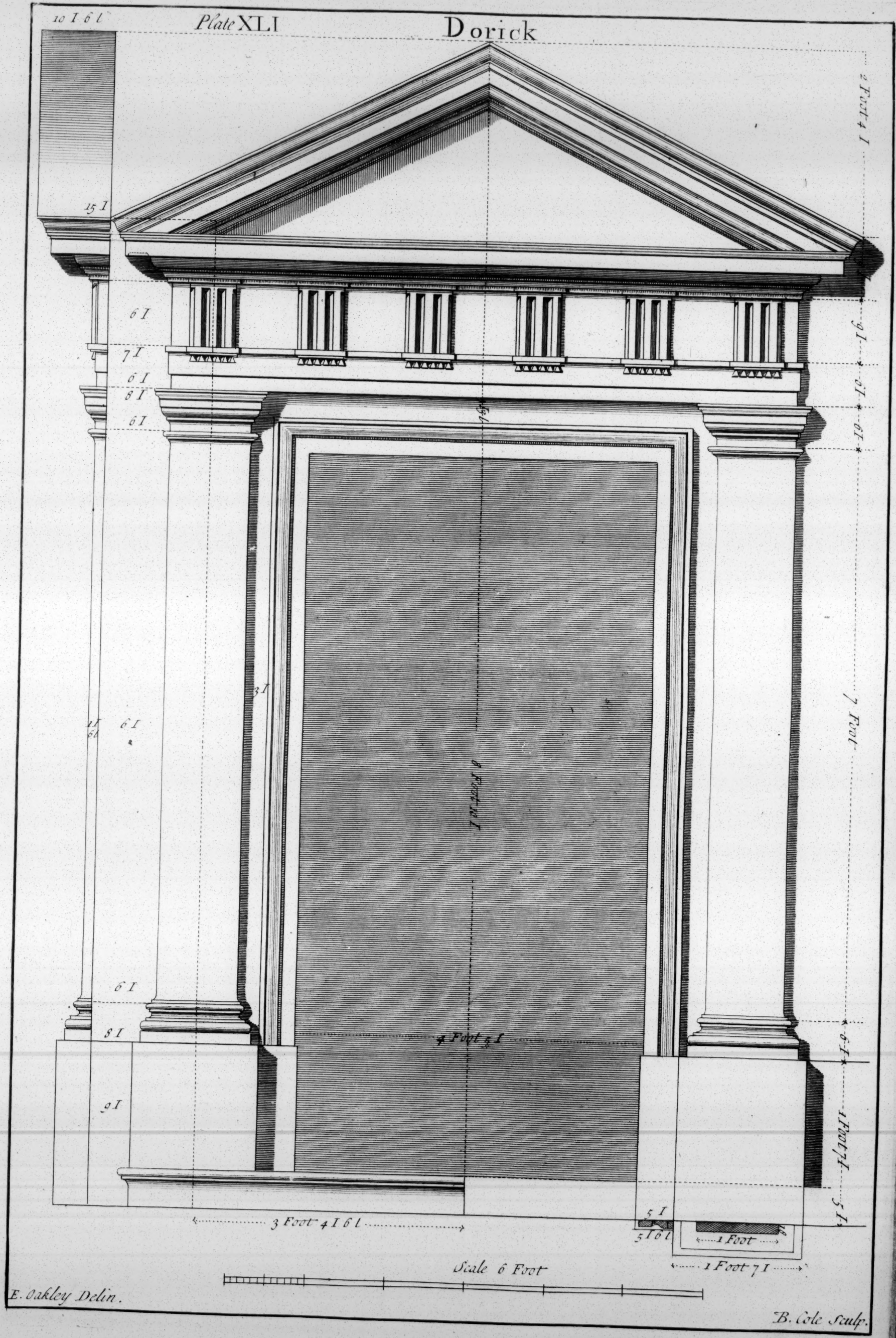


F. Cakley Delin.

B. Cole Sculp.

Plate XLI

Dorick

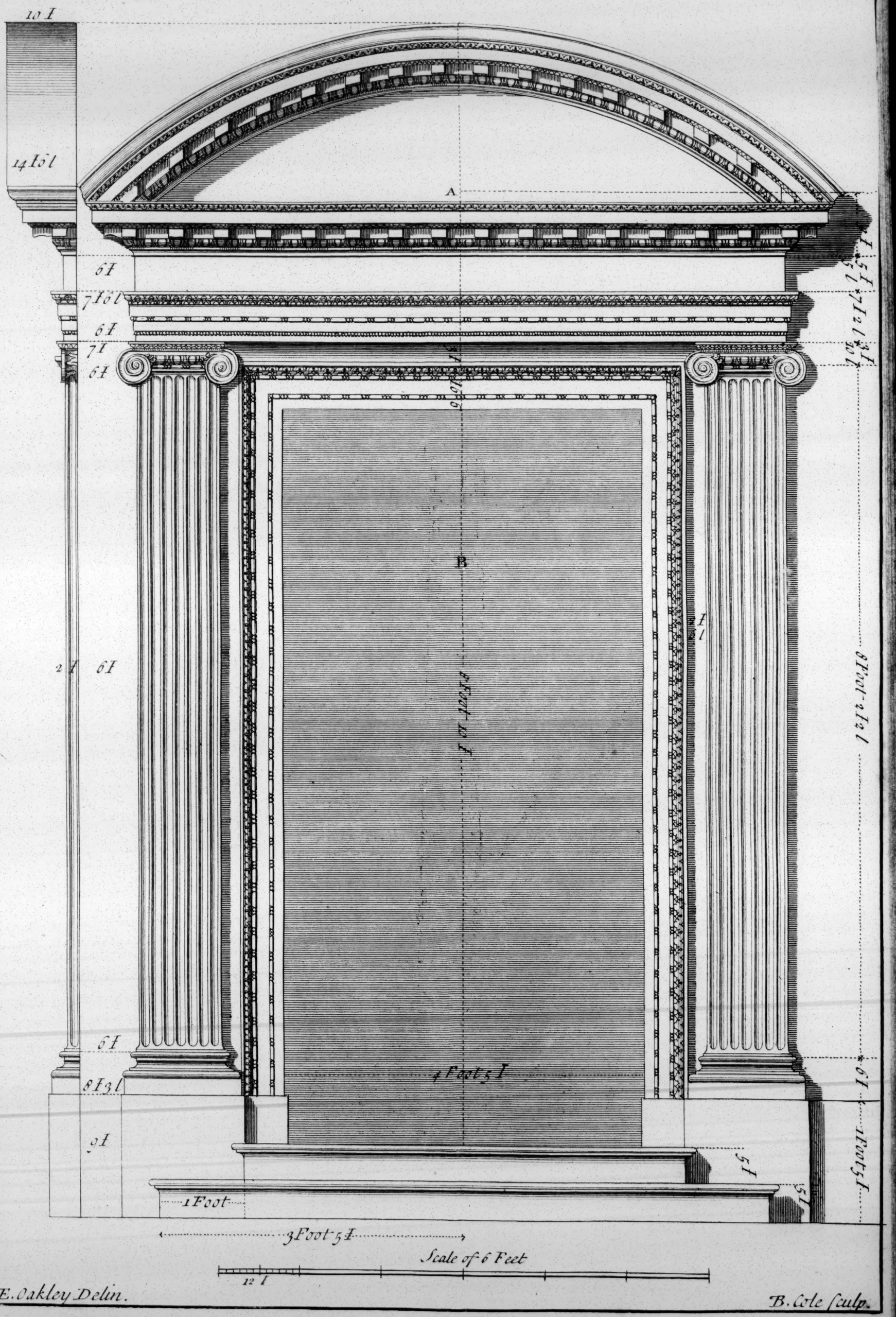


E. Oakley Delin.

B. Cole Sculp.

Plate XLII

Ionick



E. Oakley Delin.

B. Cole sculp.

Plate XLIII

CORINTHIAN

14

6 I

8 I

6 I
15 I

6 I
19

3 I
19

6 I

8 I 6 l

1 Foot

4 Foot 5 In.

5 I 6 l

2 Foot 4 I

10 I

6 I

14 I

8 Foot 4 Inch

19

1 Foot 2 Inches

1 Foot 5

E. Oakley Delin.

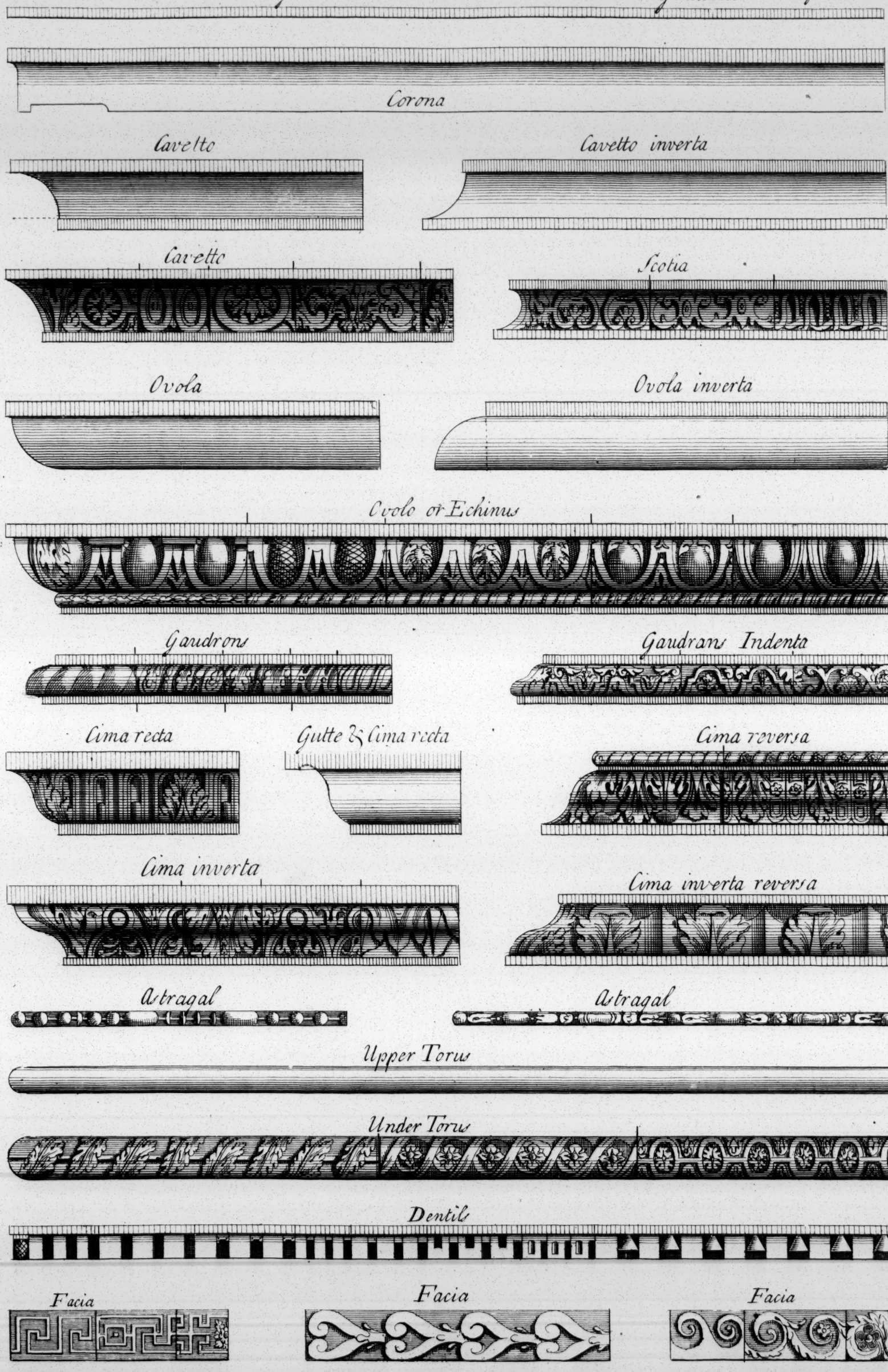
3 Foot 5 I 6 l

12 Inch.

Scale of 6 Foot

B. Cole Sculp.

Fillet Reglet Listello Tenia Cincture Annulet or Gradetto

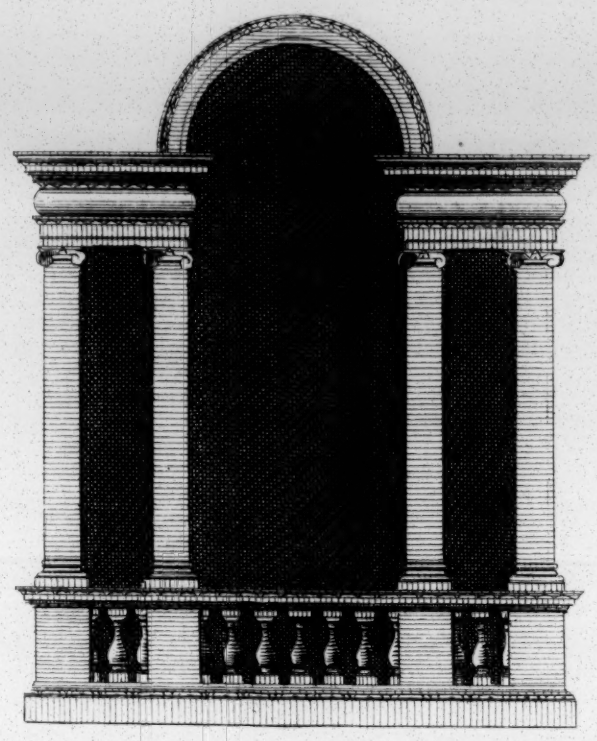


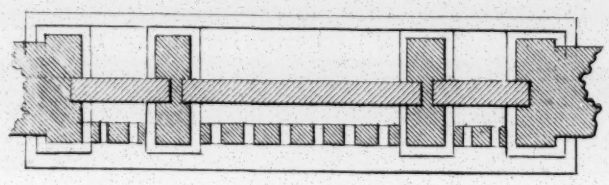
E Oakley Delin

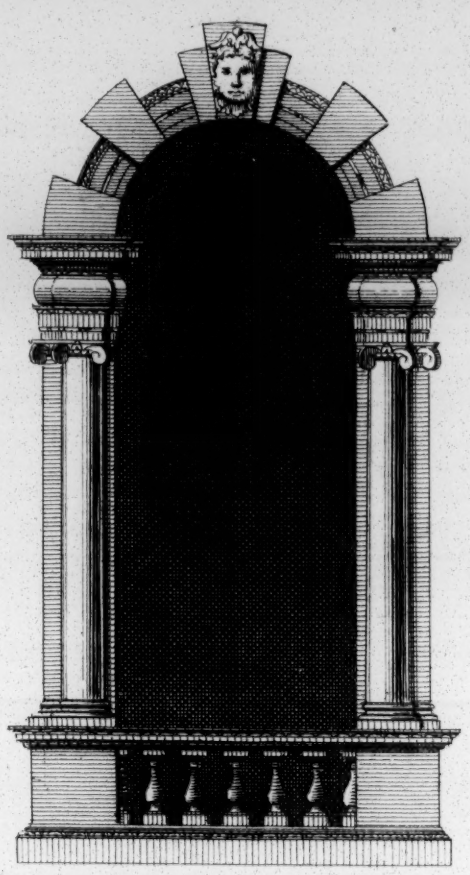
B Cole Sculp

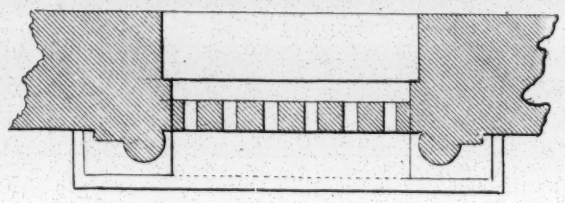
Plate XLVI

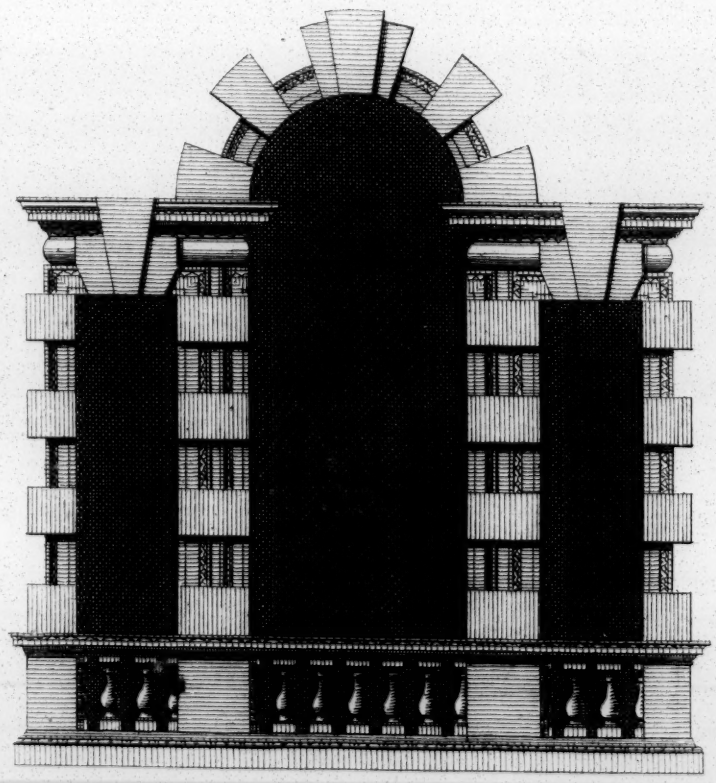
Venetian Windows

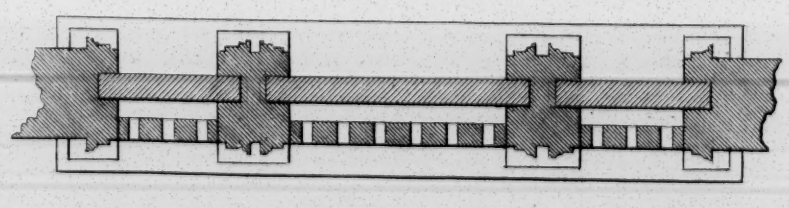












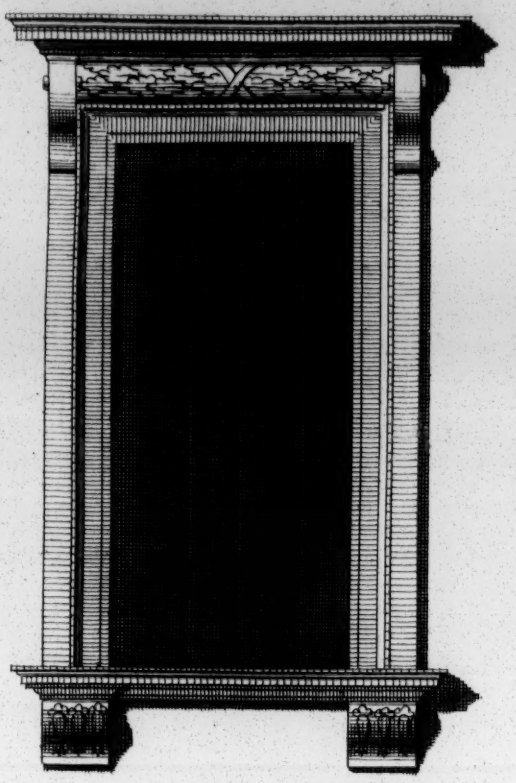
E Oakley Delin

B Cole Sculp

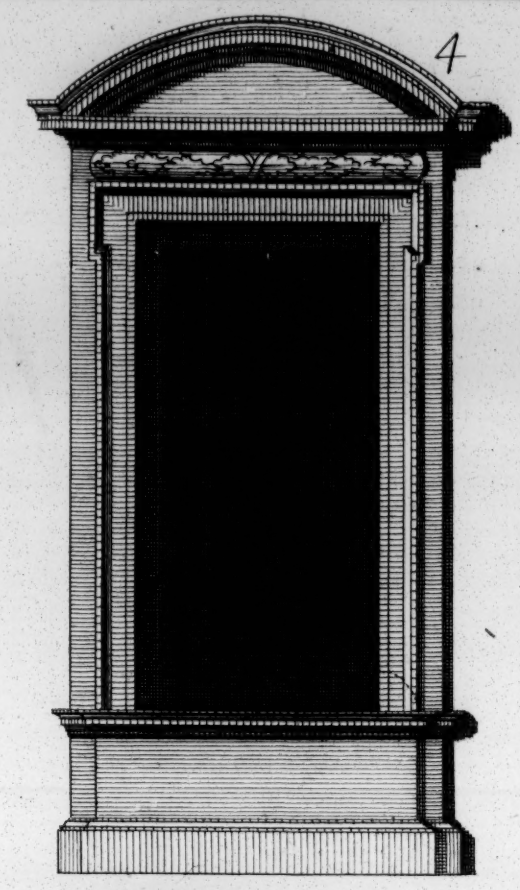
Plate XLV

Windows

5



4



6

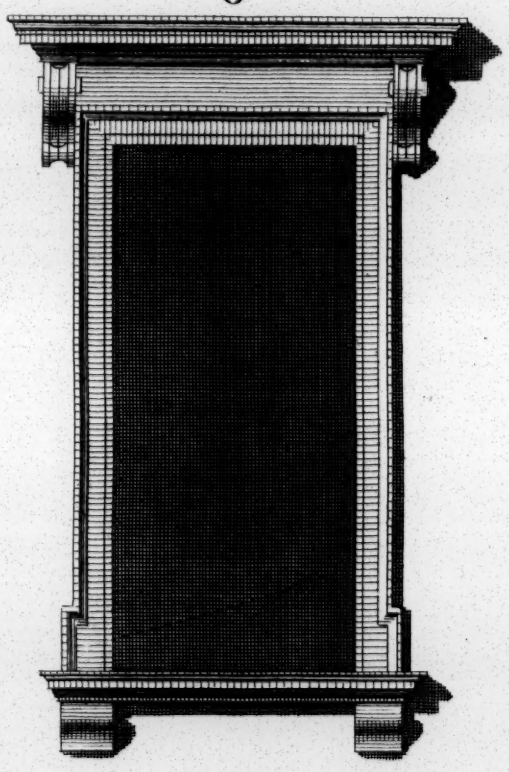
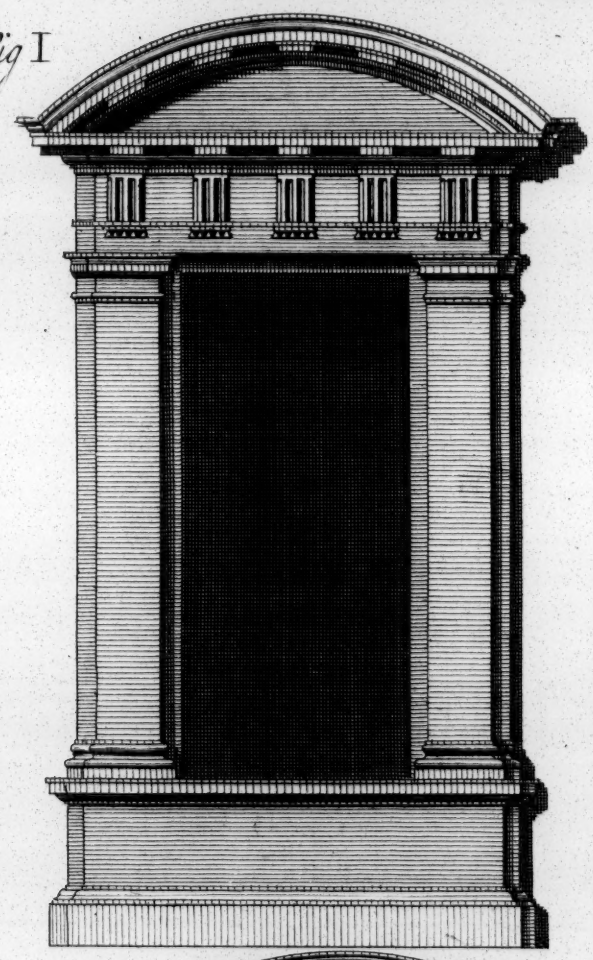
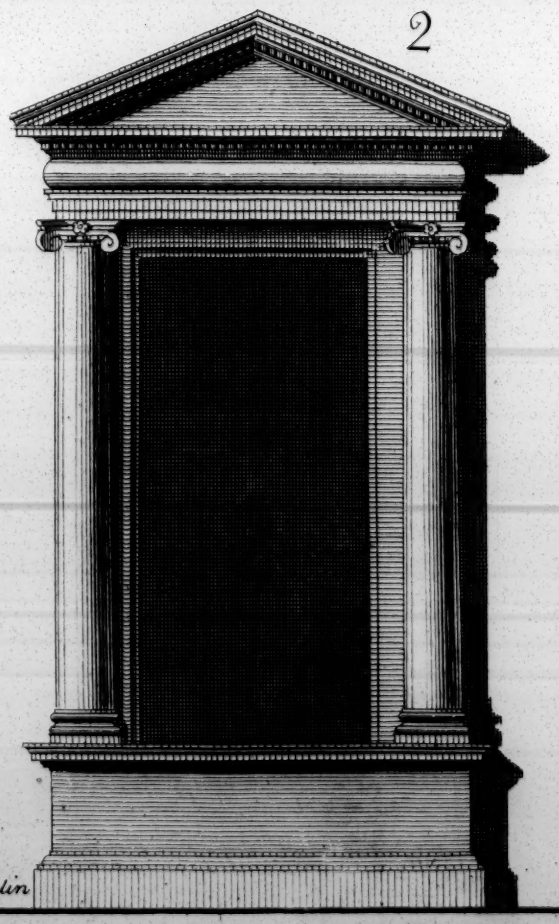


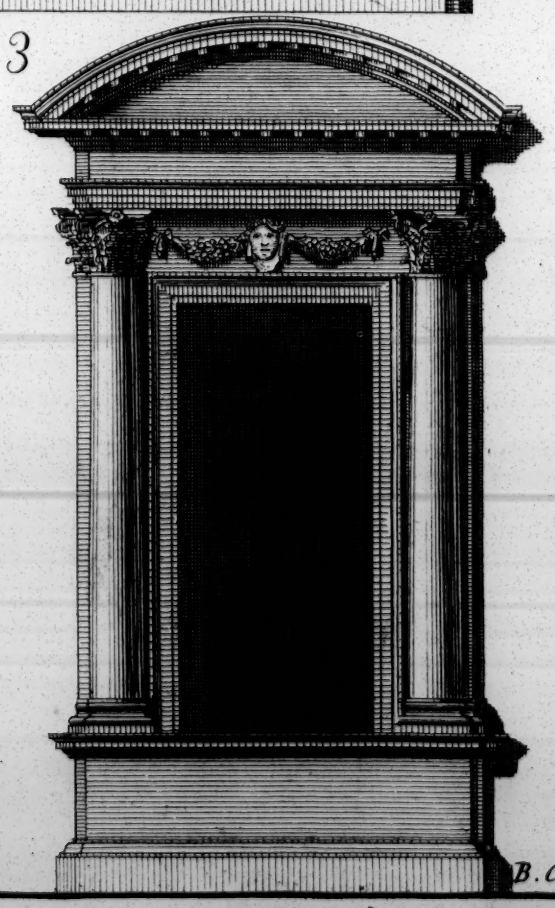
Fig I



2



3



E. Oakley Delin. *B. Cole. Sculp.*

Plate XLIIII

Paladian door case

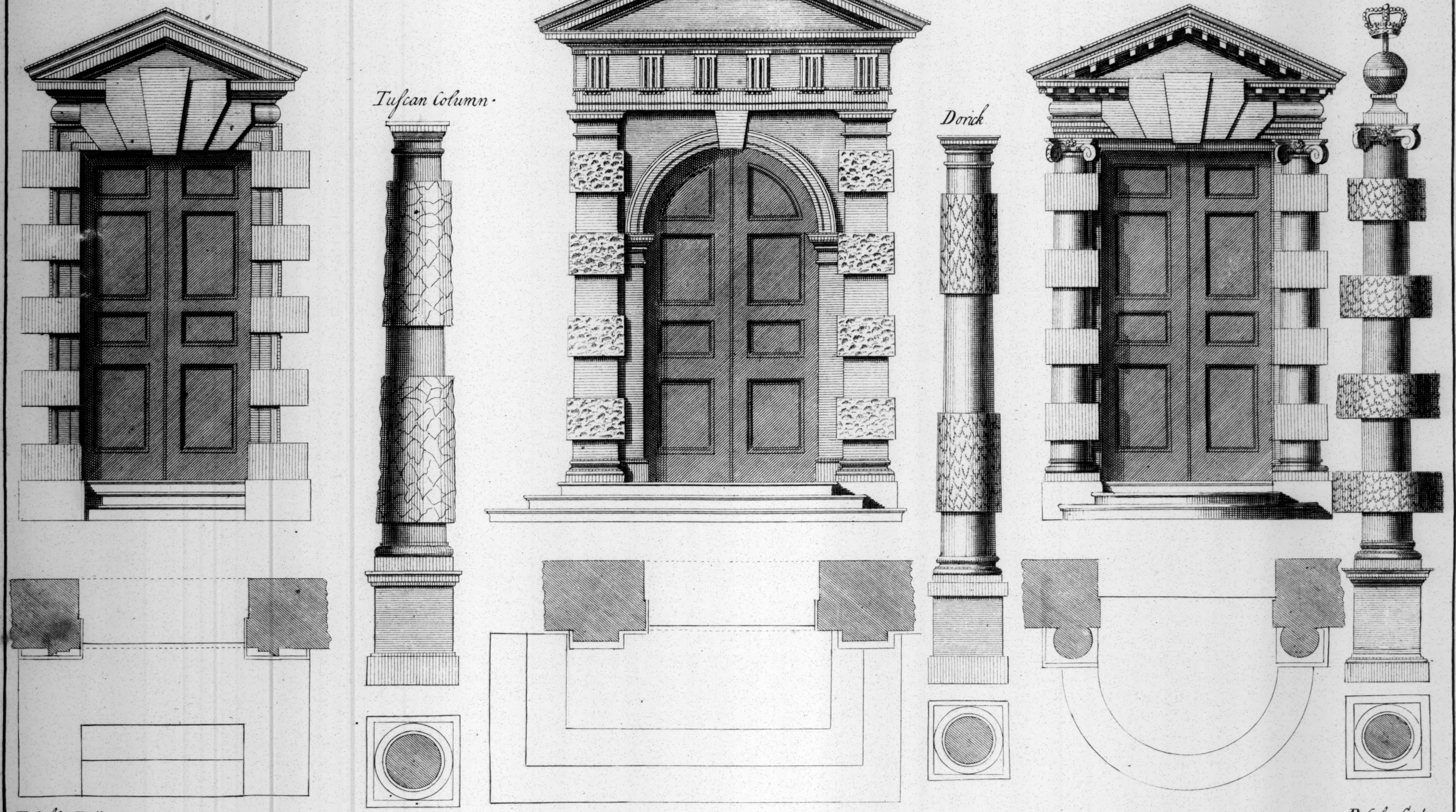
Tuscan Column

Dorick

Dorick

Ionick

Ionick



E Oakley Delin

B Cole Sculp

Plate 44.

IN this *Plate* are three Ruſticated Frontiſpieces, and three Ruſticated Columns: The Height of Doors ought not to be leſs than two Diameters, nor more than two Diameters and one Sixth.

Plate 45.

FIGURE 1. is a *Doric* Window, 2. a *Ionic* Window, and 3. a *Corinthian* Window, each on a Pedeſtal; 4. a Window dreſſed with an Architrave kneel'd at Top, with a ſwelling Freeze and circular Pediment, with a Receſs or Break on each Side, the Window ſtanding on a Pedeſtal; 5 and 6 are two Windows with Conſoles or Truſſes to ſupport the Cornice: In principal Storys the Windows ought to be two Diameters, or two and one ſixth in Height, in other Storys ſquare, or a Diagonal Proportion; the Architrave of Windows ought not to be leſs than one Sixth, nor more than one Fifth; the plain Face on each Side the Architrave or Window Jamb, ought to be nearly the ſame Width as the Jamb, unleſs there is to be no Conſoles, or the ſame then one half the Breadth of Jamb is ſufficient; Conſoles to bear Cornice, in Length ought not to be leſs than one third, nor more than one half of the opening of Window; the Window-Stool or Reſt is equal to two thirds of the Jamb: The Truſſes under the ſame, is equal to the bearing over the ſame, and to be not leſs than the Breadth in Height, nor to exceed half as much more.

Plate 46.

IN this *Plate* is contained a *Ionic Venetian* Window, the Side Openings, are each equal to one third of the Middle Opening or Diameter: A ſemicircular Window, and a *Ruſtick Venetian* Window, the Side Openings being each equal to one half the Diameter of the Middle Opening.

Plate 47.

THIS *Plate* contains the different Moldings made Uſe of, the Cima recta is the uppermoſt Member of the Cornice excepting the Fillet that crowns it, altho' inſtead of this Member ſometimes the Ovolo or Quarter round is introduced in the *Tuſcan*, and a Cavetto in the *Doric* Order; the Corona is that large ſquare Molding immediately under the Cima recta; it projects very much, both for the greater Beauty of the Entablature, and for the better ſheltering the whole Order, this Member is uſually deeper or ſtronger than the Cima recta, as being the ruling Member of the Entablature, and even of the Order. Underneath this we uſually make a Channel, for three Reaſons: The firſt to give it more Grace and Ornament; the ſecond to render it leſs heavy; and the third to prevent the Rain or other Moiſture from trickling down along the Order. For the Water falling from the Top of the Cornice, not being able to aſcend into the Channel, is forced to fall Drop by Drop on the Ground; and 'tis on this Account, that the Bottom of the Corona is call'd Larmier or Drip, the Larmier is uſually full of rich Compartments, beſides the Modillions which make one of the moſt conſiderable Ornaments; the Ovolo or Quarter Round under the Larmier, is ſometimes plain (ſee *Plate* 37.) The Denticle is that large ſquare Molding under the Ovolo, in which is frequently cut a Kind of Teeth, call'd alſo Denticles or Dentiles, (ſee *Plate* 37.) The Ovolo is ſometimes call'd Echinus, when Eggs, *&c.* are frequently carved in it: Ornaments are not always uſed on Moldings barely to enrich them, but ſometimes alſo to diſtinguiſh them the better from one another.

As the Generality of Moldings, and in particular thoſe of Cornices, are only illuminated by Reflection; they would be frequently confounded and loſt, if they were all ſimple and uniform; but a few Ornaments cut on ſome one, diſtinguiſh them advantageouſly from each other.

Among Ornaments, ſome ſtand prominent from the Moldings, and others are cut within them, as may be ſeen *Plate* 47.

Ornaments are not to be beſtow'd every where indifferently; ſome Members or Mouldings muſt be reſerved plain to ſet off the reſt; and without the Simplicity and Plainneſs of theſe, the Richneſs of Ornaments wou'd only make a Confuſion in *Architecture*.

It is commendable to leave the Corona plain, as being followed by a Larmier, which is uſually full of rich Compartments: The Faces of Architraves ought always to be left plain, and particularly when the Freeze is enrich'd.

All Fillets, *&c.* ought to be without Ornaments, thoſe being peculiarly deſtin'd to fix and incloſe the Parts in the Mouldings wherewith they are encompaſſed.

A true Obſervance on the Orders and Members that compoſe the ſame, will ſoon form a juſt Idea in the Mind of the regular Conſtructions of various Profiles.

Plate 48.

IN this is contain'd the various Leaves, Roſes, *&c.* which are made Uſe of to conſtruct the *Compoſite* and *Corinthian* Capitals.

Plate 49.

THE upper Part of this *Plate* is furniſhed with the different Manners of diſpoſing of Columns and Pilaſters, *&c.* As *Fig.* 1. is the Plan of a Coloſſal Column Inſulate, in which Stairs may be conducted either with a ſolid, or open Newel, or without a Newel (as at the Monument in *Grace-Church-Street.*) *Fig.* 2. is a Column ingaged to the Wall: 3. Is a Column flank'd with two Pilaſters: 4. A Pilaſter with a detatch'd Column, and a Column on the Angle: 5. Pilaſter and Column tied together (as may be ſeen in the Portico in St. *George*'s, *Hanover Square*,) 6. A Couplet of Columns: 7, 8 and 9. Groups of Columns: 10. A Pilaſter flank'd with two Pilaſters, and a detatch'd Pilaſter: 11. Pilaſters on the prominent Angles flank'd: 12. Two Pilaſters meeting in an Angle: 13. A Pilaſter folded in the Angle: 14. An Angle Pilaſter called *Ante* or *Iſole*.

Fig 3 and 10. On Account of the Capitals being mix'd, broken and confounded, ought to be avoided; when Pilaſters are placed as *Fig.* 11. Care muſt be taken not to confuſe the Helix and Roſes; therefore the Flank Pilaſters muſt be made more than the Half; the *Fig.* 14, is preferable to 12 and 13. for an inward Angle.

Under the foregoing Columns and Pilaſters, are deſcribed the Intercolumnations of Columns, according to *Vitruvius*.

The Ancients never placed their Columns nearer than one Diameter and a half aſunder, nor make their Intercolumnations more than three Diameters; but they chiefly approved of two Diameters, and one Fourth; and look'd on them as the moſt Beautiful and Elegant. However, we ought very carefully to obſerve, and keep due Proportion and Harmony between the Intercolluminations or Spaces and the Columns; becauſe, if ſmall Columns are made with large Intercolumnations, it will very much leſſen the Gracefulneſs of the former: For the too great Quantity of Air in the void Spaces, will diminiſh their Thickneſs conſiderably. And on the contrary, if we make large Columns and ſmall Intercolumnations, the too little Vacuity will make them look thick and heavy, and without the leaſt Grace: Due Regard muſt be had to the Ornaments of the Entablatures, as the Triglyphs, Modilions, and Dentils; ſo that the Intercolumnations may not cauſe any Irregularities in the Soffite or Front.

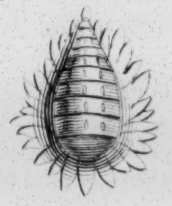
Under

Ornaments of Capitals

1

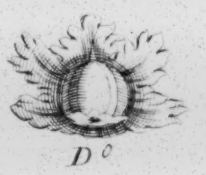
Rose of ye Abacus

2



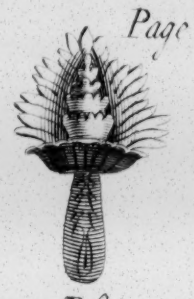
D°

3



D°

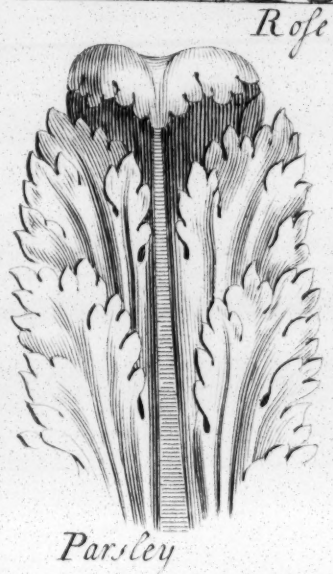
4



D°

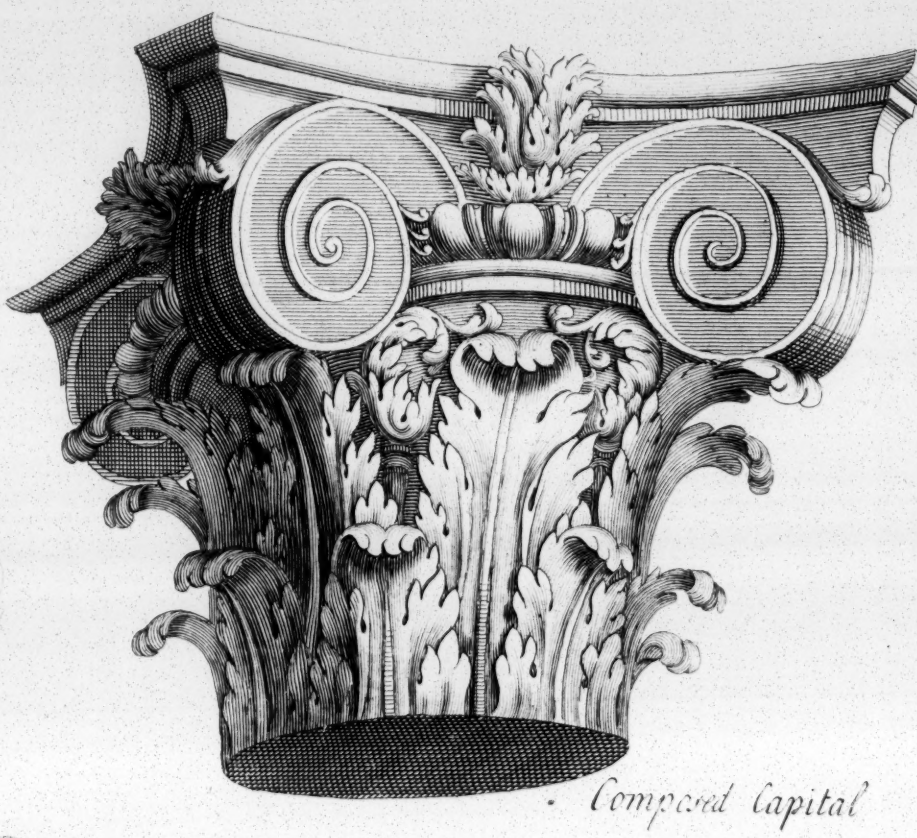
5

Rose of ye Abacus



Parsley

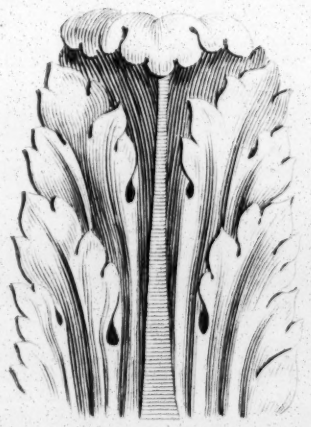
Lavrel



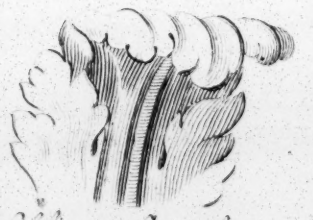
Compared Capital

6

Oblique View of ye rose of ye Abacus



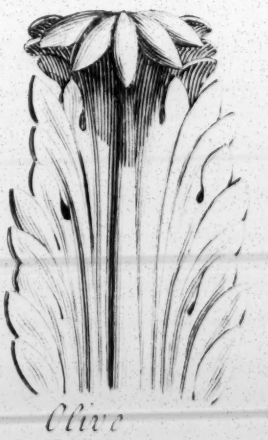
Acanthus



Oblique Acanthus

Olive

Cauliccle

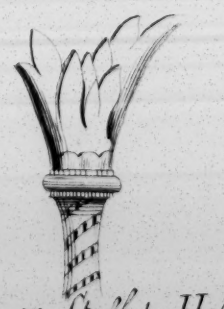


Olive

Stem or Stalk to Helix

A Lips of ye Vause
B Volutes

Volute or Helix.



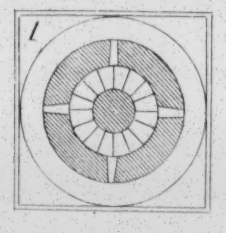
Stem or Stalk to Helix

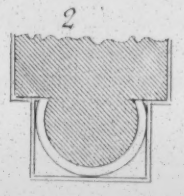
E Oakley Delin

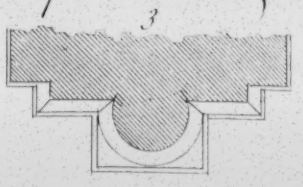
B Cole Sculp

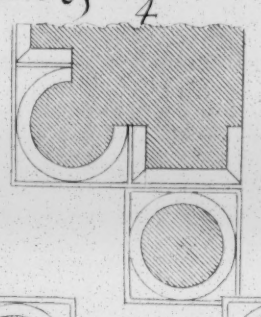
Plate XLIX

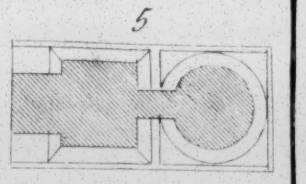
of Columns & Pilasters &c

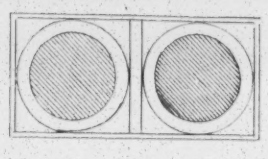

1

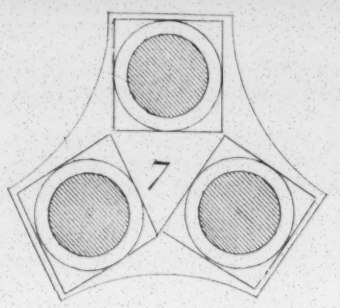

2

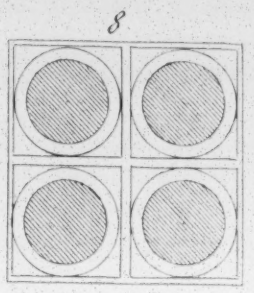

3

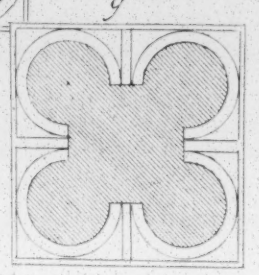

4

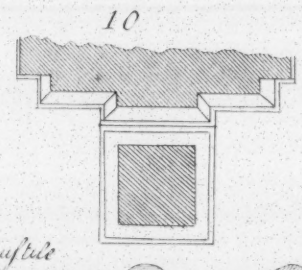

5

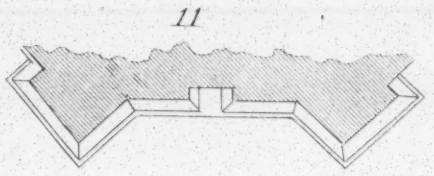

6

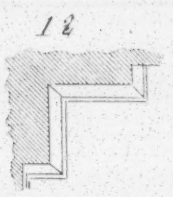

7

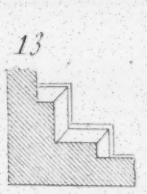

8

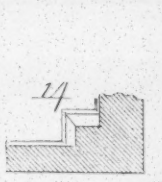

9


10

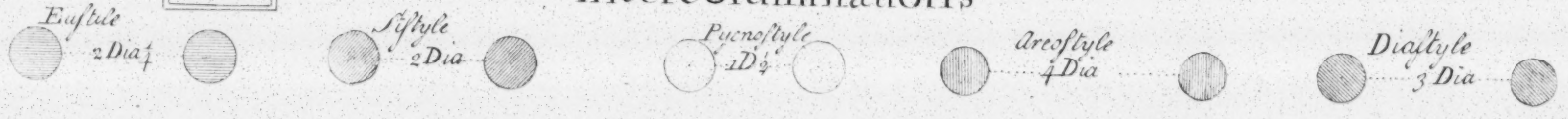

11


12

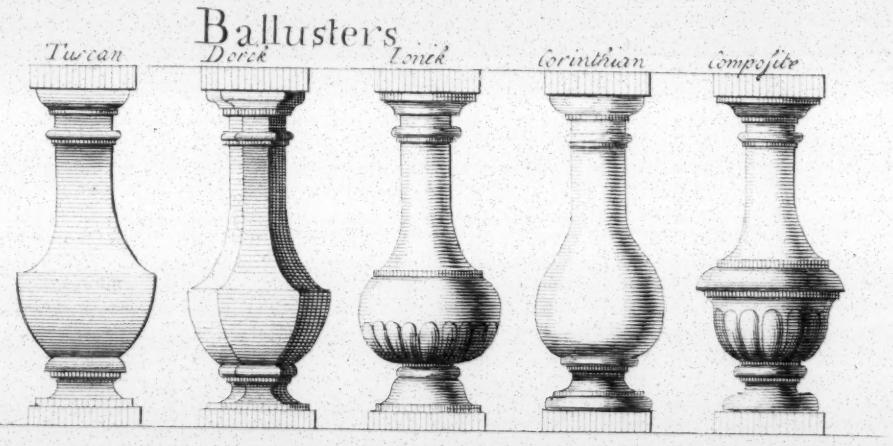

13


14

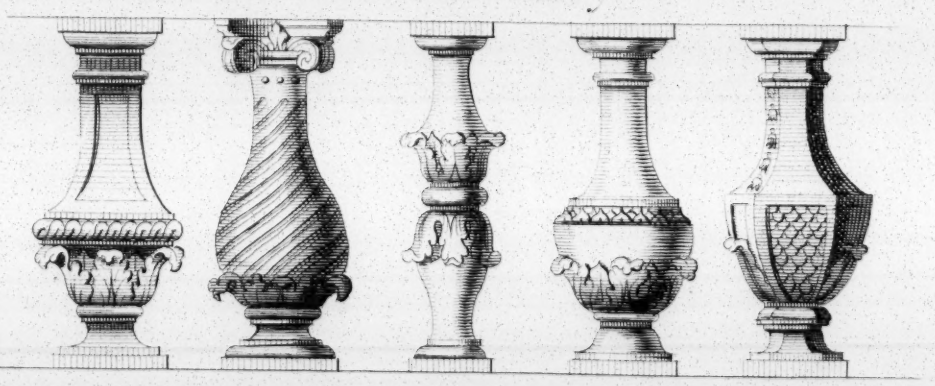
Intercolumniations

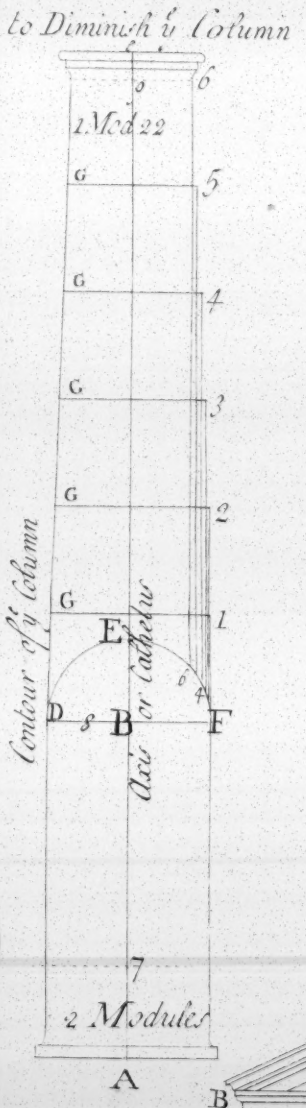


Ballusters

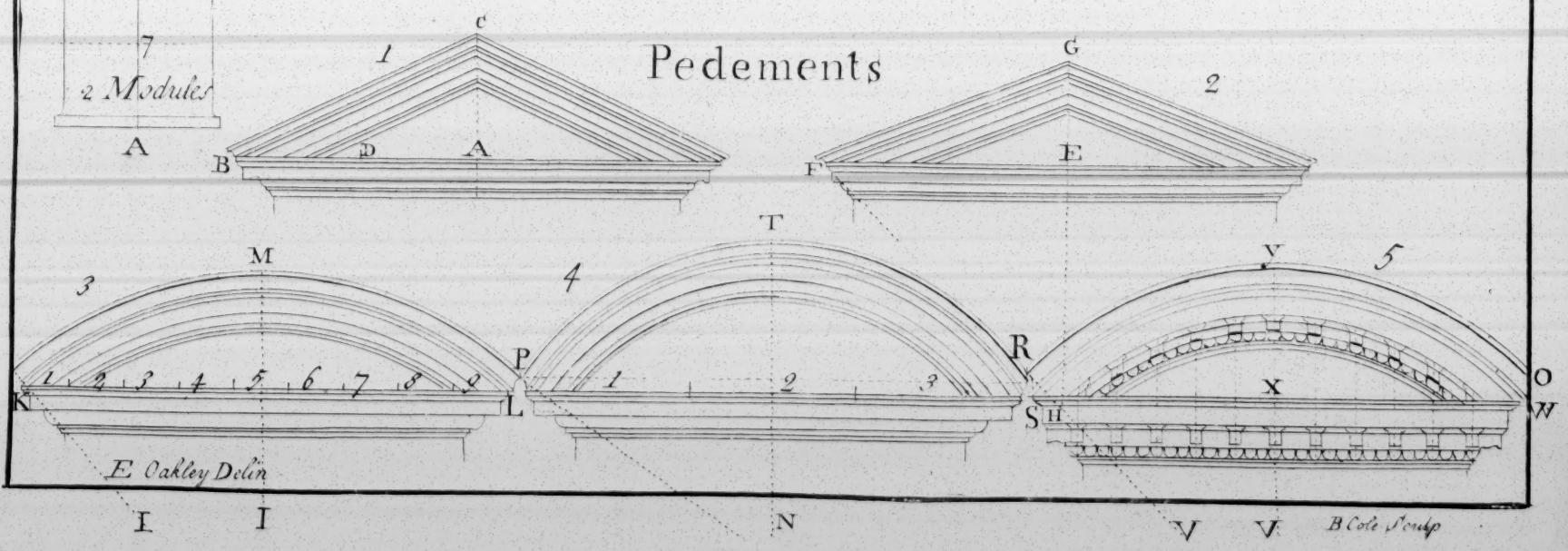


Ballusters Extroordinary





Pedements



Under the Intercoluminations are Deſigns of Balliſters adapted to the Five Orders, and Balliſters extraordinary.

On the Left Hand is the Method to diminiſh a Column: Admit A B C to be the Axis or Cathetus of the Column, ſeven is the natural Diameter, eight is the natural Diameter at one third of the Height, from which the Operation of Diminiſhing begins; nine is the Diameter at the diminiſhing under the Aſtragal. Upon B with the Interval B D or B F, equal to half Diameter, deſcribe the Semicircle D E F; from the Extream Diminiſhing under the Aſtragal, let fall a Perpendicular on the ſaid Arc at 6: Divide the Arc 6 F into any Number of equal Parts (the more the better) as ſuppoſe into ſix: Divide the upper two thirds of the Column, as B, 9, into the ſame Number of equal Parts, thro' the equal Diviſions on the Axis, draw horizontal Lines, and from the diviſionary Points on the Arc 6 F, raiſe Perpendiculars to the correſponding Horizontals; and where they interſect each other is the Point thro' which it gradually diminiſhes, as the Points G.

The lower Part of the *Plate* contains Pediments, pitch'd after five different Methods.

By Pedements is meant the Crowning frequently ſeen over Gates, Doors, Windows, and Niches; and ſometimes over intire Orders of *Architecture*.

The Parts of the Pedement are the Tympanum, and its Cornice Horizontal, and Rakeing or Circular.

By Tympanum is to be underſtood the Area or Space included between the Cornice which crowns it, and the Entablature which ſupports and ſerves it as a Foundation.

The Tympanum is either Triangular or in the Shape of a Bow, ſee *Plate* 40 and 42.

The Naked of the Pediment, *i. e.* the Tympanum, ought always to ſtand perpendicularly over the Freeze of the Entablature.

The Modilions of the Cornice of the Pedement ought to be found in the ſame Perpendicular with thoſe of the Entablature underneath.

That Part of the Cornice whereon the Pedement ſtands, ſhould not have any Cimatium, in regard the Cimatium of the reſt of the Entablature, when it meets the Pedement, paſſes over it.

Pedements broken or interrupted are never introduced, but by them of a very bad Taſte.

The placing two Pedements immediately over one another, is abſurd and ridiculous; Circular Pedements are only to be introduced to crown Windows, *&c.* for the making a Diverſity in the Dreſs of the ſmall Parts, but by no Means commendable in the terminating the upper Part of a Front.

To deſcribe the following Pedements.

Fig. 1. Divide A B into two equal Parts at D, make the Height A C equal to one of thoſe Parts, as A D.

Fig. 2. Set the Interval E F from E to H, and with the Interval H F deſcribe the Height E G.

Fig. 3. Divide K L into nine equal Parts, carry five of thoſe Parts and ſet them from 5 to I; and with the Interval I K deſcribe the Arc P M, and I is the Center to the parallel Lines.

Fig. 4 Divide L S into three equal Parts, the Interval one of thoſe Parts ſet from 2 to N, and upon N with the Interval N P or N R, deſcribe the Pedement R T P.

Fig 5. Divide S W into nine equal Parts, ſet the Interval of four of thoſe Parts from X to V, and with the Interval V R deſcribe the Pedement R Y O.

Plate 50.

THREE Enrichments for Freezes, in the Enrichment A the Angels are to be placed over the Columns or Pilaſters, and the Ox-heads in the Spaces between: In the Freeze C, the Candleſticks muſt be placed over the Columns, *&c.* In the Freeze B there is no particular Part to be aſſign'd over the Columns, but where they bear or take the ſpringing, is proper over the Columns; on the ſame *Plate* is Pedeſtals to the *Ionic* and *Corinthian* Orders.

Plate 51.

THIS *Plate* contains various Deſigns of Pedeſtals, with their half or whole Plans underneath each; the firſt Five are for Figures ſitting or ſtanding; 6 and 8 for Funeral Columns, 7 for a Figure lying, 9 and 10 for Statues Equeſtrial, 11 for a Group of Figures.

N B. *Pedeſtals, whoſe Cornices are under the Eye, or view'd from above, ought to have their Cornice Camus or Solid, that is, with a contracted Projection; and Pedeſtals whoſe Cornices are above the Eye, or view'd from below, ought to have a Larmier, which makes the Projection equal, or ſomething greater than its Height.*

Plate 52.

THIS *Plate* conſiſts of ten different Deſigns of the Ornament called Frett (and four Flowers) and of which the Ancients made great Uſe, as on the Face of Coronas, or on the Larmier, on the under Sides of Architraves; alſo about the Doors, and on the Plinths of Baſes, when their Torus and Scotias were carv'd, they are a very proper Ornament for Soffites or Platfonds.

This Ornament conſiſts in a certain interlacing of two Liſts, or ſmall Fillets, which run always in parallel Diſtances equal to their Breadth, with this neceſſary Condition, that every Return and Interſection, they do always fall into right Angles; this is ſo indiſpenſible, that they have no Grace without it, but become altogether *Gothic*. There is one (amongſt the ten) here preſented, that conſiſts but of a ſingle Fillet, which nevertheleſs fills its Space exceedingly well, and makes a very handſome Show: The ingenious Author of the Parallel has made a Miſtake in the Return of this Frett at A, which produces a very diſagreeable Effect; the ſame Error is copied by Mr. *Langley* in his *Practical Geometry*. I have in this rectified the Miſtake, which, I hope, will be agreeable to thoſe who peruſe the ſame.

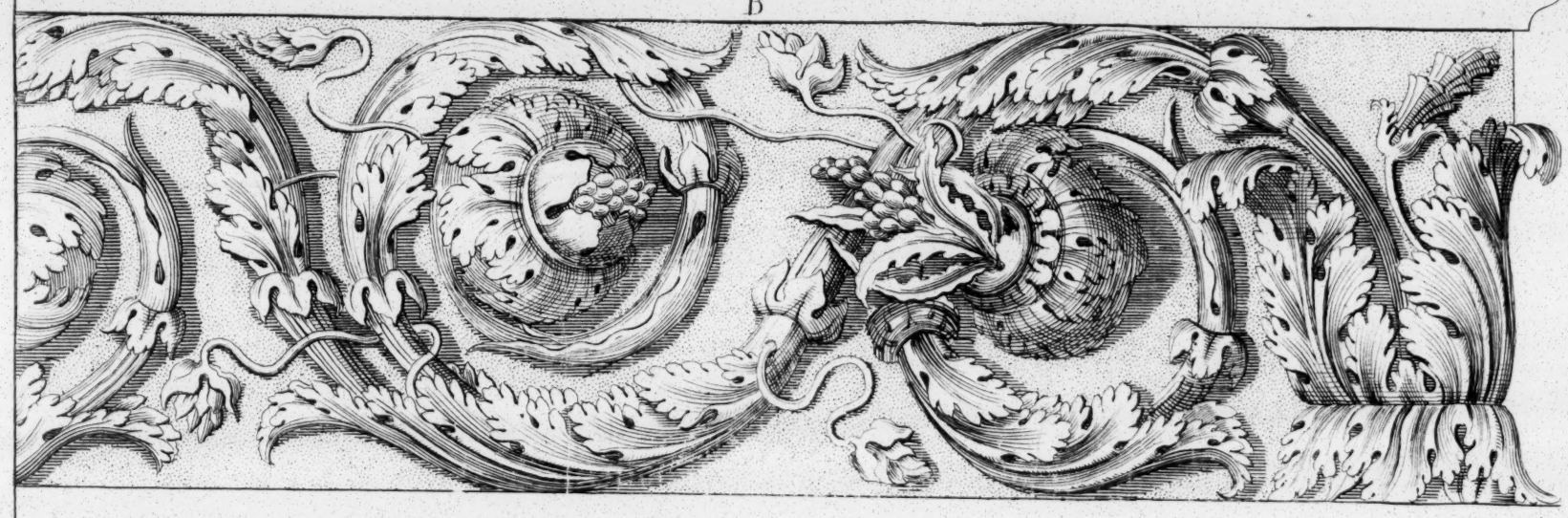
Plate 53.

THIS *Plate* conſiſts of Compartiments for Domes or Cuplos, and proper Ornaments for the Soffites of Arcades. *&c.* A A Grand Compartments, B a Compartment Lozenge-wiſe; C ditto in Ovals; D ditto Groteſque, E figured, F Octagones and Croſſes,

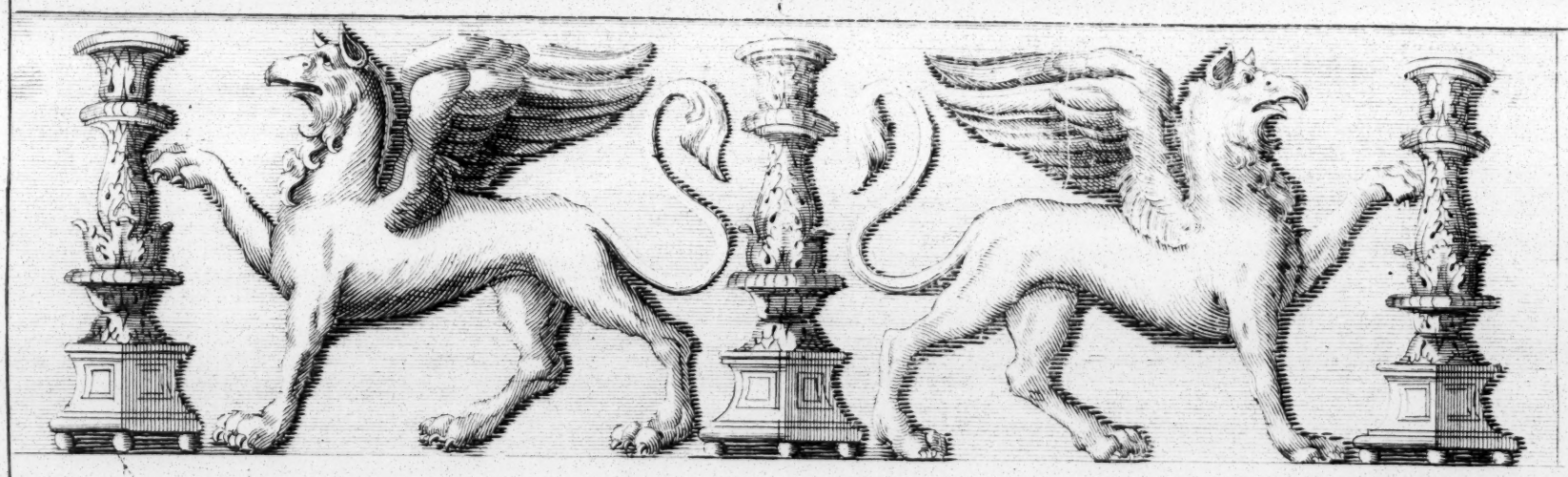
Plate I.

A

B



C



Corinthian Pedestal

B	F	D	H
3/4	57 1/2	1 1/16	23 1/16
3/4		1 1/16	
3/4		2 1/16	
9/4	55	2 1/16	22 1/16
5/4		2 1/16	
1 1/2		1 1/16	
1 1/2	46 1/2	1 1/16	18 1/16
1 1/2		1 1/16	
	42		16 1/4 18
	42		16 1/4 16
1 1/2		1 1/16	
1 1/2	47 1/2	1 1/16	19 1/16
1 1/2		1 1/16	
8		3 1/2 1/4	
1/4	56	1/4	22 1/16
			56
33	57 1/2	13 1/2 1/4	23
A	E	C	G

1 Modul

1 Foot

25 or 1/2 1.

50 or 20 1.

Ionick Pedestal

H	D	F	B
22 1/16	1 1/16	57	2 1/2
	1 1/16		4
21 1/4	2 1/16	53	5 1/4
	1 1/16	52 1/2	6
	1 1/16		
18 1/4	1 1/16	45 1/4	1
	1 1/16		4
16 1/16		41 1/4	
15 1/16		41 1/4	
18 1/4 18	1 1/16		4
	1 1/16	40	1
24 1/16	2 1/16	54 1/2	6
	1 1/16		1
22 1/16	1	57	5
22 1/16	12 1/2 1/4	57	30 1/2
G	C	E	A

1 Modul

1 Foot

24 or 1/2 12.

48 or 1/2 24.

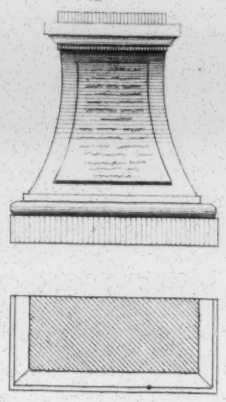
E. Oakley delin.

B. Cole sculp

Plate LI

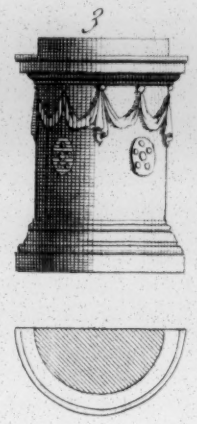
Pedestals

1

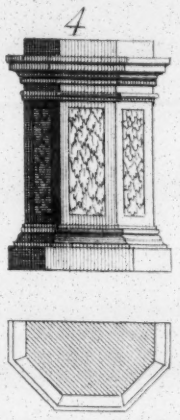


2

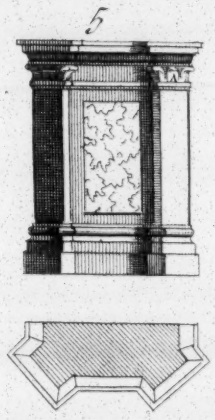
3



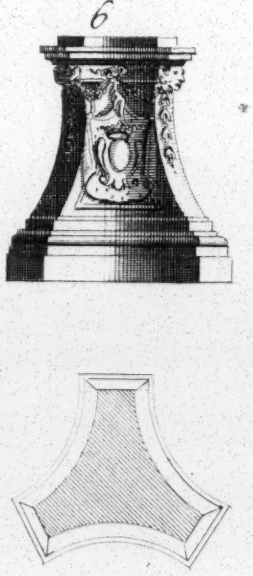
4



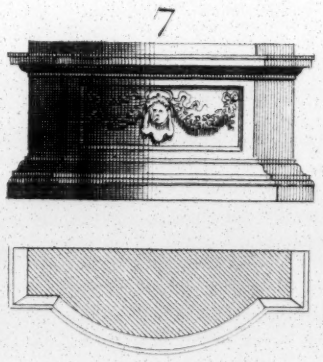
5



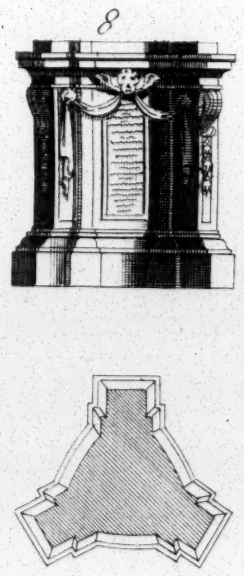
6



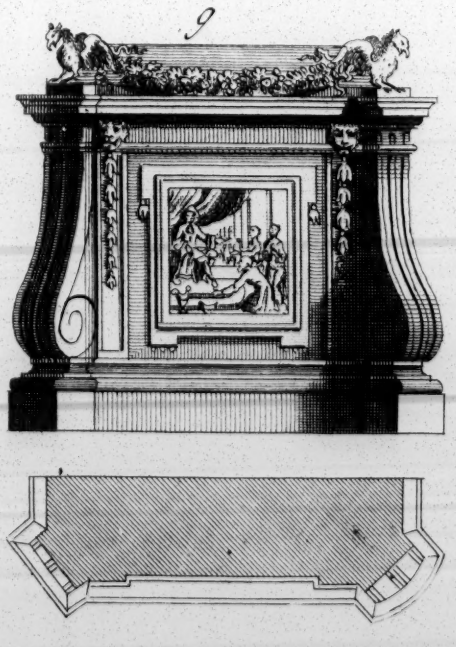
7



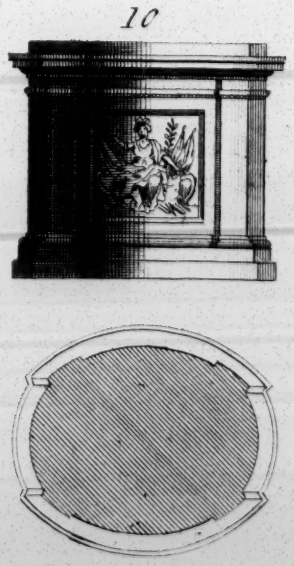
8



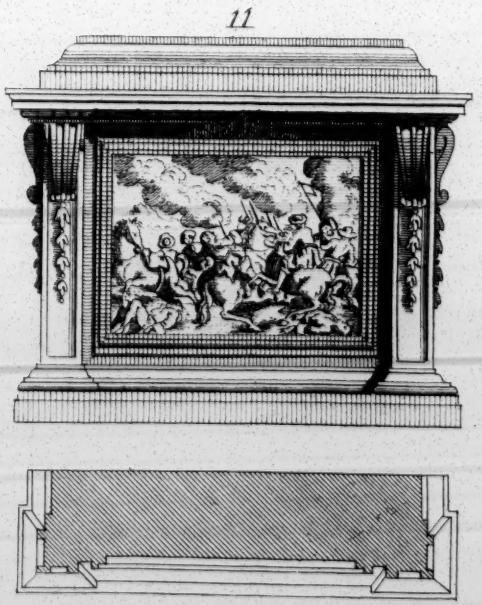
9



10



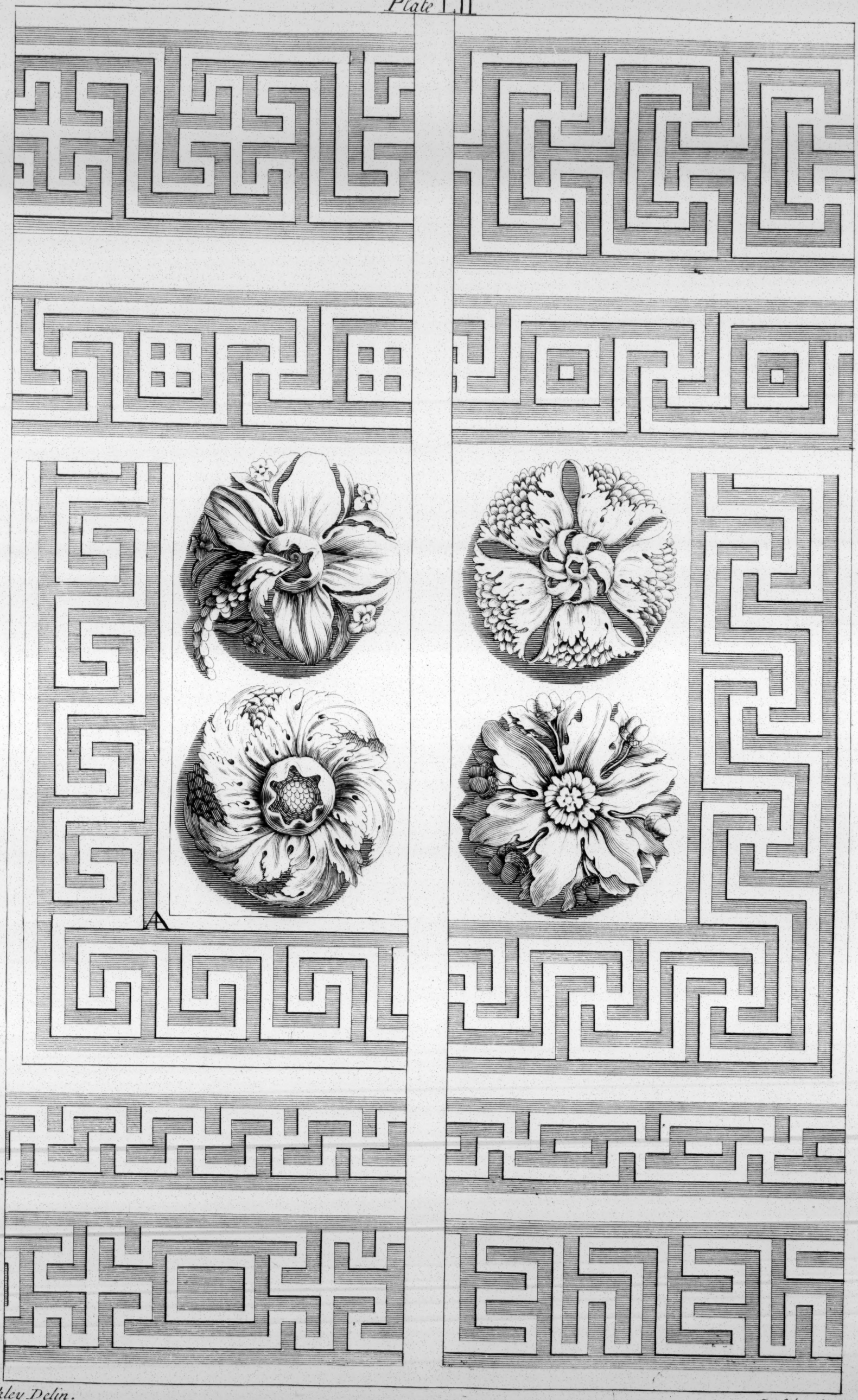
11



E Oakley Delin

B Cole Sculp

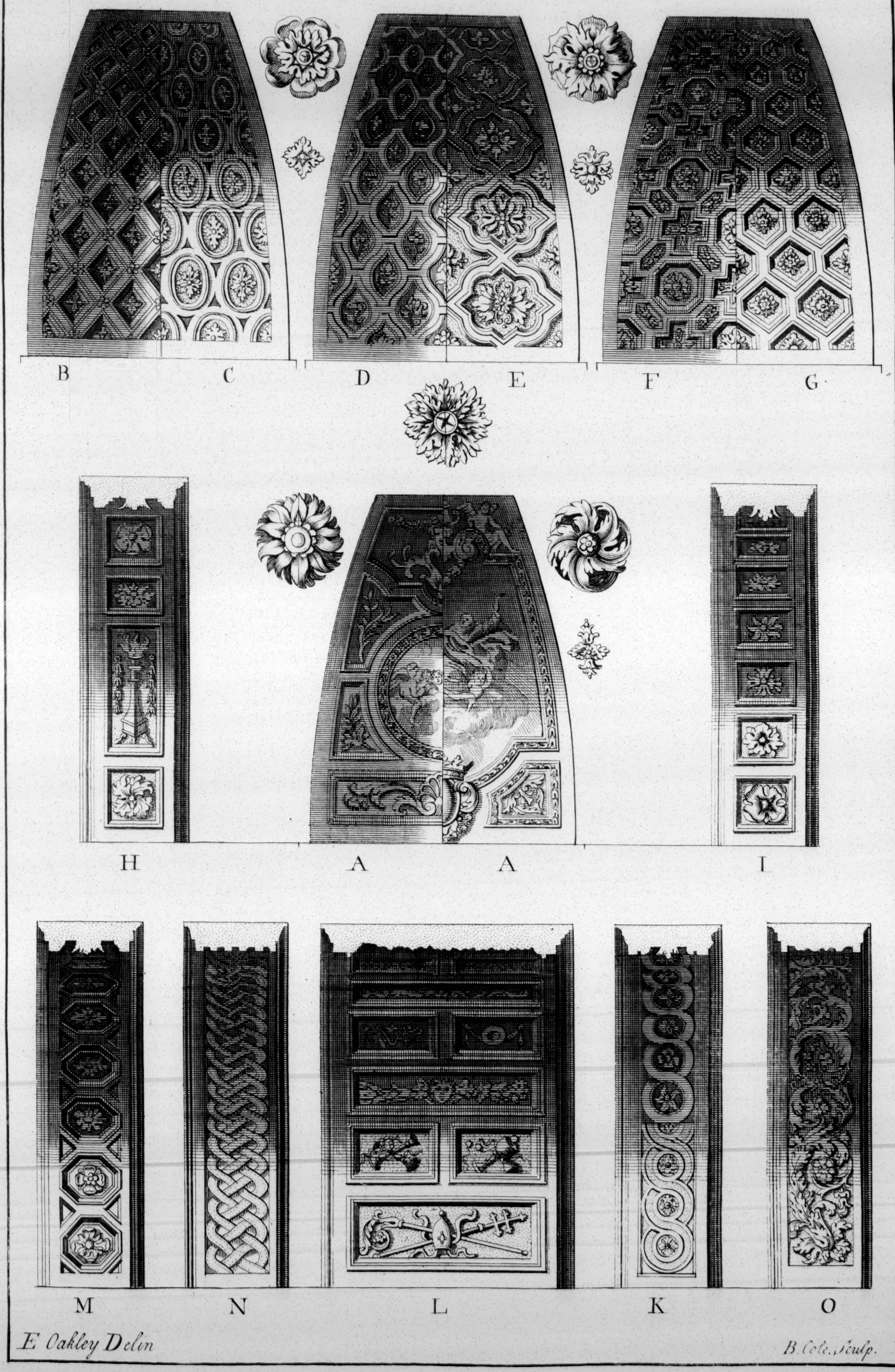
Plate I. II



E. Oakley Delin.

B. Cole Sc.

Plate LIII

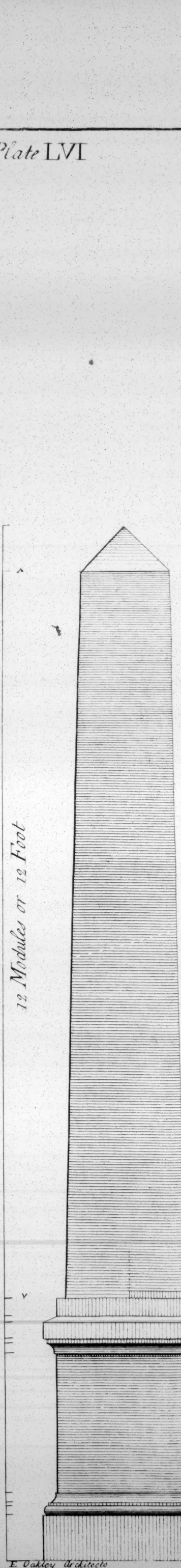


E Oakley Delin

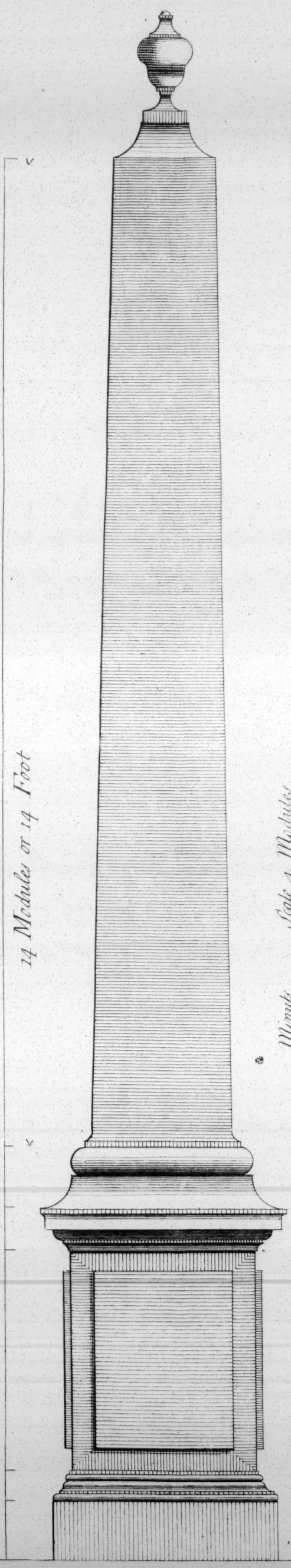
B Cole Sculp.

Plate LVI

Obelisks



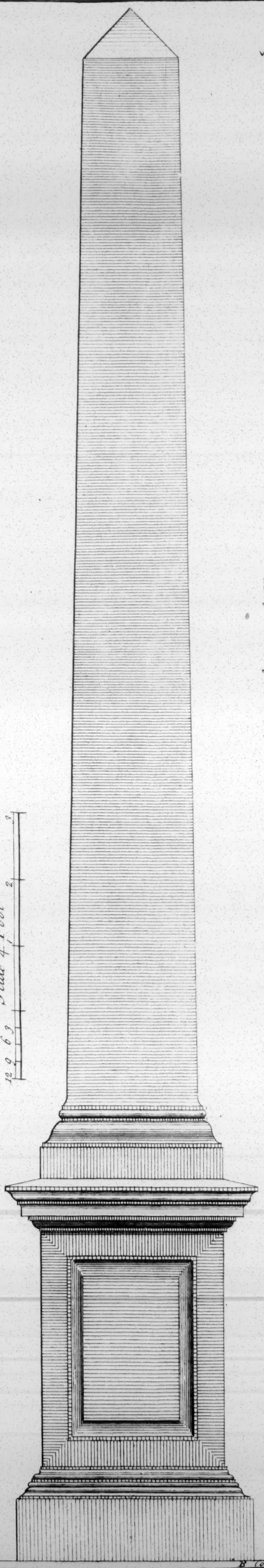
12 Modules or 12 Foot



14 Modules or 14 Foot

Minute *Scale 4 Modules*

Scale 4 Foot



16 Modules or 16 Foot

E. Oakley Architecto *B. Tole Sculp*

Plate LV

Purbeck Squares

Mixed Stars

Rounds interlac'd

Rounds with Bordures

Octagons and Squares

Bordures

Bordures

Pibble

A Rose Compartment of 7 Different Designs

Cinders

Common Bricks

Ragg

Bricks and small Tiles

Bordures

Pavement in Hexagons

Squares

D° Diagonally

D° Bordured

D° diamond point

Rhombus

Tarry hexagon

Dies on a ground

Dies

Trapezia's

Regular Hexagons

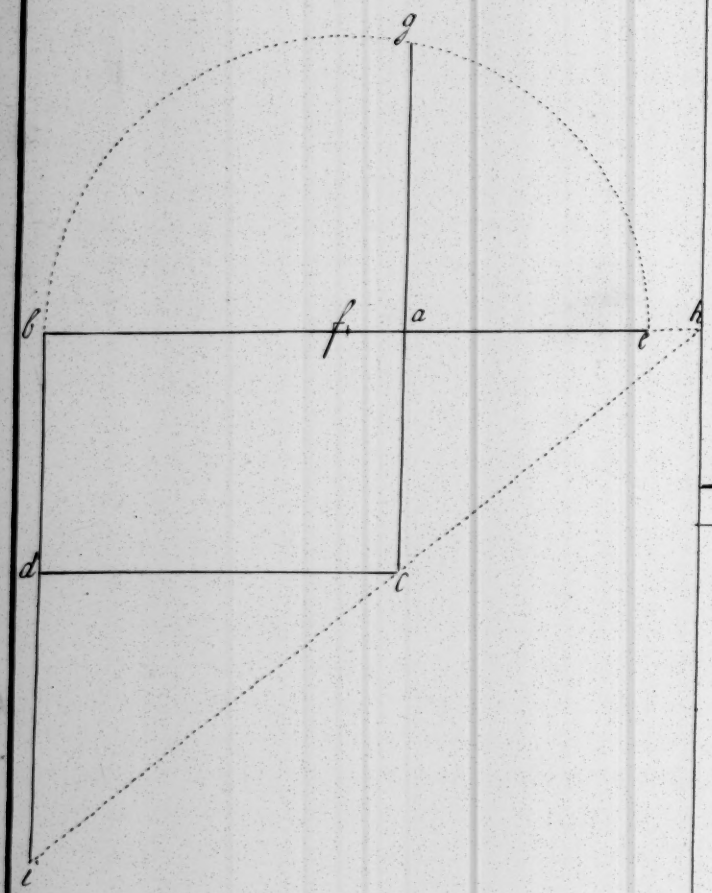
Squares

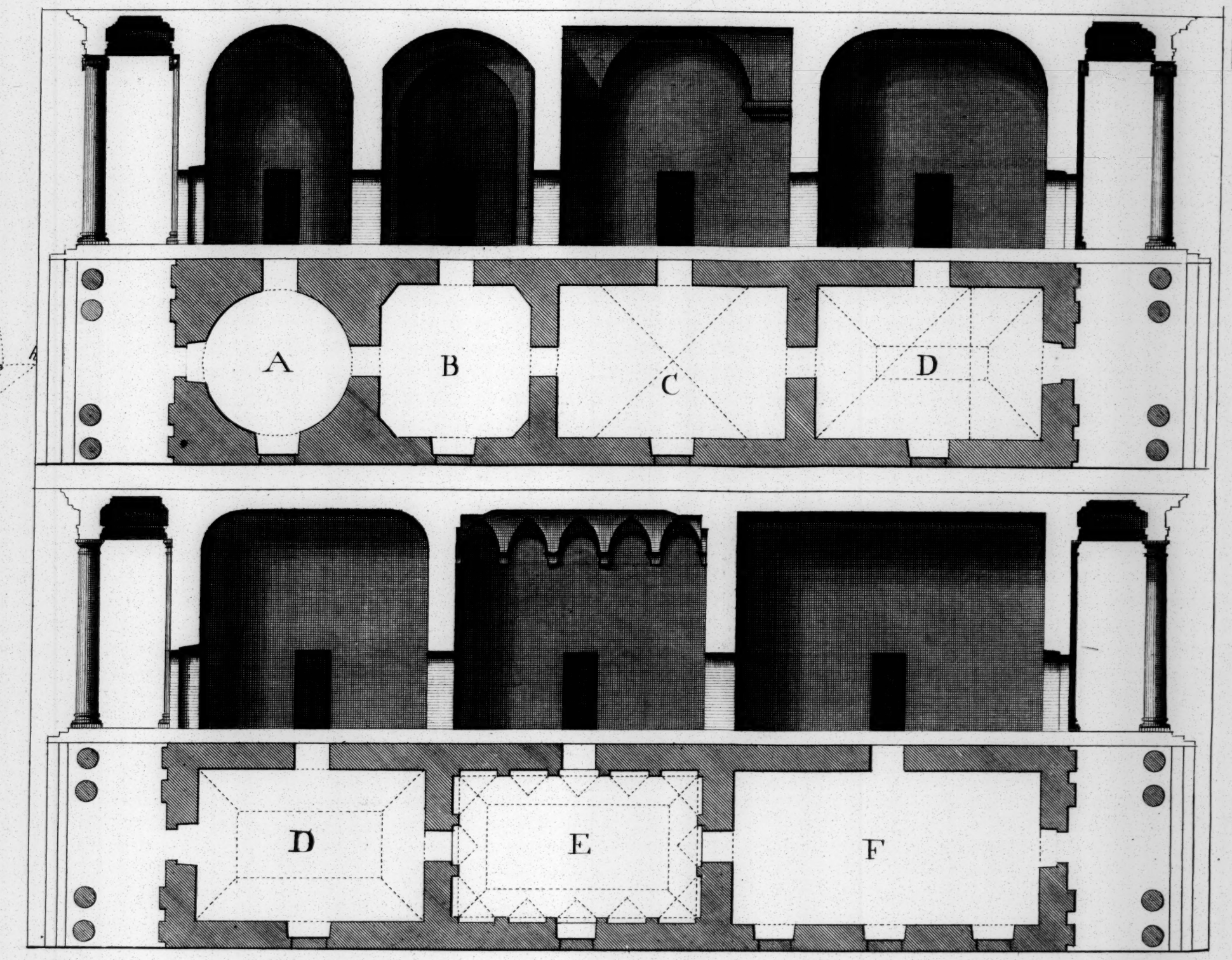
Octagons and Dotts

Scale 12 Feet

E. Oakley, Delin.

B. Cole, Sculp.





E. Oakley. Delin.

B. Cole. Sculp.

Croſſes, G Hexagons, H Soffite compoſed of Squares and Oblongs, I Squares, K Coloſſes ſingle and double, L Soffite of Large Arch, Pannels bonding; M Octagons, N Interlacing, O a branch'd Ornament of Leaves and Roſes.

Plate 54.

THIS *Plate* contains the Plans and Sections of Rooms, according to *Palladio*, whoſe Proportions are as follows. Round Square, or the Length is the Diagonal of of their Square; or of one Square and a Third; or a Square and an Half; or a Square and two Thirds; or laſtly, of two Squares.

Rooms are either with an arched or a flat Cieling; if with the Latter, the Height from the Floor to the Cieling muſt be equal to their Breadth, (on the principal Story) Rooms over them may be one ſixth Part leſs in Height.

If Rooms are to be arched, their Height in ſquare Room, is a third Part more than the Breadth of the Room: But in thoſe whoſe Length exceeds their Breadth, a Height muſt be ſought proportionably to their Length and Breadth. See the *Problem* the Bottom of the *Plate*. Admit *a b* the Length, and *a c* the Breadth, add *a c* to *a b* as *a e*, divide *e b* in the Middle at f, and the Length f e will be the Height required; or upon the Point *f* with the Interval f b deſcribe the Semicircle b g e, produce the Line *a c* to g, and the Height *a g* will be the Height required; or make *a h* equal to *f e*, thro' the Points h c draw the occult Line h c i, produce the Line *b d* till it interſects the Line h i, and the Height d i will be the Height required.

There are ſix Sorts of Arches, *viz.* Croſſed, Faſciated, Flat (a Segment leſs than a Semicircle is ſo called) Circular, Grinded, and Shell-like, all which are in Height equal to one Third of the Breadth of the Room. The four firſt were uſed by the Ancients, but the two laſt are of a modern Invention.

Plate 55.

THIS *Plate* contains variety of beautiful Compartiments and Bordures for Pavements; on the Left Hand of the *Plate* is the moſt common Pavement, as Purleck Squares, Pibbles, Clinkarts, or *Dutch* Bricks, (for Stabling, *&c.*) Ragg Pavement, *&c.* Beautiful Compoſitions of Compartments may be made of the common Pavements for Court-Yards, *&c.* which are moſt judiciouſly performed by the ingenious Mr. *Charles Capell*, Paviour, (near *Hungerford-Market*) who is not only to be recommended for his Judgment, but likewiſe for the moſt eſteemable Character of a Fair Dealer.

Plate 56.

IN this *Plate* I have made a Deſign of three Obelisks, (each drawn to the ſame Scale) of the Proportions of ſix, ſeven, and eight Diameters, altho' the *Attic* Baſe is introduced to theſe Ornaments, by the Author of a large Volume, yet I think it not a ſufficient Authority to introduce them here; and I have therefore added to two of theſe Deſigns different Baſes, reſembling the *Tuſcans* of *Palladio*.

End of the Second Part.

PART III.

A Treatiſe on Stair-Caſes, and the ſeveral Methods of erecting them.

IN placing of Stair-Caſes the utmoſt Care ought to be taken, it being not a little difficult to find a Place convenient for them, that will not at the ſame Time prejudice the reſt of the Building. We muſt therefore aſſign them a proper Situation, to the End that they may not interfere with the other Parts of the Houſe, nor receive the leaſt Inconveniency from them. Stair-Caſes muſt have three Openings, the firſt whereof is the Door by which we go up to them; which the leſs it is hid from thoſe who enter into the Houſe, the more graceful it will appear; and I very much approve the placing of it in ſuch a Manner, as, before our coming at it, may give us a Sight of the beſt Part of the Houſe; for then the Building tho' little in it ſelf, will appear very large; wherefore it muſt be obvious, and eaſy to be found. The ſecond Opening is the Windows, neceſſary to light the Stair Caſe; theſe muſt be ſituated in the Middle and be made high, whereby they will diffuſe the Light equally. The Third Opening is the Landing Place, through which we enter into the Apartments of the firſt Story; and muſt lead into handſome, ſpacious, and well furniſhed Parts of the Houſe. Stair-Caſes to be complete, muſt be light, large, and eaſy to aſcend; which will invite, as it were, People to go up to them: To make them lightſome, they muſt receive a ſtrong Light, which, as was obſerved before, muſt be equally diffuſed upon all Parts of them. They will be ſpacious enough, provided they be not made too narrow in Proportion to the Largeneſs and Quality of the Fabrick; but they muſt never be narrower than four Foot, to the End that when two Perſons meet upon them, there may be Room enough for them to paſs; and if they are wide, and of an eaſy Aſcent, it will be more convenient to thoſe who go up and down: Steps ought not to be more than ſix Inches, nor leſs than four Inches ſteep or in Height. the Breadth of Steps ought not to exceed ſixteen Inches, nor be leſs than twelve Inches. The Ancients, in the Steps of their Stair-Caſes, always made their Number odd, in order that having begun to aſcend with the Right Foot, they might end with the ſame, however eleven or thirteen Steps at moſt will be ſufficient to a Flight; and if when we are got ſo far, we muſt ſtill go higher, then a Landing-Place muſt be made, as well for the Eaſe of ſuch Perſons who may be either weary or tired; as in Caſe any Thing ſhould happen to fall from above, thereby to ſtop it, and prevent its rolling any lower.

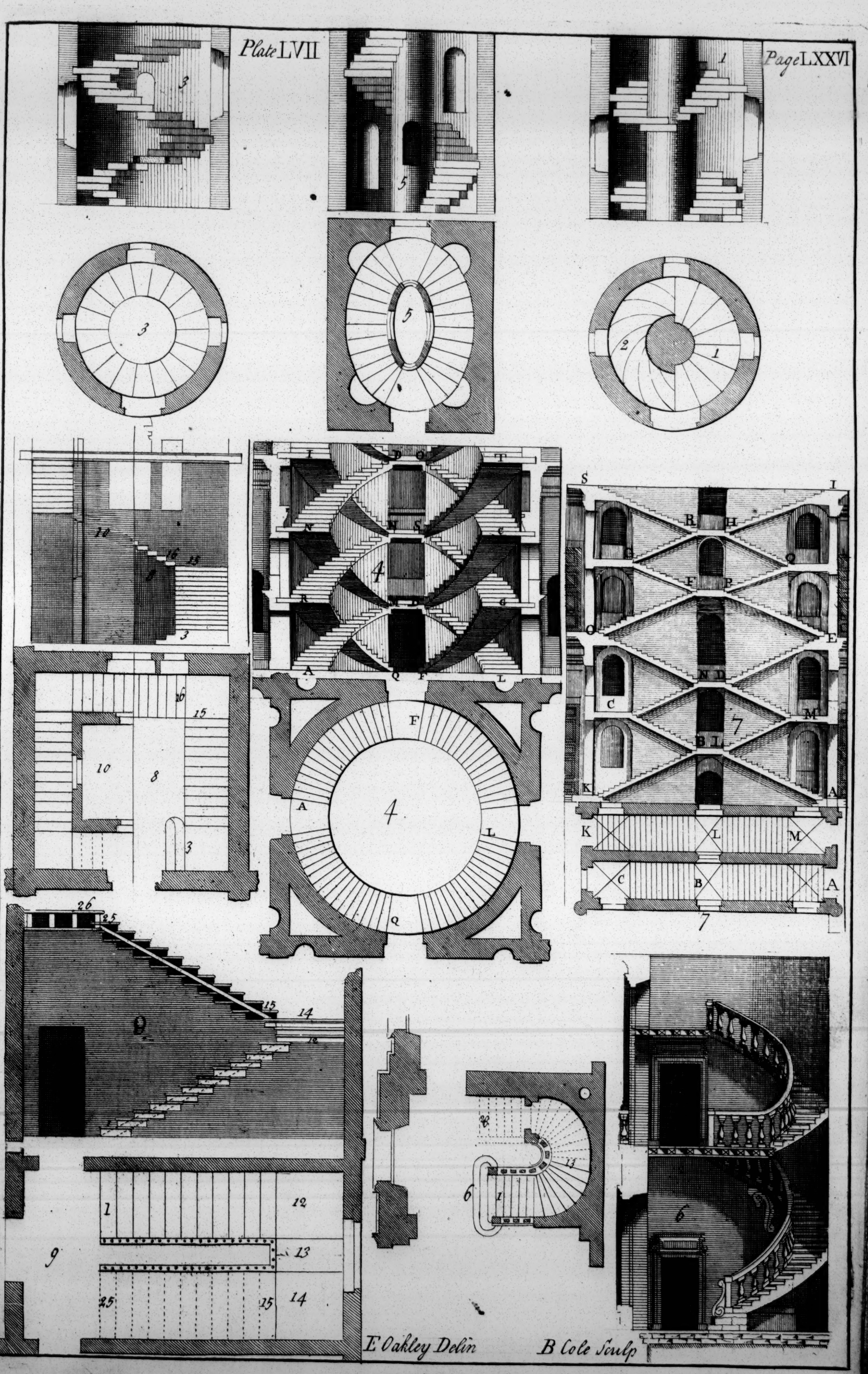
PLATE 57.

STAIR-Caſes are either made Circular or Oval, Quadrangular or Triangular, or Mixed, *viz.* Part Streight and Part Circular: Circular (or Oval) Stair-Caſes are ſometimes made with a Column in the Middle; as *Fig.* 1. and 2. *Plate* 57. The Diameter of the Column muſt be proportion'd to the whole Diameter of the Stair-Caſe, and not to be leſs than one ſixth, not more than three ſevenths of the Diameter of the Stair-Caſe. In the larger Sort of this Kind of Stair-Caſes, the Column may be made hollow to receive Light from above and diſtribute it on the Steps below. See *Fig.* 5. The moſt beautiful Stair-Caſes are thoſe without a Newel or Column, (ſee *Fig.* 3) by Reaſon of the Light from above is equally diſtributed, and that thoſe who are a top may ſee and be ſeen by all thoſe who go up and down them.

In theſe Stair-Caſes the Steps may be made Circular, as in *Fig.* 2. which will not only be very beautiful but add a Length to the Steps.

In the open Stair-Caſe, as *Fig.* 3. to find the Length of the Steps, divide the Diameter into four Parts, two whereof are for the Steps, and two for the Vacancy or Space between.

Fig. 4. This is a Deſign of a beautiful circular Stair-Caſe, made by Order of *Francis* the firſt King of *France*, at *Chambor*, in a Palace built in a Wood; in this is included four



E Oakley Delin

B Cole Sculp

Plate LVIII

Fig III

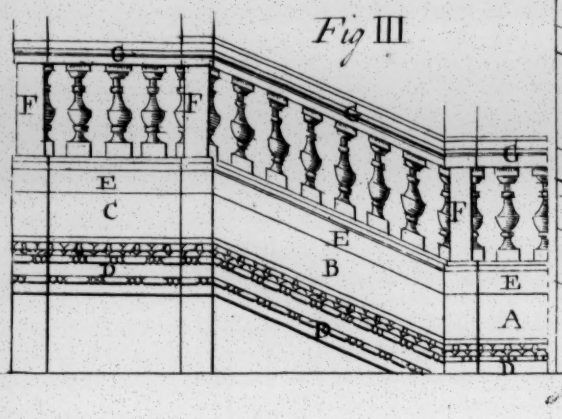


Fig II

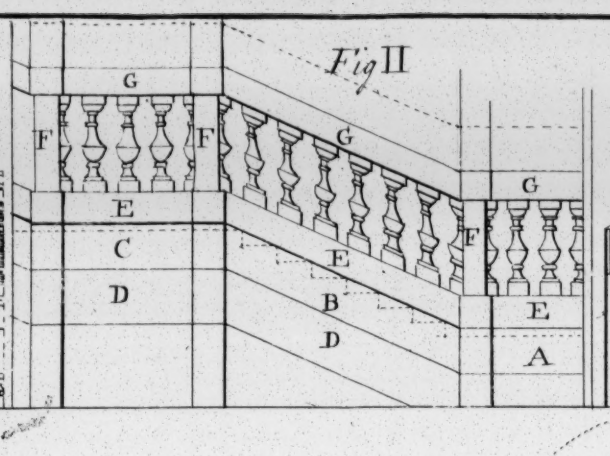


Fig I

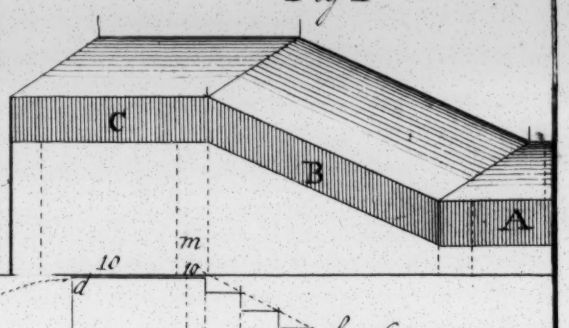


Fig V

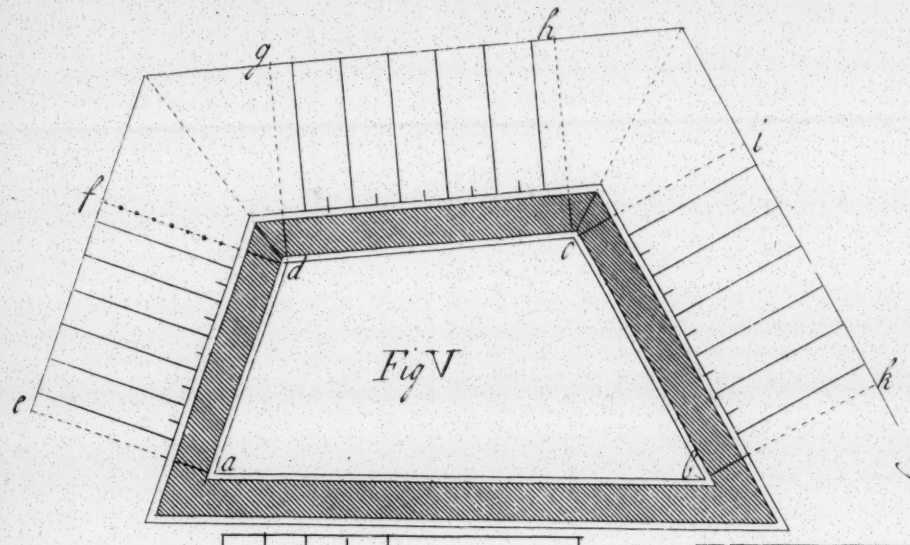


Fig IIII

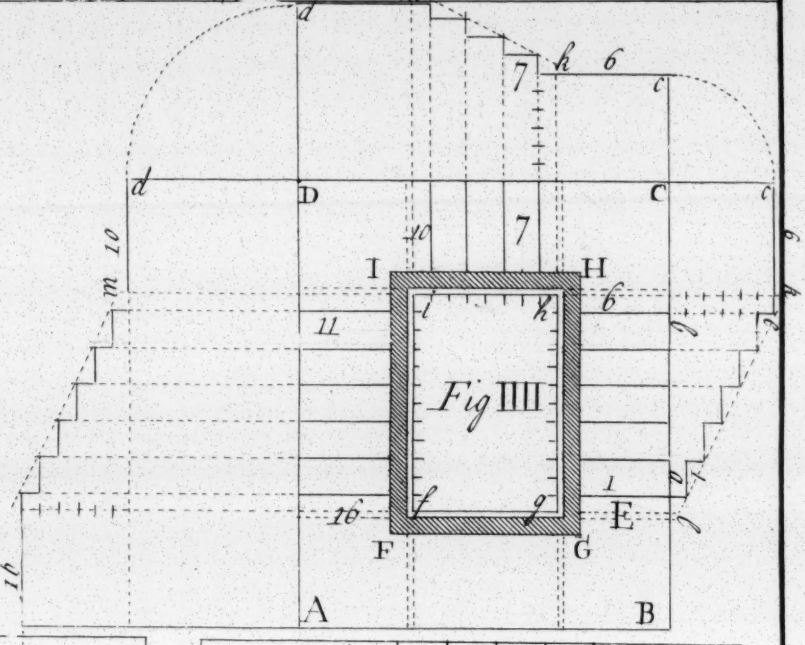


Fig VIII

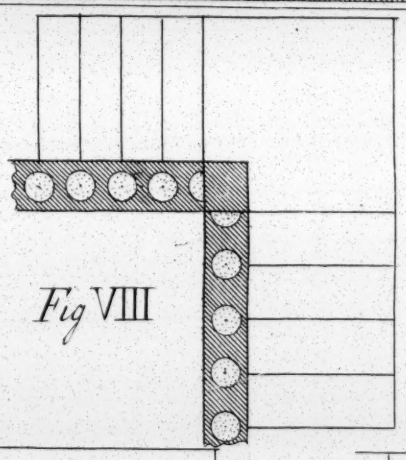


Fig VII

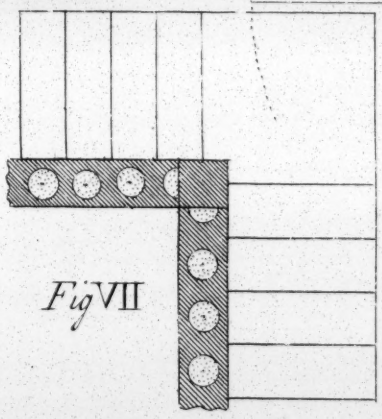


Fig VI

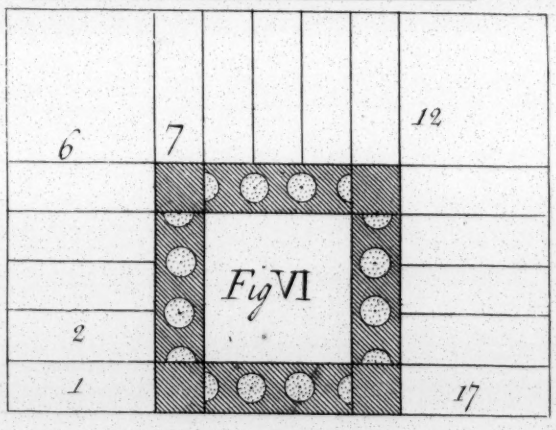


Fig XI

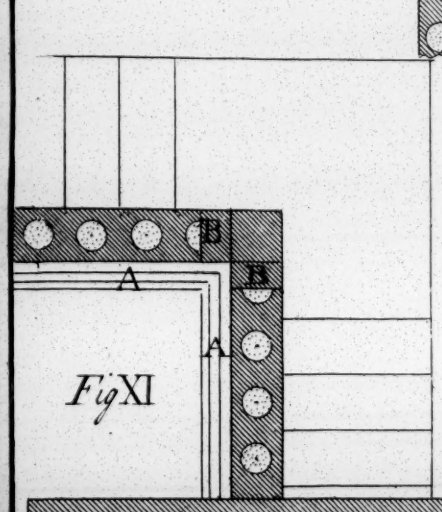


Fig X

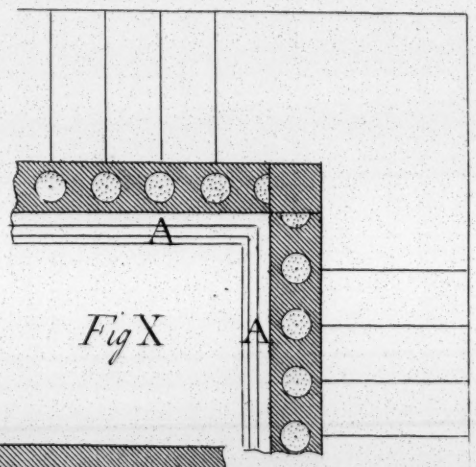


Fig IX

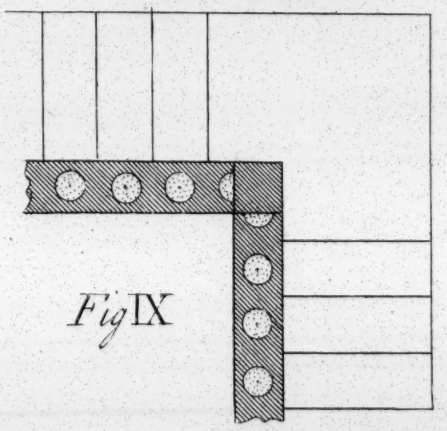


Fig XV

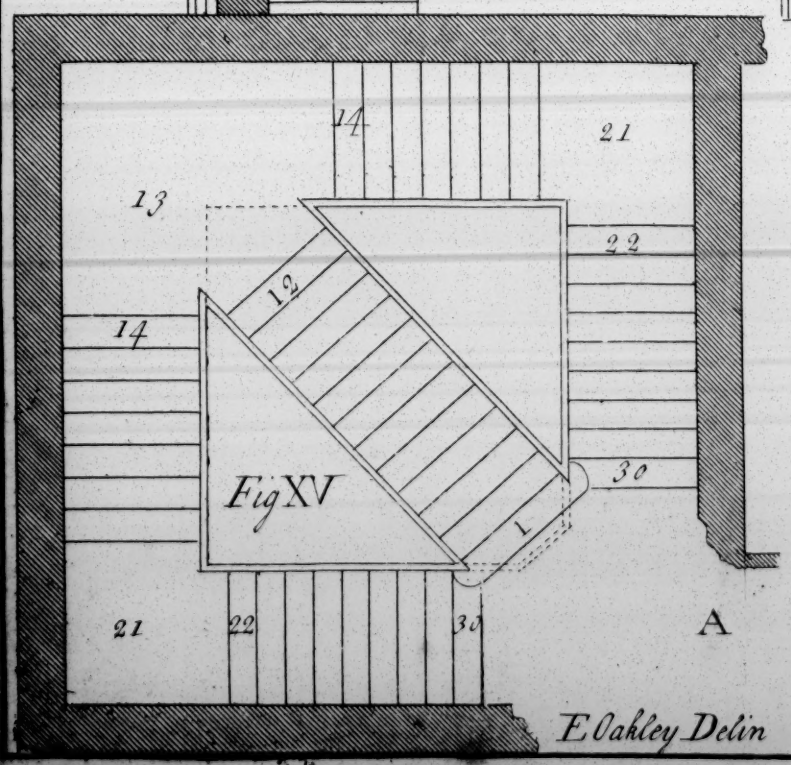


Fig XIII

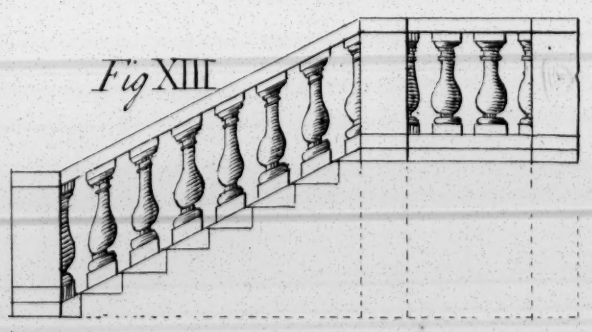


Fig XIIII

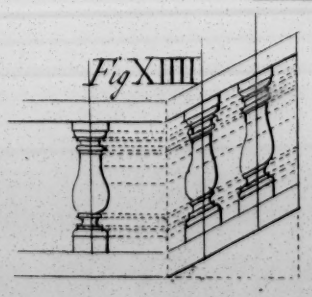
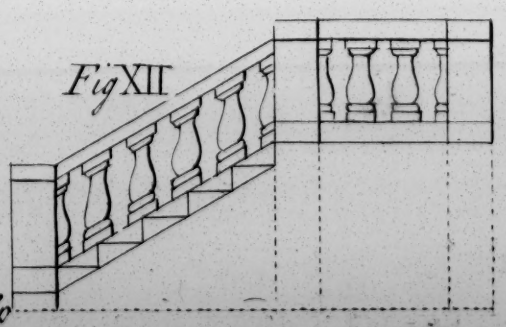


Fig XII



E Oakley Delin

B Cole Sculp

four Stair-Caſes, with four Entrances to them, *viz.* one to each, which go up the one over the other in ſuch a Manner, that being made in the Middle of the Building, they may ſerve for four Apartments; ſo that the Inhabitants of one Stair-Caſe, need not go down thoſe of the other; and being open in the Middle, they all ſee one another go up and down Stairs, without incommoding one another. This Deſign is mark'd with Letters in the Plan and Profile, to ſhow where each begins, and how they go up. *Viz.* A, F, L, Q, in the Plan is at the Entrance of each Stair-Caſe, the Bottom of the firſt Flight to each Stair-Caſe in the Section is denoted by the ſame Letters, the Flight A aſcends to B, C and D *&c.* the Flight F, aſcends to G, H, and I, *&c.* the Flight L to M, N, and O; The Flight Q to R S T, *&c.* in the ſame Manner it is conducted to any Place deſign'd.

Fig. 7. Is a ſtreight but double Stair, the Entrances are at A and K, and is deſcribed by Letters after the ſame Manner as the former.

Fig. 6. Is a mix'd Stair-Caſe, Part ſtreight and Part circular, the Plan and Section ſufficiently explains the whole.

Fig. 8. Is a Quadrangular Stair-Caſe, in theſe Stair-Caſes the Steps are conducted in three or four Flights, according as the Extent and Height will admit, for the Length of theſe Steps divide the Length or Width of Stair-Caſes into four Parts, make the Steps equal to to two of thoſe Parts, and leave the other two to the Void in the Middle.

Fig. 10. Where a Quadrangular Stair-Caſe is erected with a Wall within Side, divide the whole Width as before into four Parts, and let the inner Walls and Steps contain two of thoſe Parts, and the Void in the Middle the othet two Parts.

Fig. 9. This Stair-Caſe, the Steps are on Strings of Wood, and the under Side of the Strings are caſed to repreſent ſolid Steps, the Back being the ſame as the Front and Return, and make a beautiful Stair-Caſe. In Stair-Caſes in this Manner it is ſometimes neceſſary to put Steps in the Quarter Paces, which ought not to exceed four in Number, unleſs the Stairs are very large, *viz.* where the Quarter Pace is four Foot, put four Steps, where four and a half or five Foot, put five Steps, where it extends to nine Foot, put twelve Steps, *&c.* in the ſame manner divide Quadrants of Circles of the ſame Radius.

Plate 58.

THIS *Plate* repreſents the Manner of conducting the Rail and Balliſters and Ornaments of Stair-Caſes, to avoid the uſual Irregularities.

Fig. 1. A repreſents the Horizontal Floor, B the Aſcent or Inclination of a Floor, in which is ſuppoſed to be contained the Strings and Steps of Stairs, C the Horizontal half Pace.

Fig. 2. A, B, C, tepreſents, as in *Fig.* 1. D the Space for Architrave, E for Baſe to Balluſtrade, F Newel, G Hand Rail, between E, F, and G, is the Balliſters.

Fig. 3. The Repreſentation of the two former as compleated with the Mouldings, *&c.*

To deſcribe the Stair Caſe, *Fig.* 4. admit A, B, C, D, to be the inner Angles, then deſcribe the Length of the Steps bounded by the Line F, G, H, I, deſcribe the Breadth of the Ornaments, (*viz.* Balluſtrade and Mouldings,) as F f, G g, H h, and I i, the Length of Steps and Breadth of Ornaments being given, then ſet out the Breadth of the Steps; firſt conſider how many Steps can be made in the Length g h, for the firſt Flight, which ſuppoſe to be ſix, which is twelve Halves, then ſetting one of thoſe Halves or Parts off from each Angle g and h; with the other ten Parts deſcribe five Steps, which continue to the Lines A D and B C; proceed to deſcribe the Steps at the End i k which ſuppoſe to admit of four Steps, as before ſet the Breadth of half a Step off from each Angle, and deſcribe three Steps which produce to the Line D C, and the Plan is compleated; then proceed to raiſe the Upright of the Steps, and begin with the firſt Flight E, 6; the the Ground Line is a b, and the Height b e, and deſcribe the ſix Riſers a e, thro' the

Points of the Front of the Steps draw the occult Line k l, which is the ſame as Baſe Line E *Fig.* 2, in the ſame Manner proceed in the other two Flights, obſerving c c to be the Level of the firſt Quarter Pace, d d the Level of the ſecond, and 16 the Landing Pace, k k the Level of the Baſe on the firſt Landing; m m, the Level of the Baſe on the ſecond Landing; and after this Manner all the Ornaments will join regularly, as in the *Figures* 2 and 3. And the ſame is a general Rule for all Stair-Caſes, that will admit of Room for the like Regularity of Ornaments.

Fig. 5. Is an irregular Stair-Caſe, yet notwithſtanding, the ſame Method may be practiſed for the Regularity of Ornaments as in the former, by raiſing Perpendiculars to the Line a d, d c and c b; as the Lines a e, d f, d g, c h, c i, and b k; then divide the Steps as before directed, leaving the Diſtance of half a Step from the Perpendiculars, and the whole will be compleated as required.

Fig. 6. This *Figure* is a Repreſentation of the common Method as practiſed, where the quarter Paces are made Square to the Angle of the Newel, which cauſes the Hand Rail of the firſt Flight to drop lower than the Rail of the ſecond by the Height of three Steps, and the ſame in the following Flights.

Fig. 7. This Stair being ſet to the Middle of the Newel, drops its Rail the Height of two Steps below the Rail next above it.

Fig. 8. This Stair being ſet to the Out-ſide of the Newel, drops its Rail the Height of one Step below the Rail above it.

Fig. 9. This Stair being ſet half of a Step clear without Side of the Newel, brings the Rails to meet, as in *Figure* 2 and 3.

Fig. 10 and 11. To theſe Stairs there are large Moldings, as A A on the Out-ſide; therefore to cauſe the ſame Regularity as in the laſt, ſet the Step, the Breadth of half a Step on the out-ſide of the Molding, and what is required will be compleated.

It is to be obſerved, that a half Balliſter is join'd to the Newel generally; and if any Difficulty ariſes by the Space being too large for a half Balliſter, then the Newel may be enlarged, as in the *Figure* 11. by B B.

Fig. 12. Repreſents the irregular Meeting of Rails and Balliſters on Stair-Caſes, as may be ſeen in the new Stair-Caſes at the Weſt End of the Pariſh Church of St. *Martin's in the Fields.*

Fig. 13. Repreſents the regular Method of joining Rails and Balliſters, as in *Figure* 4, 9, 10 and 11.

Fig. 14. Repreſents the Continuation of Lines, for forming rakeing Balliſters.

Fig. 15. Is a Stair-Caſe of five Flights, the Middle Flight being larger than the other, for the better Conveniency of a Reception to the Double Flights above, the Entrance being in the Angle at A.

Plate 59.

A IS the half of a Plan of a Grand Stair-Caſe, with Perrons and Portico; A 2 is the half Plan to the inner Stair-Caſe or upper Part, A 3 is the Section to the ſame Stairs, Perrons and Portico. The Entrances of Steps are mark'd by Figures in the Plans and Sections.

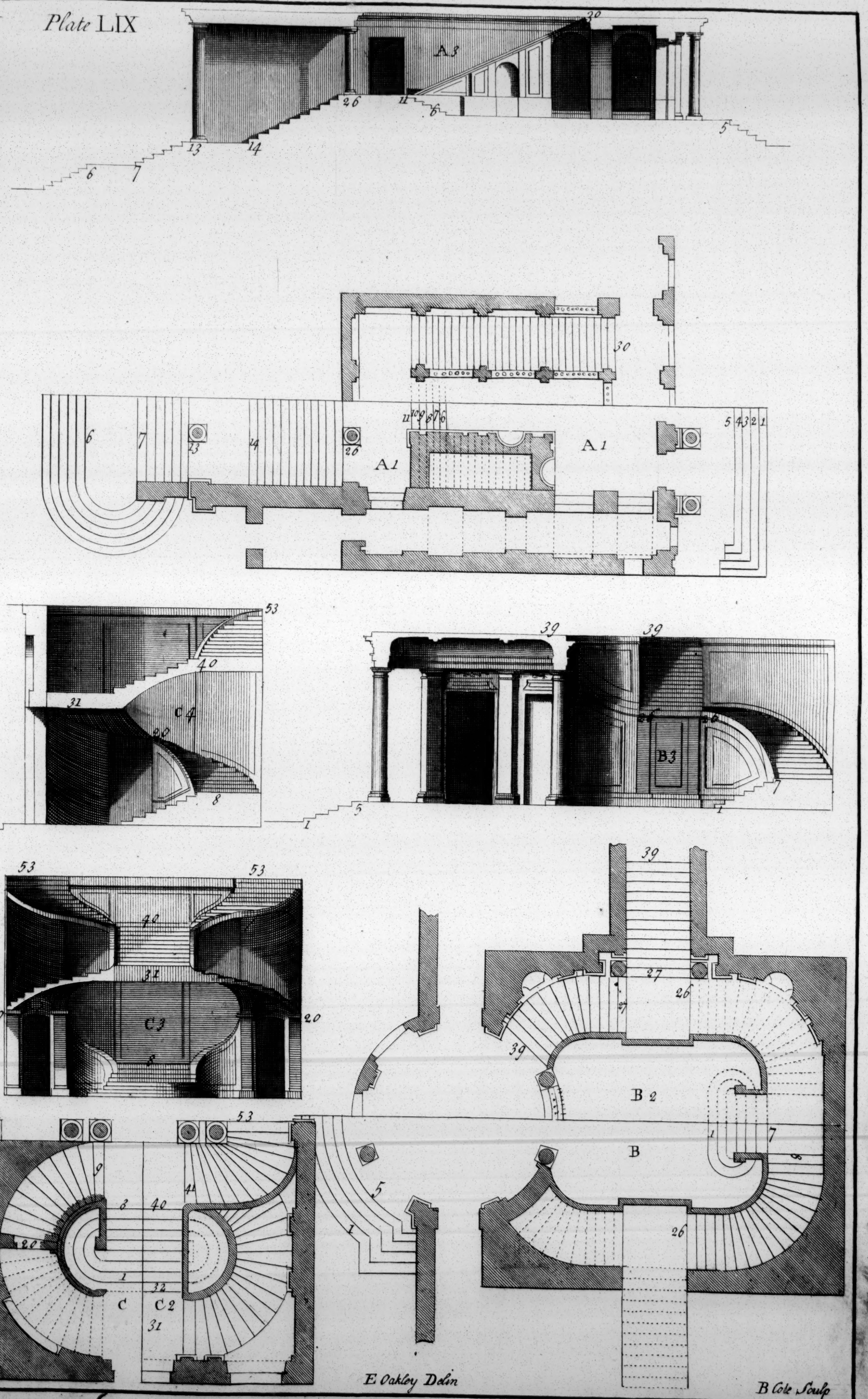
B Is the half of a Grand Stair-Caſe and Portico, B 2 is the half Plan of the upper Part of the ſame, B 3 is the Section to it, the reſt is denoted on the Plan and Section by Figures.

C Is the half Plan of a Grand Stair-Caſe, C 2 is the half Plan of upper Part of the ſame, C 3 is the Section Lengthwiſe, C 4 is the Section Breadthwiſe, the reſt is denoted by Figures.

The End of the Third Part.

PART

Plate LIX



E Oakley Delin

B Cole Sculp

A

Moſt eaſy and expeditious METHOD,

TO

Delineate in PERSPECTIVE all DESIGNS

RELATING TO

ARCHITECTURE,

AFTER

A New MANNER, wholly free from the Confuſion of OCCULT LINES.

THE

APPROBATION.

AT Requeſt, We have peruſed this PERSPECTIVE; and judge it a Work deſerves Encouragement, and very proper for Inſtruction in that ART.

CH. WREN.
J. VANBRUGH.
N. HAWKSMOOR.

PART IV.

Practical Perſpective.

PERSPECTIVE is the Art of Delineating, on a flat Superficies, as a Wall, Cieling, Canvas, Paper, or the like; the Appearances of Objects, as ſeen from one determinate Point: For tho' in Works of great Length, Two, Three, or more Points of Sight are ſometimes made Uſe of; yet ſuch may more properly be ſaid to be ſeveral Views conjoined, than one Piece of *Perſpective*.

In *Perſpective*, the Eye of the Beholder is eſteem'd a Point, from whence Rays are ſuppoſed to proceed to every Angle of the Object. The Wall or Canvas to be painted (which I ſhall here call the Section) is imagined to intervéne at right Angles to the Axis of the ſaid Rays; and, by diſecting them, to receive the Appearance of the Object, in greater or leſs Proportion, as the Section is more or leſs remote from the Point of Sight. My Author's Rule is, that the Diſtance of the Eye ought to be equal to the greateſt Extent of the Object, whether in Length or Height: As to view a Building that is 120 Foot long, and 50 high; he would have the Diſtance 100 Foot: To view a Tower 60 Foot wide, and 150 Foot high; the Diſtance ſhould be 150 Foot. This Diſtance is not ſtrictly to be underſtood of the Space between the Eye and the Object, but of the Space between that and the Section, the Plan of which my Author calls the Line of the Plan, or Ground-line; for 'tis often requiſite, that the Section be plac'd at ſome Diſtance before the Object, on Account of Projectures of Cornices, and other Parts of the Work that advance.

The Place of the Eye, with reſpect to its Height above the Ground, ought to be ſuch, as is moſt natural and agreeable to the Object. Thus in *Architecture*, the Baſements and inferior Parts of a Building are improper to be ſet above the Eye, and their Cornices and Entablatures have but an ill Effect when below it. General *Perſpectives* indeed require the Sight to be taken at a Bird's View; and on other Occaſions the Place of the Eye may be vary'd, but the beſt and moſt general Rule is, not to exceed five or ſix Foot Height above the Ground. The Height of the Eye above the Ground, thro' which a Line is drawn, call'd the Horizontal Line, is ſet on by the ſame Scale of Proportion, as the Deſign bears to the real Work; and the Point of Sight ſo plac'd therein, as may render the Object moſt agreeable. From the Point of Sight, either on one or both Sides in the Horizontal Line, you are to ſet, by the ſame Scale, the Diſtance you ſtand from the Section. And by Means of theſe Points of Sight and Diſtance, and the Meaſures of the Parts brought on the Lines of the Plan and Elevation of the Section, by the ſame Scale; all the Examples of this Treatiſe are reduced into *Perſpective*; as is manifeſt on Inſpection of the Figures.

PLATE 60.

Explication of the Lines of the Plan and Horizon, and of the Points of the Eye, and of the Diſtance.

THAT you may the better underſtand the Principles of *Perſpective*, here is preſented to your View a Temple, on the inner Wall of which, one would paint ſomething in *Perſpective*, that ſhould ſeem to recede as much as the Square P in the Plan, and

the Depth Q in the Profile; A is the Geometrical Plan, B the Geometrical Section Lengthwiſe, C Breadthwiſe. In A is the Place from whence a Man beholds the Line D E, which is the Plan of the Wall which is to be painted: In B the ſame Man, from the ſame Diſtance, looks upon the Line F G, that repreſents the Elevation of the Wall; and this Figure contains in little, the very ſame Proportions of Meaſures transferred from the real Wall.

For beginning any Deſign in *Perſpective*, there are principally required three Lines, and two Points; the firſt Line H I where the Edifice begins, and on which it ſtands, and where the Feet do ſtand, which is call'd the Line of the Plan or Ground-Line. The ſecond Line N O N, (is uſually made a Man's Height above the Ground-Line, as in B) parallel to the former, is call'd the horizontal Line, wherein is placed O the Point of the Eye, and N the Point of Diſtance, on which Side you will. This Point N muſt be as far from O, as the Diſtance you intend to place your ſelf at for the viewing the Depth of the Square P Q; two Points of Diſtance are here laid down, that you may make Uſe of which you pleaſe; for that on one Side only is ſufficient for the foreſhort'ning Figures in *Perſpective*: Neither can any Optick Delineation, or *Perſpective*, be deſcribed, without firſt making two Parallels; one of the Plan or Ground-Line, the other of the Horizon; marking in the Line of the Horizon; the Point of the Eye, or Sight, and the Point of Diſtance. It was thought beſides expedient, to put one and the ſame Thing into three Schemes or Deſigns, to let you ſee, that the Place, from which the Figure C is to be look'd upon, is the Point N, one of the right Lines N O, which muſt be conceived as fix'd at right Angles into O; the Diſtance O N being the ſame as that between A and D E in the Plan, or between B and G F in the Upright.

In Pictures taking up a great Deal of Room, the Point of the Sight ought to be made in the Middle of the Horizontal Line; and where the Height of the Picture happens to be greater than the Breadth, the Diſtance N O muſt be made equal to the Height.

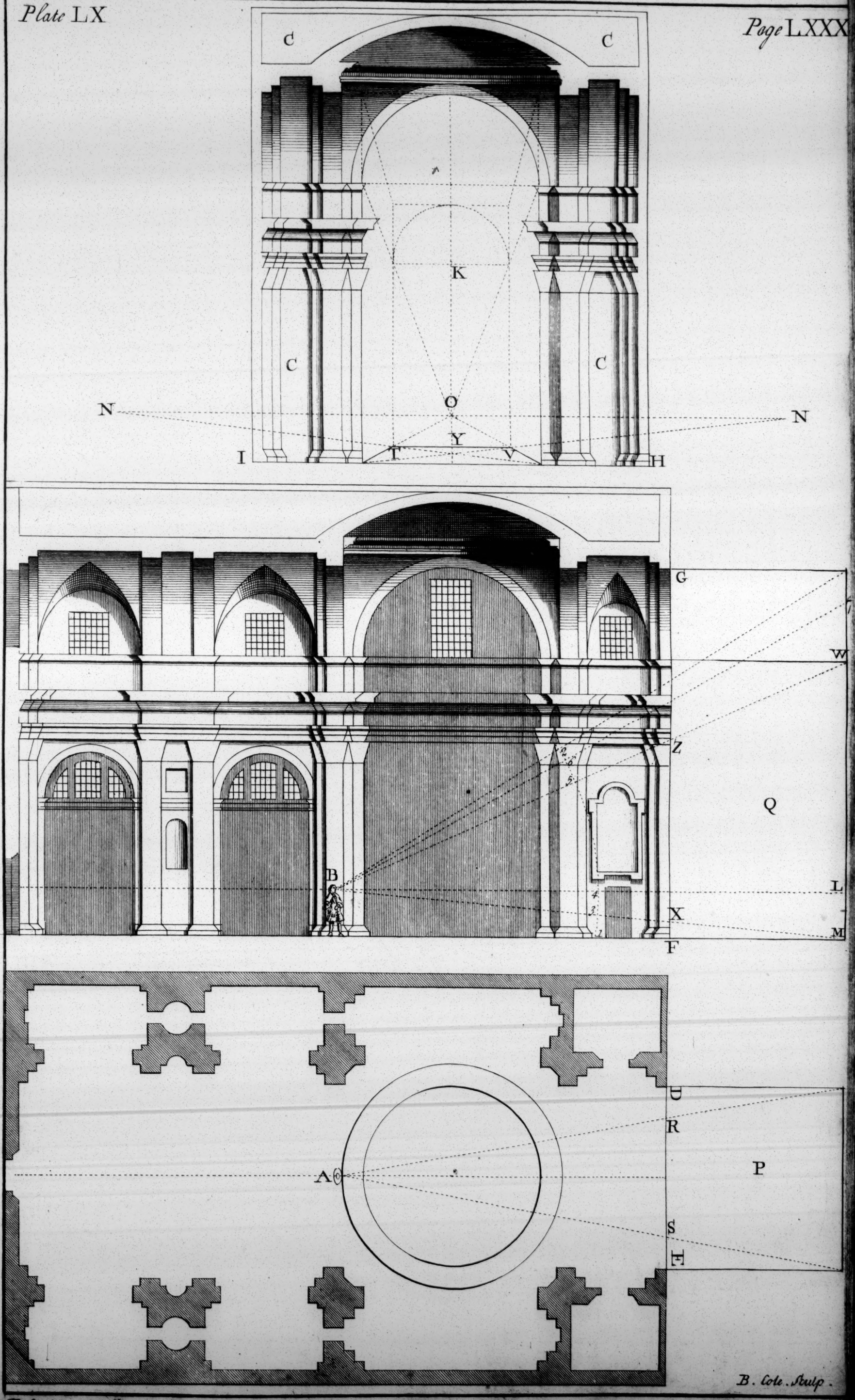
If the Breadth of the Picture exceed the Height, the Diſtance N O muſt be made equal to the Breadth: For ſo will the Extent of the Picture be the better comprehended, or received at one View. And altho' the ſame Diſtance may ſeem to be uſed in a different Manner in the Plan A, and in the Elevation B, from what it is in C; nevertheleſs, the Sections of the viſual Rays, with the Wall of the Plan A, and of the Elevation B, have a perfect Correſpondence with the Sections of thoſe of the Figure C.

Now, if to the Spectator in A and B, we would have the fartheſt Part of the Work ſeem to recede from the Lines D E and G F, as much as the Square P does, whoſe Elevation is Q; draw from the Points A and B, the Viſual Rays to the extreme Points of the Square P and Q; noting the Sections they make with the Walls D E and G F; which by ſome is call'd the Veil, tranſparent Medium, Section, Cloath, or Table; and you'll find R S equal to T V, X Z, equal to Y K; and ſo of the reſt.

Plate 61. Prob. I.

To delineate a Square in Perſpective.

BEFORE the Square A, which is ſuppoſed to be drawn on a ſeperate Paper, can be laid down in *Perſpective*, two parallel Lines muſt be drawn; one of the Plan, and the other of the Horizon, as is already intimated; noting in the Horizontal Line the Point of Sight O, and the Point of Diſtance E. Then, when the Length and Breadth of the Square A ſhall be transferr'd into the Line of the Plan, ſo that the Line C B be equal to the Breadth, and D C be equal to the Length, let the Viſual Lines B O, C O be drawn from the Points B and C to the Point of Sight O, and the right Line D E from the Point D to the Point of Diſtance. Laſtly, where the Line D E cuts the Viſual C O,



B. Cole. Sculp.

E. Oakley Delin

Plate LXI

Prob I

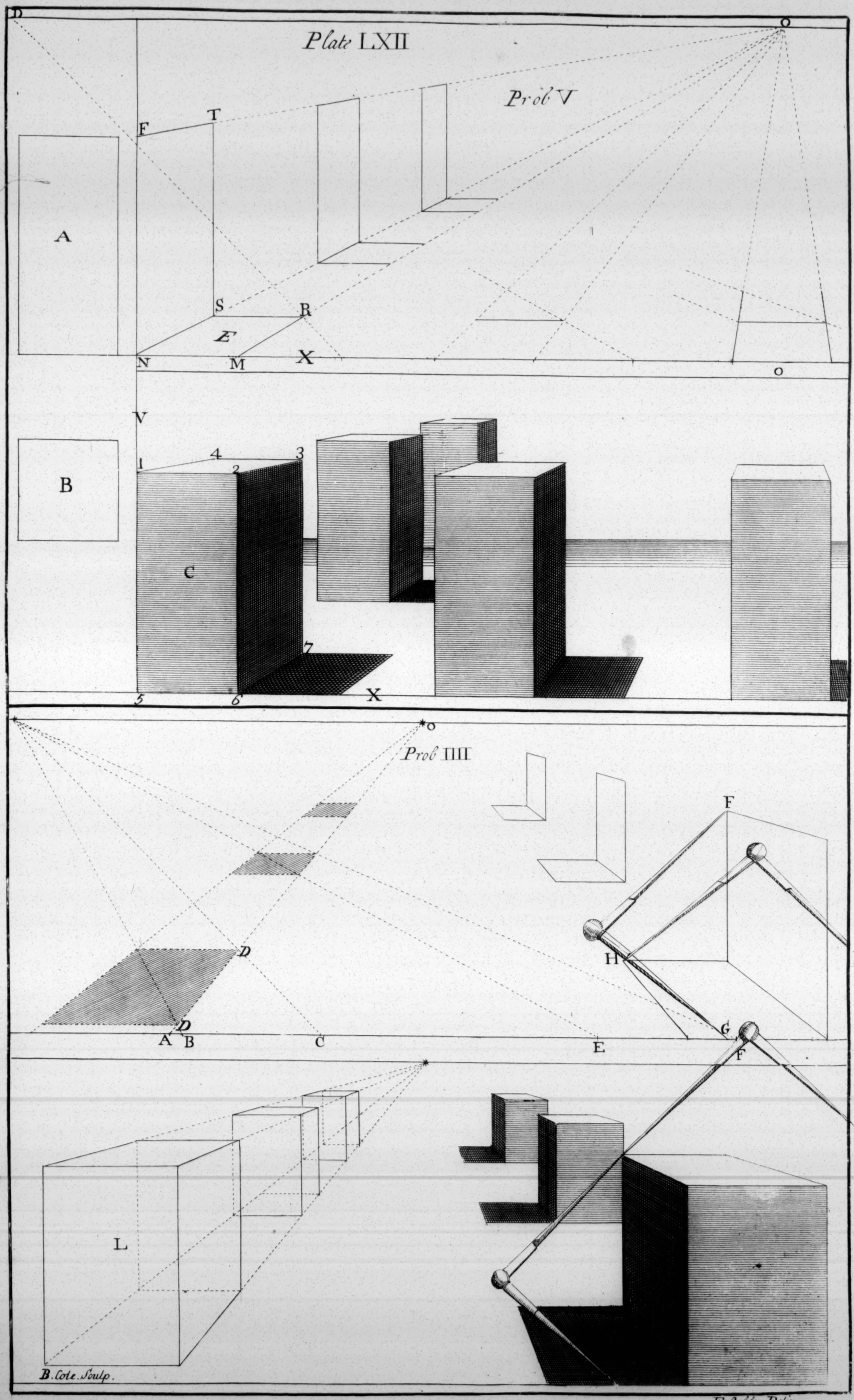
Prob II

Prob III

B. Cole Sculp.

E Oakley Delin

Plate LXII


D
O
Prob V
F
T
A
S
R
E
N
M
X
O
V
B
4
3
1
2
C
7
5
6
X
o
Prob III
F
H
I
G
F
D
D
A
B
C
E
L
B. Cole. Sculp.
F. Oakley Delin

C O, make G F parallel to C B ; and you have the Square optically contracted, or foreſhortned in *Perſpective*.

To ſpare Time and Pains, eſpecially in Figures that abound in Lines, fold your Paper in the Middle, and make Uſe of it to transfer the Breadth and Length of the Square, into the Line of the Plan.

Prob. 2.

The Delineation of an Oblong Square in Perſpective.

LET the Breadth B C of the Square A, be placed in the Line of the Plan, by the Compaſs, or a folded Paper, and from the Points B and C, make the Viſuals to the Point of Sight O. Then fold your Paper croſs-wiſe, and mark C D the Length of the Square, drawing the Line D E to the Point of Diſtance, and the Line F G parallel to B C, which will compleat the Optick Delineation of the Oblong Square.

The other Figure ſhews the Folding of the Paper croſs-wiſe, which is of ready Uſe in delineating Squares, whoſe Breadth exceeds their Length, or *vice verſâ*; or whoſe Breadth and Length are equal.

Prob. 3.

The Optical Delineation of a double Square.

HERE you'll find the Advantage of your folded Paper ; for, applying it to the Line of the Plan, you readily mark the Points, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, of the viſual Lines, which muſt be drawn to the Point of Sight O. Then folding the Paper croſs-wiſe, you mark the Points 7, 8, 9, 10, placing the Point 7 on that of 6, unleſs you would have the Square removed within the Line of the Plan. Then from 8, 9, 10, drawing Lines to the Point of Diſtance E ; where they interſect the Line 6, 7, draw Parallels to the Line of the Plan, and the Work is compleated.

Within the Square B, you may eaſily inſcribe another Square, by Help of the Diagonals ; as may be ſeen in the Figure.

Prob. 4. Plate 62.

Plans of Squares, with their Elevations.

BESIDES what has been already ſaid of the fore-ſhort'ning of Squares in *Perſpective*, is is convenient to obſerve, That the Foot of the firſt Square is here ſet within the Line of the Plan, as much as the Space B A optically contracted ; becauſe the Line B D has the Diſtance B A from the Viſual A O : And in like manner, the ſecond Square is diſtant from Line of the Plan, the Space E A ; and ſo for the reſt.

I would have you obſerve in all theſe Squares, that by the Length I always underſtand Part of the Viſual Lines, and by the Breadth thoſe parallel to the Ground Line ; which in the firſt Square are drawn from the Points, in which the Lines B D, C D, tending to the Point of Diſtance, interſect the Viſual A O.

Under the Plans of theſe Squares are deſcribed three others juſt like them, which are eaſily converted into three Baſes, by erecting, at Pleaſure, the two firſt Perpendiculars of equal Height ; and thence drawing two Viſuals to the Point of Sight O, which alſo bound the reſt, as in the Figure. Obſerve alſo, that the Geometrical Height of every Thing is to be ſet perpendicularly from the Ground-Line, or Line of the Plan, as the Geometrical Length and Breadth are alſo placed on the ſame Line.

The three other Baſes below are form'd without the Help of Occult Lines, by making Uſe only of the Heights and Breadths of the Angles, taken from the *Perſpective* Plan and Upright.

By Height I underſtand the Diſtance of each Angle, or Corner from the Ground-Line; by Breadth the Diſtance of an Angle, or Corner, from any Line perpendicular to the Ground-Line; provided theſe Lines have always the ſame Place in reſpect of the Baſes, as they have in reſpect of the *Perſpective* Plan and Upright. And as, by the Help of two Compaſſes, the Height F G, and the Breadth H I determine the Corner of the firſt Baſe; ſo, in like Manner, are found the Corners of the other Baſes.

Prob. 5.

The Manner of deſigning in Perſpective without Occult Lines.

IN this Figure, I have deſign'd the Geometrical Plan B ſeparately from the Geometrical Elevation A, as I ſhall always do hereafter.

The Plan B optically contracted or put in *Perſpective*, in E, as N M R S; the Elevation of its Length in *Perſpective* in F T S N.

Then ſuppoſing the Heights F N, 1, 5, 2, 6, equal; and the Breadths N M, 1, 2, 5, 6 equal; the Lines N M, 5, 6, to be in the Line of the Plan X; and the Lines F N, 1, 5, in the Perpendicular V: The Angles 3 and 4 of the Baſe C, have the very ſame Elevation or Diſtance from the Line of the Plan X, as has the Angle T: The Angle 1 and 2, have the ſame Elevation with the Angle F: The Angles 3 and 7 have the ſame Breadth or Diſtance from the Perpendicular V, as the Angle R has: The Angles 2 and 6 have the ſame Breadth, as the Angle M has.

Prob. 6. Plate 63.

Another Example of a Geometrical Plan and Upright, put in Perſpective.

FOR drawing in *Perſpective*, a Pedeſtal, or Baſe, divided into four Parts, make the Plan A, with its Diviſions of Length E D, and of Breadth C D, and the ſame Diviſions of Breadth E F, in the Elevation B, prolong'd to X. Then make the *Perſpective* Plan, by transferring the Breadth and Length into the Ground-Line, by Means of your Paper folded croſs-wiſe. From which Plan the *Perſpective* Upright is very eaſily made, as may be plainly ſeen in the Figure. How the Baſe below, without occult Lines, is made from the *Perſpective* Plan and Upright, is manifeſt from what has been ſaid before. I could wiſh you would be very diligent in the Practice of this Method by the Compaſs; becauſe the Diſpatch of *Perſpective* Delineations chiefly depends thereon.

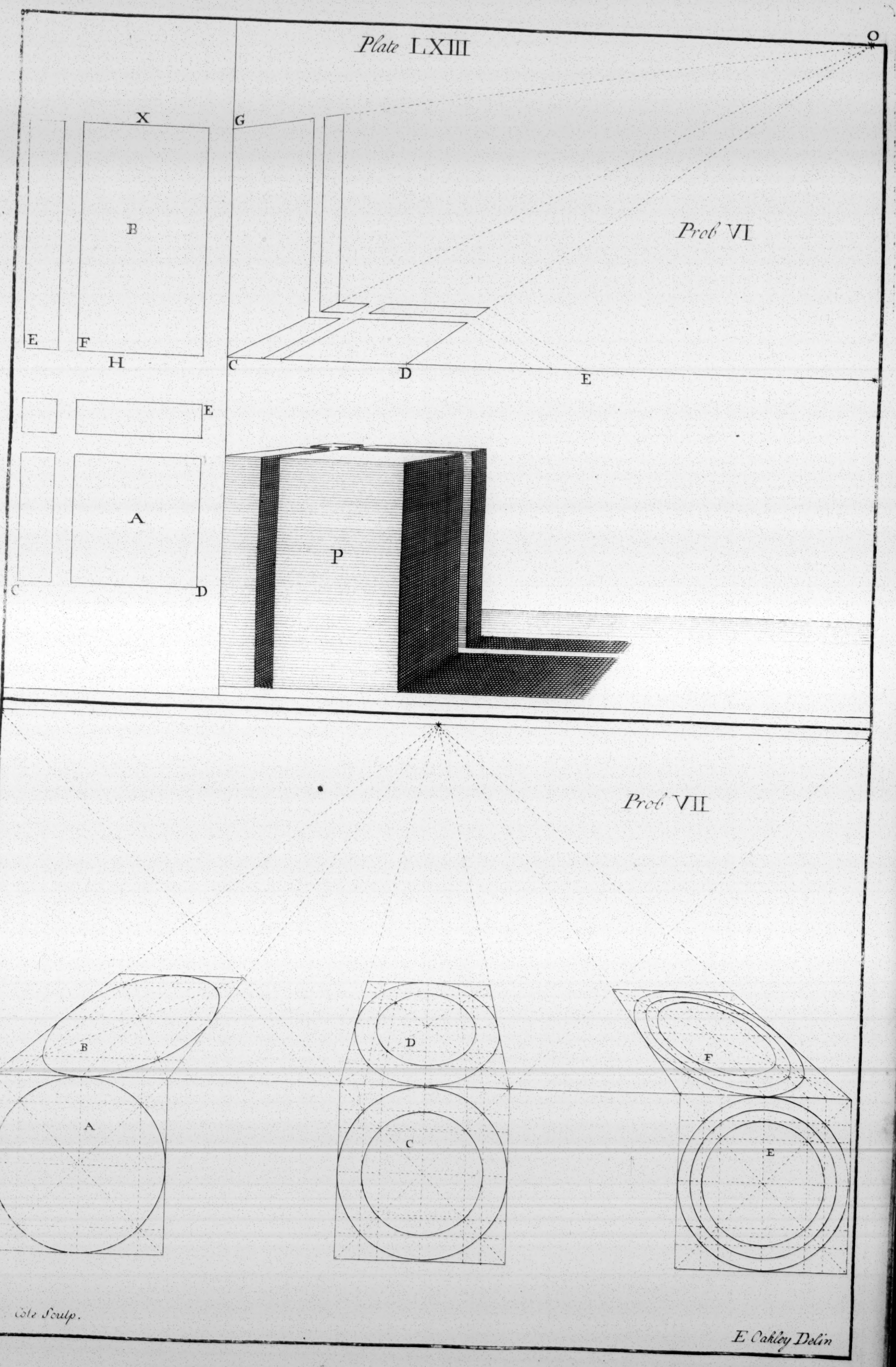
Prob. 7.

To deſcribe Circles in Perſpective.

THAT upon Pedeſtals you may be able to place Columns with their Baſes and Capitals, it is requiſite you ſhould know the Manner of putting Circles in *Perſpective*, whether ſingle, double, or many Concentrick.

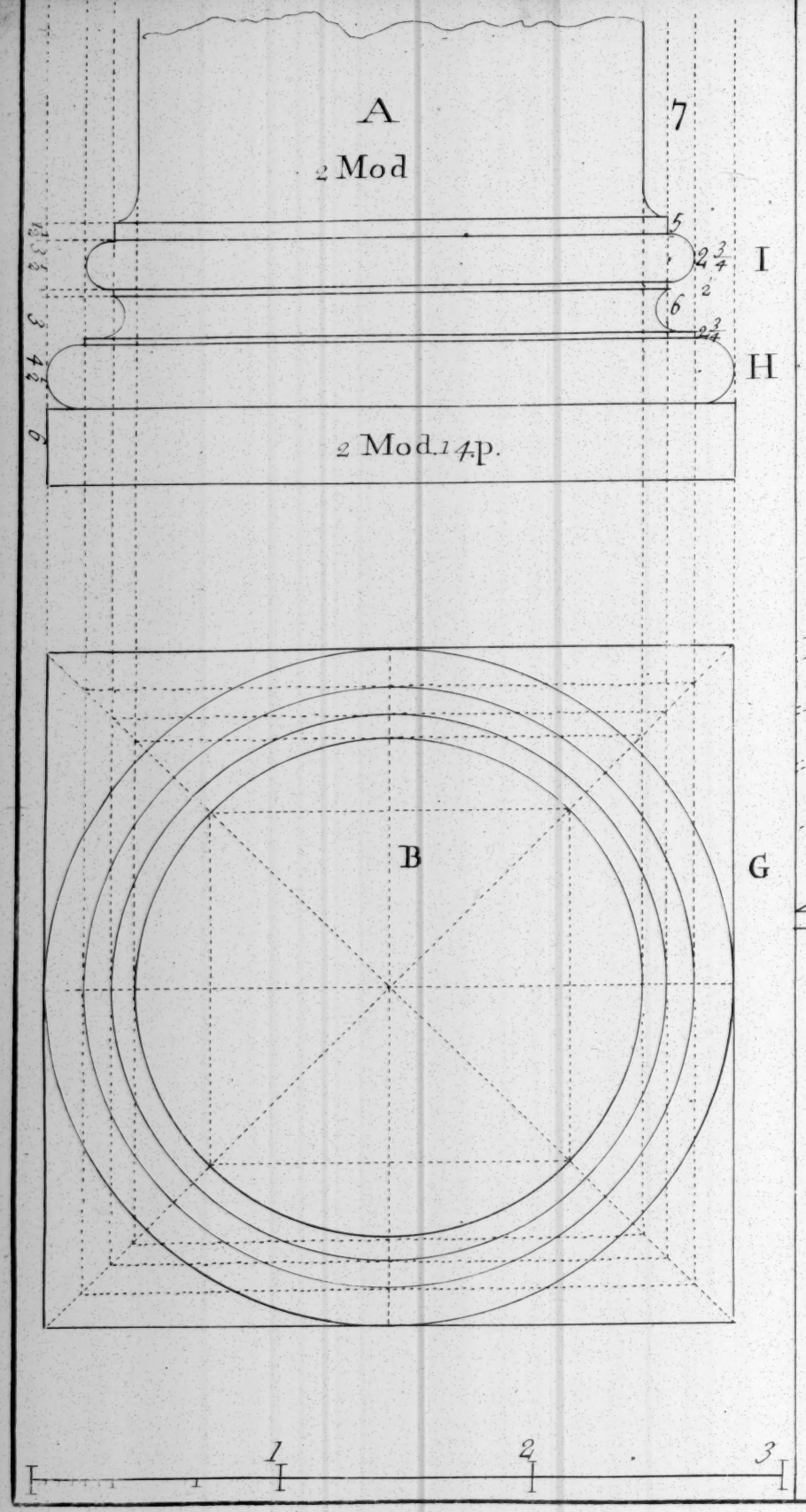
The Geometrical Plan A conſiſts of a Square with a Circle inſcribed, whoſe Diameters divide into four equal Parts, and the Diagonals being drawn where they interſect the Circle, continue Lines parallel to each Side of the Square. The Square with all its Diviſions, being put in *Perſpective*: By the four extreme Points of the Diameters, and by thoſe

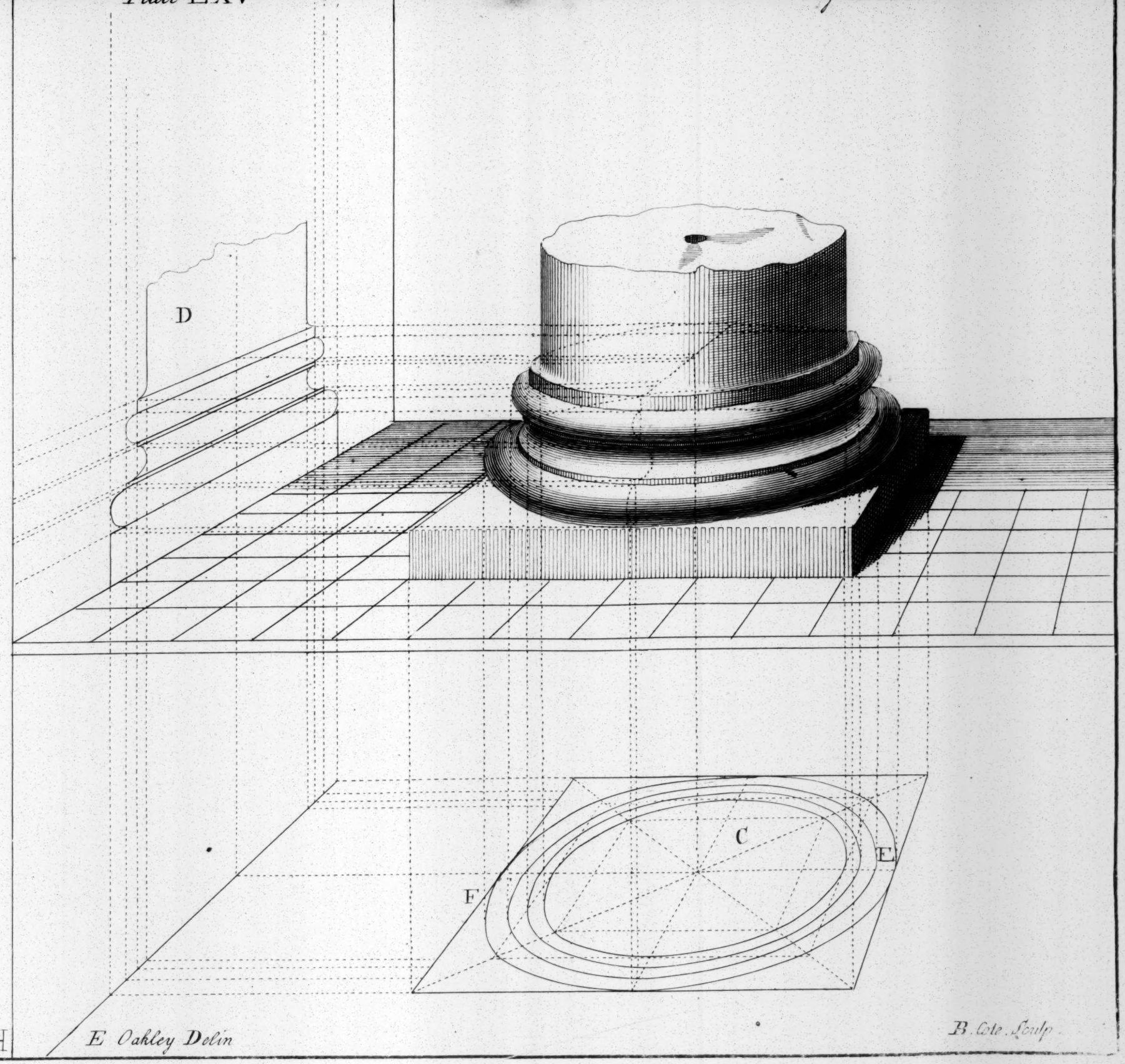
Plate LXIII



B Cole Sculp.

E Cakley Delin

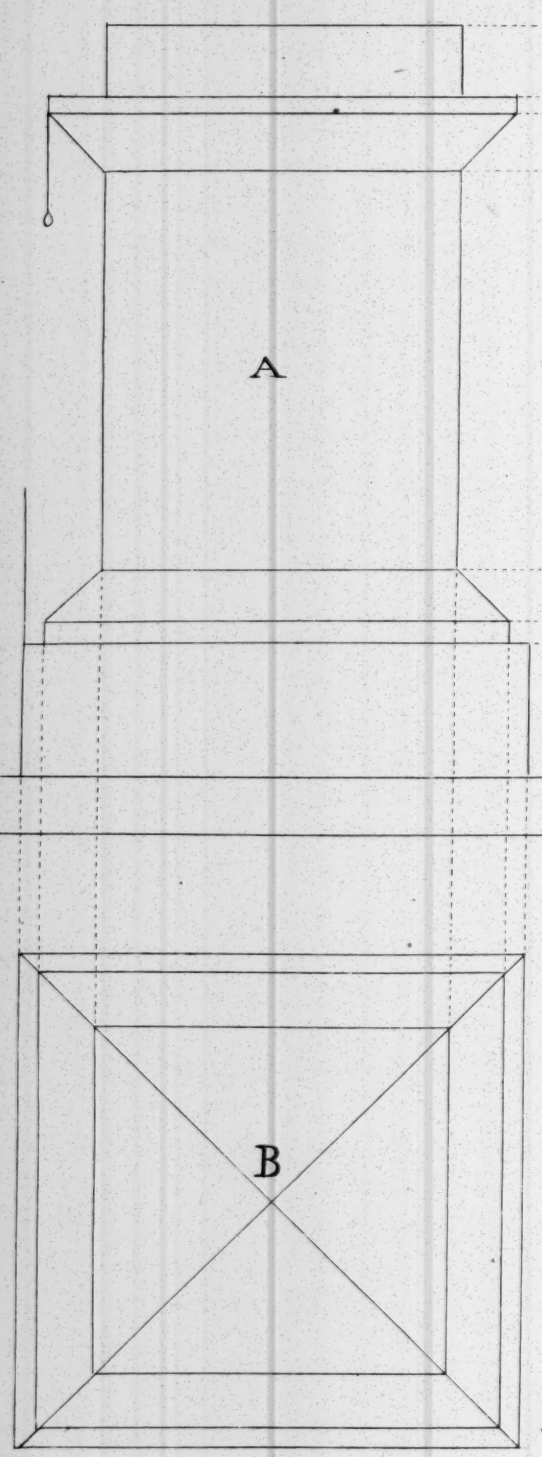


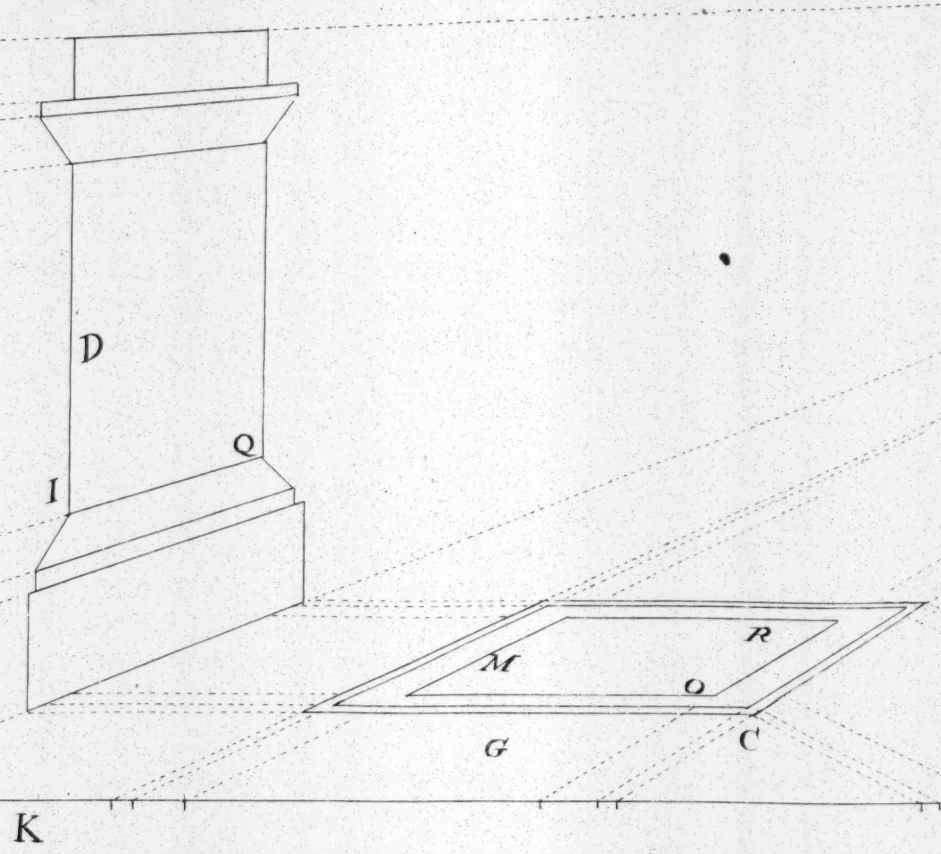


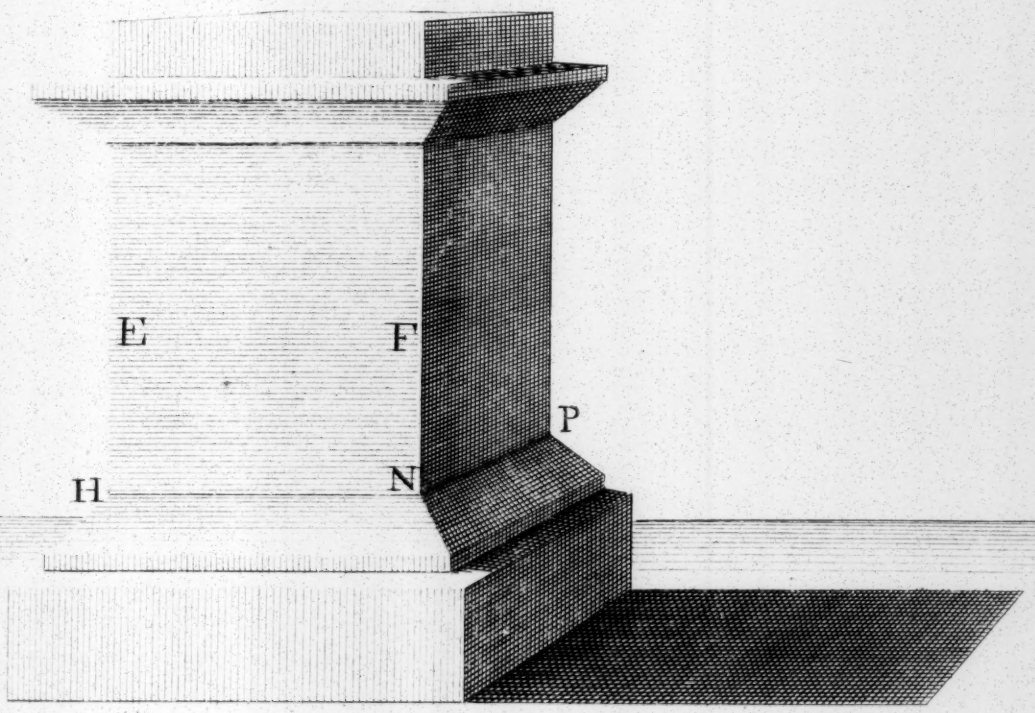
E Oakley Delin

B. Cole Sculp

Plate LXIIII







E. Oakley Deline

B. Cole Sculp.

thoſe of the Interſection of the Diagonals, you neatly trace by Hand the Circumference B. If you would add another Circle you muſt inſcribe another Square, as in the Plan C; from whence you find in *Perſpective* the double Circle D.

Between theſe two Circles, you may, by the eight Interſections of the Squares, deſcribe a Third; as is evident by the Figures E and F.

In a Word all Circles are deſcribed by the Help of Squares, tracing them by the Interſections of the Viſual Lines, with thoſe parallel to the Ground-Line: Nor is there any Point in either the Squares or Circles A, C, E, whoſe correſpondent Point may not be readily found by ſuch Sections, in the reſpective Squares and Circles B, D, F. Nevertheleſs, where your Work requires many Circles, I would adviſe you to uſe as few Squares as poſſible, leſt they perplex, rather than aſſiſt you.

Prob. 8. Plate 64.

The Projection of a Pedeſtal in Perſpective.

IF you would draw a Pedeſtal, with the Projecture of its Cap and Baſe, you muſt begin with the Geometrical Elevation A, by drawing ſuch occult Lines as are neceſſary, as well Side-ways to the Perpendicular L, as downwards for making the Geometrical Plan B, whoſe Diſtances muſt be transferr'd, and carry'd into the Space G. If the Meaſures of the Length be placed the Diſtance of the Space C, from thoſe of the Breadth, the *Perſpective*-Plan will then appear removed within the Ground-Line K, as much as the ſaid Space C is. In the Conſtruction of the *Perſpective* Elevation D, the Viſuals drawn from the Points of the Line L give the Lines of the Breadth; and thoſe of the Height are taken from the Lines of the *Perſpective* Plan, as in the Figure. In delineating the clean or finiſh'd Pedeſtal E F, the Interſection of the Breadth from L to M, with the Height from K to I, gives the preciſe Place of the Corner H. The Interſection of the ſame Height with the Breadth L O gives the Angle N. Laſtly, the Angle P is found by the Interſection of the Height K Q, with that of the Breadth L R.

Prob. 9. Plate 65.

The Attick Baſe in Perſpective.

FROM the Geometrical Elevation A, is drawn the Plan B; which being put into *Perſpective*, as you ſee in C, from the Circles of the Plan C you have the Breadths of the Column, with its Toruſes and Fillets, *&c.* From the greateſt Breadth of the Circles of the Plan C, we have erected Perpendiculars to the Parts that anſwer them in the Baſe, to the End you may ſee where the Points fall, which terminate the greateſt Breadth of thoſe Parts. Theſe Points (which in the biggeſt Circle of the Plan C are E and F) are found by touching the Extremity of the Circumference with a Line parallel to the Perpendicular D: If you conſider well the Elevation G (which is made by tranſporting the Diviſions of the Elevation A upon the Perpendicular D) it will plainly appear, that there is no Point in the Circles of the Plan C, to which there may not be a correſpondent Point found in the Toruſes and Liſts of the ſaid Baſe; as the occult Lines ſhew, that ariſe from E and F, each of which is a Continuation of three Lines: The firſt, of Breadth from the Plan C to the Viſual; the ſecond, of Height from the Viſual to the Elevation G; the third, of Breadth from the Elevation G to the Baſe. Now, tho' 'tis plain by the Figure, that the Body of the Column prevents the Sight of a good Part of the Fillets, and the ſame Fillets takes off from Part of the Toruſes, which would otherwiſe be viſible; for which Reaſon the back Part of the Toruſes is continued only till it meet the ſame: Yet 'tis certainly beſt to draw every Member complete, as tho' the Work were tranſparent; that the Parts hidden from the Eye may the better agree with thoſe that are expoſed to it.

When your Draught is finiſh'd, if you view it at the due Diſtance, and perpendicularly to the Point of Sight; you'll readily diſcover and rectify what's amiſs. Your chief Care will be employ'd in ſhaping the Toruſes, difficult by reaſon of their Roundneſs both Ways; namely, in the Contour of their Molding, as in their Elevation H I; and in the Circuit it makes about the Column.

Prob. 10. Plate 66.

The Shaft of a Column in Perſpective.

BEING to deſcribe Part of the Shaft of a Pillar (or Column) without Projectures, make the Elevation A, and the Geometrical Plan B, at leaſt to the Middle: From this brought into *Perſpective*, as you perceive in C, muſt be drawn Parallels both of Breadth to the Viſual D, and of Elevation to the Viſual E, from which are deſcribed the Circles in *Perſpective* F and L, taking the Breadths from the Plan C, and the Heights from the Perpendicular M; and according to this Method the Circles F and L are made, without the Help of Squares. Laſtly, draw the Perpendiculars G and H, by the Points which terminate the greateſt Breadth of the Circles F and L.

There is not a Point in the Plan C, but what, by Means of the Lines of Breadth and Elevation, may be found in the Circle F. For Inſtance, the Place of the Point 6 is 7, which is found by the three Lines C D, D E, and E 7.

In deſigning the two Pieces of a Column, with the Projecture of the Cincture at Head and Foot, you muſt obſerve the ſame Rule.

Prob. 11. Plate 67.

The Doric Capital in Perſpective.

THE Manner before deliver'd concerning Baſes, is of the ſame Uſe in delineating Capitals; foraſmuch as, theſe alſo have their ſquare Abacus, and their round Members. The Ground-Line in Capitals is uſually placed above the Horizon; becauſe, when they are ſet upon Columns which exceed a Man's Height, they are generally repreſented above the Eye:

Prob. 12. Plate 68.

The Corinthian *Capital in Perſpective.*

THERE is no compleating the *Corinthian* Capital, unleſs you moſt accurately deſcribe its Geometrical Elevation and Plan.

Being to form the Plan E from the Plan B, you muſt, with occult Lines, make the Squares neceſſary for bringing four, or at leaſt three of the Circles into *Perſpective*, tranſferring into the Line D the Diviſions of the Line C, and the reſt as uſual. Then, with other occult Lines, contract the Plans of the Leaves, and finiſh what's farther requiſite in the Plan E.

To make the Optick Elevation of the Length F, you muſt transfer into the Perpendicular H all the Diviſions of the Elevation A; and complete the ſame, by Lines drawn towards the Point of Sight, till they meet their reſpective Perpendiculars; which, proceeding from all Parts of the Circles parallel to the Line D, interſect the Viſual G; from whence they deſcend, Parallels to the Perpendicular H.

In

Plate LXVI

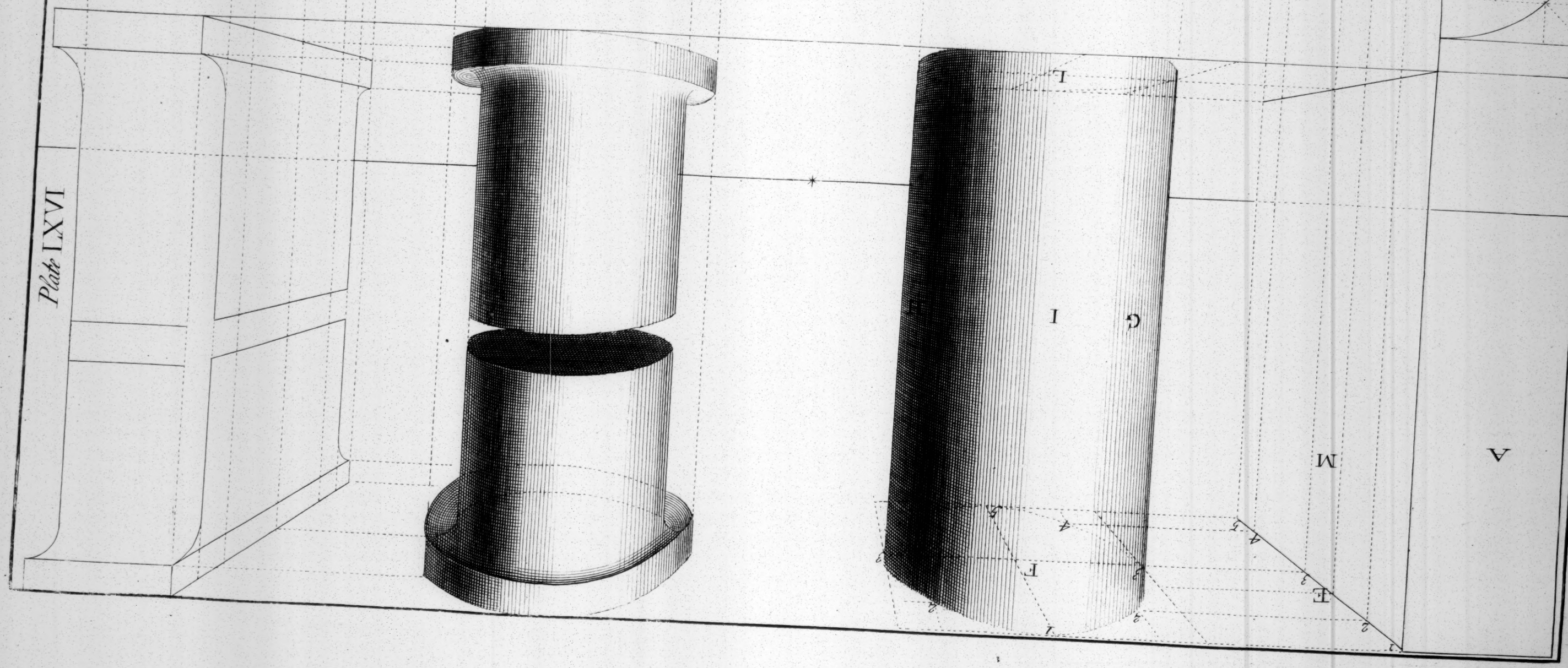
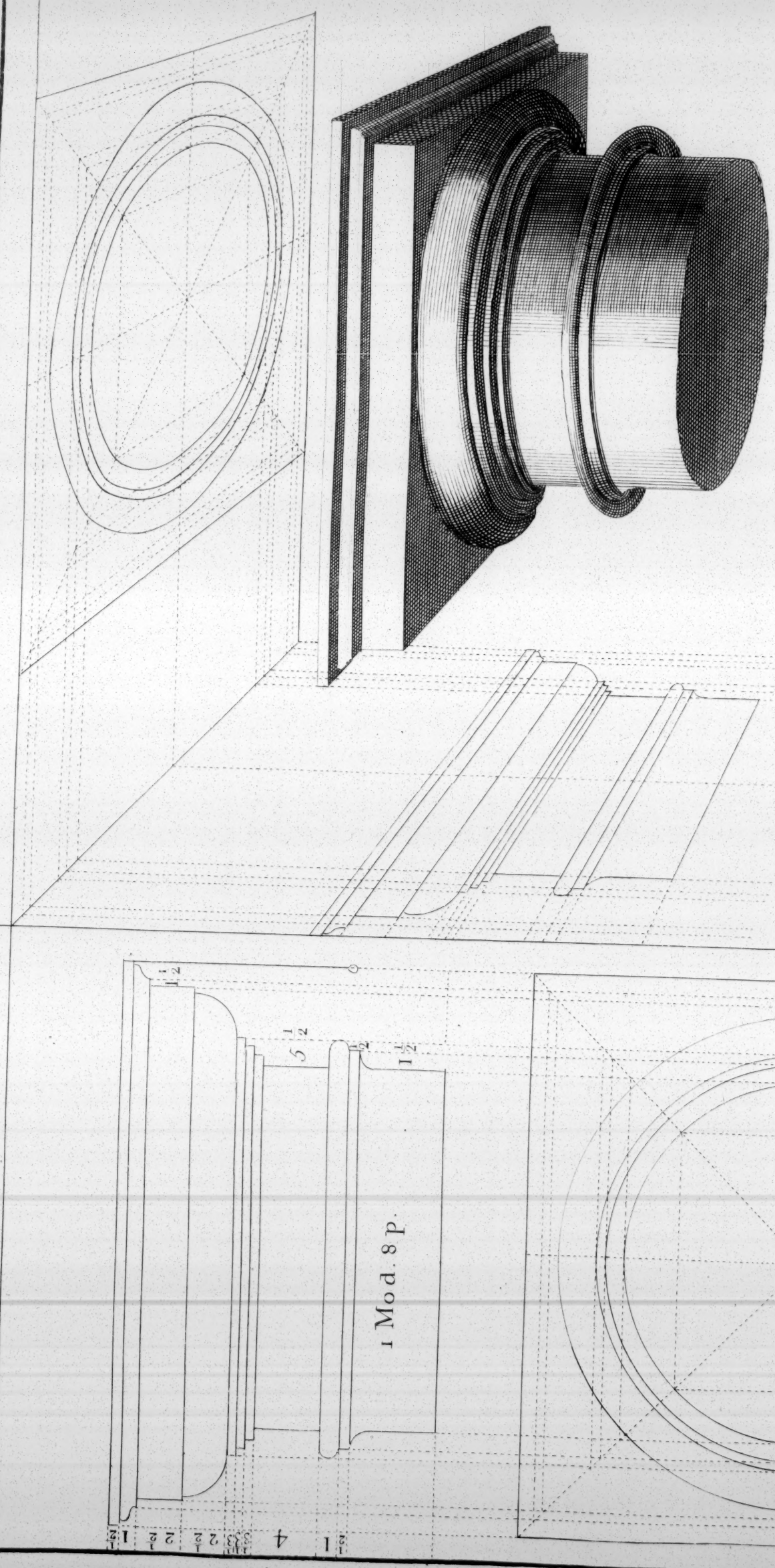


Plate LXVII



B. Cole Sculp

E Oakley Dedin

2 Mod. 17 p

A

1 Mod. 2/3

B

C

D

E

G

H

L

F

I

Plate LXVIII

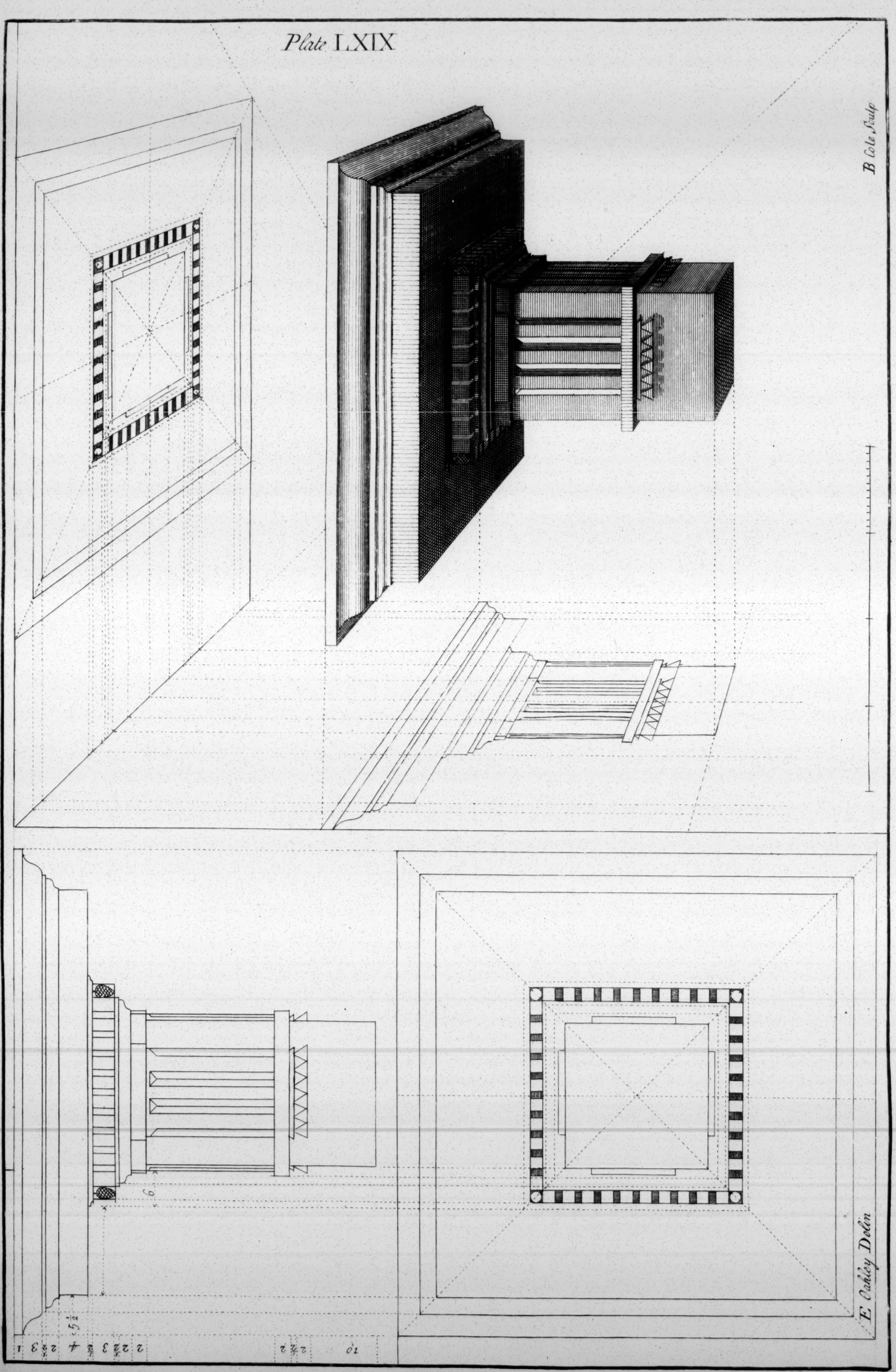
E. Cahley Delin

B. Cole. Sculp.

Plate LXX

E
H
G
L
N
M
O
B. Cole. Sculp
K
F
D
E. Oakley. Delin.
A
B
Mod 2
P 17
Mod 1½
Part 17 2
Mod 4 p
9 3 9 4 6 2 3 12
5 6 2 7 4
5 6 4 6 5 6 3 5

Plate LXIX



In working the clean Capital, you ſhould begin with the loweſt Circle I, which denotes the Compaſs of the Column. Then make the Leaves 1, 2, by taking their Breadths from the Plan E, with the Compaſſes, and keeping one Point of them upon the Line H; and their Heights from the Elevation F, keeping one Point on the Line D. The ſame muſt be done, as well by the Leaves 3, 3, 4, 4, as by the Leaf 5, and the others; and laſt of all, by the Abacus alſo; the ſinking of the Horns whereof, anſwers that of the Viſual Line L.

Prob. 13. Plate 69.

The Dorick Entablature in Perſpective.

AFTER Capitals we proceed to Entablatures, which becauſe they are ſquare, are leſs difficult than the former. From the Geometrical Upright is drawn, as uſual, the Geometrical Plan; from the Plan put in *Perſpective*, is deſcribed the Optick Elevation of the Length; and from both the latter is wrought the clean Entablature required. You may obſerve, here are two Lines that terminate the Breadth of the *Perſpective* on one Side and the other. The Line which proceeds from the higher Corner of the Viſual, gives the Height of the moſt advanc'd Part; that from the lower determines the Height of the Back-part; and ſo for the future.

Prob. 14. Plate 70.

The Optick Projection of a Corinthian Cornice, with the Capital and Part of the Column.

IN this Figure the Line of the Plan is C I E, that of the Horizon is D F O, the Point of Sight is O, the Point of Diſtance D; the Geometrical Elevation of the *Corinthian* Capital, with its Entablature, is A; whoſe Diviſions are ſeen in the Perpendicular C D. The Length and Breadth of the Geometrical Plan B are equal, and the Plan is put into *Perſpective* after the uſual Method; to wit, by transferring the Diviſions of Breadth and Length into the Line C I E; from the Points of Breadth draw Viſuals to the Point of Sight; and from thoſe of Length, occult Lines to the Point of Diſtance; by which Interſections, you have all that's neceſſary for putting the Plan into *Perſpective*. For the Lines of Length are Parts of the Viſual Rays, as is manifeſt by G N, H L; and the Lines of Breadth are made Parallels to the Ground-Line, from the Interſections beforementioned, as is ſeen in N L.

Moreover, if the Horizontal Line D O were ſo prolong'd, as to receive another Point of Diſtance equi-diſtant from O; half the Diagonal Lines of the great Square G N L H, and of the leſſer Squares contain'd therein, would tend to one Point of Diſtance, and the other Half to the other.

The Elevation of the Length is put in *Perſpective*, by continuing the Parallels to C E, till they cut the Viſual I O; and from thence dropping Lines parallel to I K: Then transferring into I K the Diviſions of the Perpendicular C D, from them make Viſual Lines to the Point of Sight, and draw the ſeveral Members of the Upright, whoſe Breadths are the Parts of Viſuals, and their Heights Parts of Perpendiculars, or Lines parallel to I K. Laſtly, from the Plan and Elevation of the Length, you delineate the finiſh'd Cornice and Capital: But that you may more eaſily draw the Modilions, firſt make them in a ſquare Form, as in M; and that will very much aſſiſt you to give the Scroll of each a more agreeable Turn.

Prob. 15. Plate 71.

To deſcribe the Tuſcan Order in Perſpective.

IN the Geometrical Plan C, and in the Elevation thereof A B, I have only mark'd the principal Lines, as well for avoiding Confuſion in the Figure, as that ſomething might be left to the Induſtry of the Studious. The Line of the Plan E G has the Diviſions of Breadth P, and of Length Q, of the Geometrical Plan C. From the Points of Breadth are drawn, as uſual, Viſuals to the Point of Sight O. From the Points of Length occult Lines are produced to the Point of Diſtance, which lies fourteen Modules without the Line A B: And where the occult Lines from the Diviſions of Length cut the Viſual F O, Parallels are made to the Ground-Line E F; and from the Interſections of thoſe Parallels with the Viſuals, you complete the Delineation of the Plan in *Perſpective*.

The Lines which in the Plan are parallel to E F, being prolong'd to the Viſual E O are then continu'd parallel to the Perpendicular D E, and from the Diviſions of A B, produced to D E, Viſual Lines are drawn to the Point of Sight, which interſecting the Perpendiculars aforeſaid, you from thence find the Length of the Elevation in *Perſpective*.

Prob. 16. Plate 72.

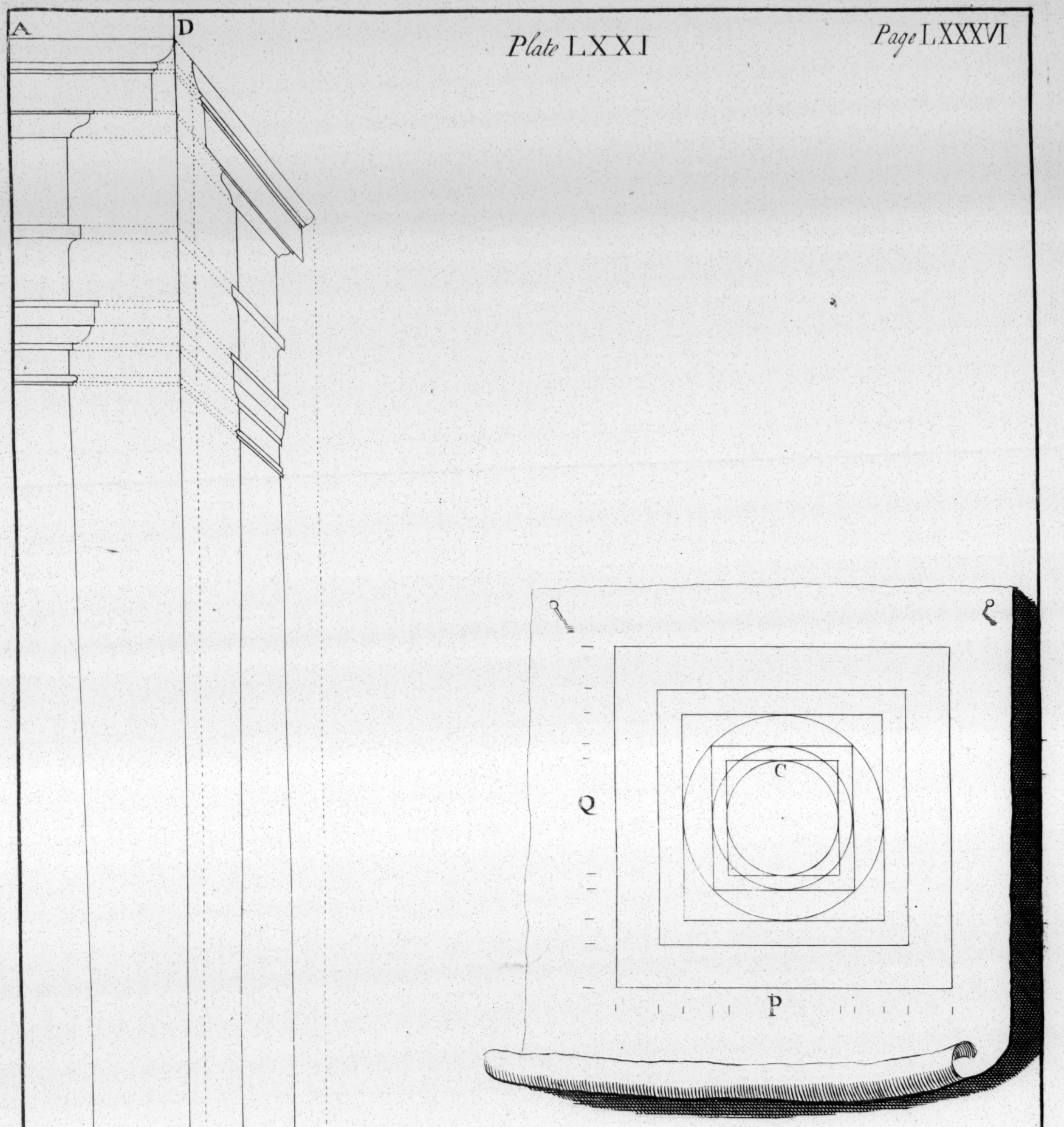
The Tuſcan Order compleat in Perſpective.

FROM the Rules in the laſt *Problem*, is drawn this compleat Piece of the *Tuſcan* Order, brought into *Perſpective*, by Means of the Breadths and Heights of the ſeveral Parts, exactly taken off with the Compaſſes, as has been often ſaid.

Prob. 17. Plate 73.

To deſcribe a Compoſite Wreath'd Column in Perſpective.

HAVING made the Geometrical Elevation of a ſtreight Column, and divided the Height of its Shaft into twenty four equal Parts, the wreathing is deſcribed by Parts of the Circumference of Circles, whoſe Diameters are equal to the ſeveral Breadths, or Diameters of the ſtreight Column; as is ſhewn in the Figure A. For putting the Upright into *Perſpective*, four ſtreight occult Lines are of Uſe, which deſcend from the Extent of the Swellings and Sinkings of the lower Wreaths of the Column A, and terminate in two Circles of the Geometrical Plan B. The ſaid Plan laid down in *Perſpective* is C. The utmoſt Extent of the greateſt Circle determines that of the Convex Parts of the lower Wreaths: The greateſt Breadth of the leſſer Circle gives that of the hollow Parts of the ſaid Wreaths; as may be perceiv'd by applying a Ruler from the Wreaths to the Circles of the Plan. From the four Points of the greateſt Breadth in thoſe Circles, four Lines paralel to the Ground-Line are continued to the Viſual E D, and thence again continued parallel to the Perpendicular D F. From the Elevation A, the twenty four equal Parts of the Columns Height are transferred into the Lines D F, and Viſuals drawn from each to the Point of Sight O. By the Interſections of thoſe Viſuals with the four Perpendiculars aforeſaid, are drawn the waved Lines M N, P Q; from which, both the Out-Lines of the finiſh d Column are deſcribed; but the Fore-part of the Pedeſtal, Column and Cornice, is taken from the Line G H; the Back-part of the ſame from the Line I L.



The Point of distance lyes 14 Modules without the line A.B.

B. Cole Sculp.

E. Oakley Delin

E. Oakley. Delin.

B. Cole. Sculp

Plate LXXIII

F

A

P M

N

Q

I H

O

5 Mod.

L G

B

C

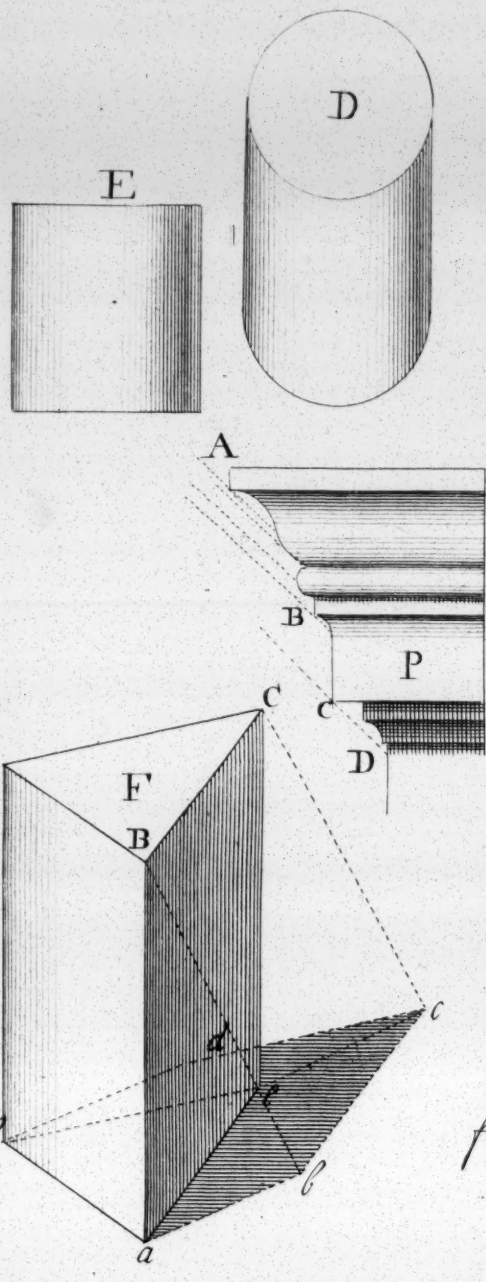
E

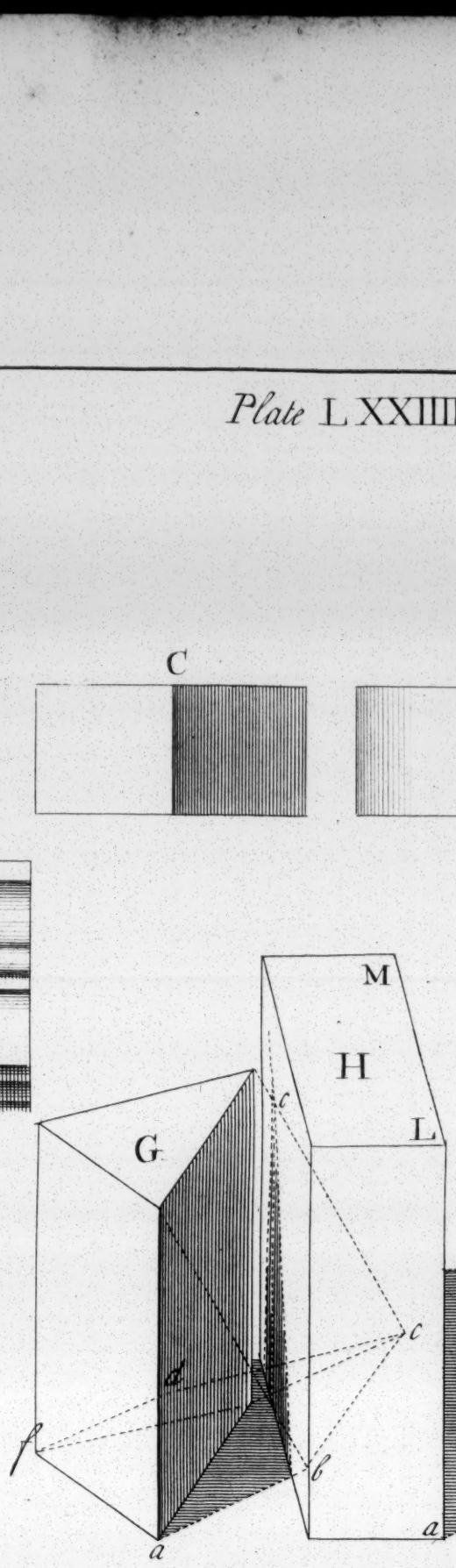
D

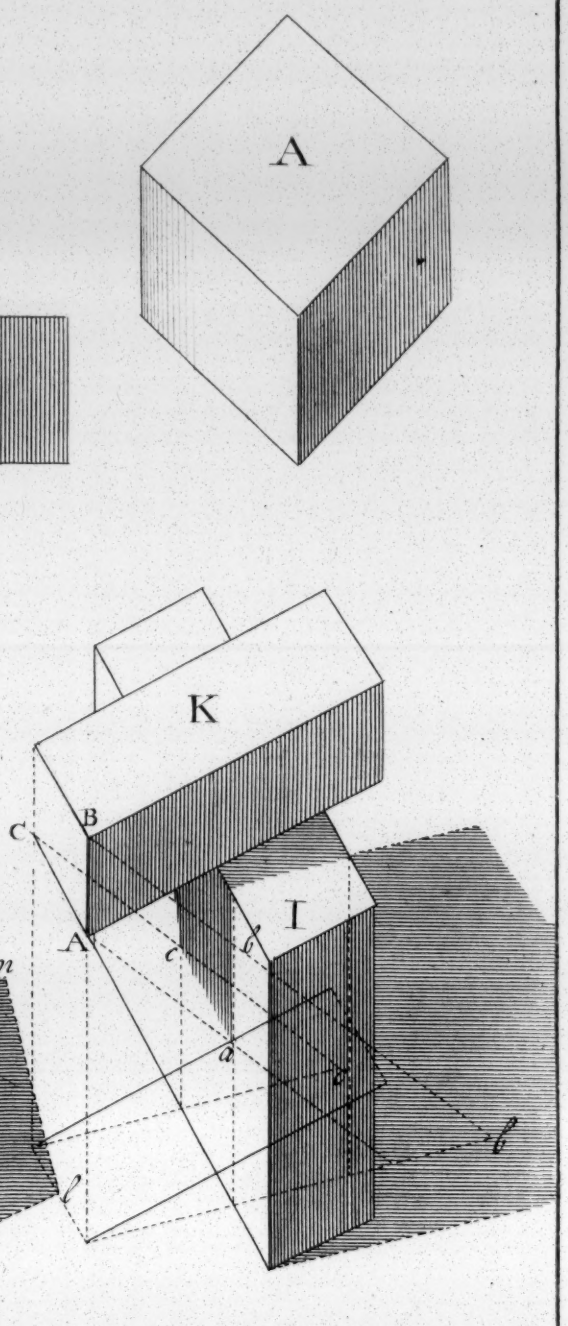
E. Oakley Delin

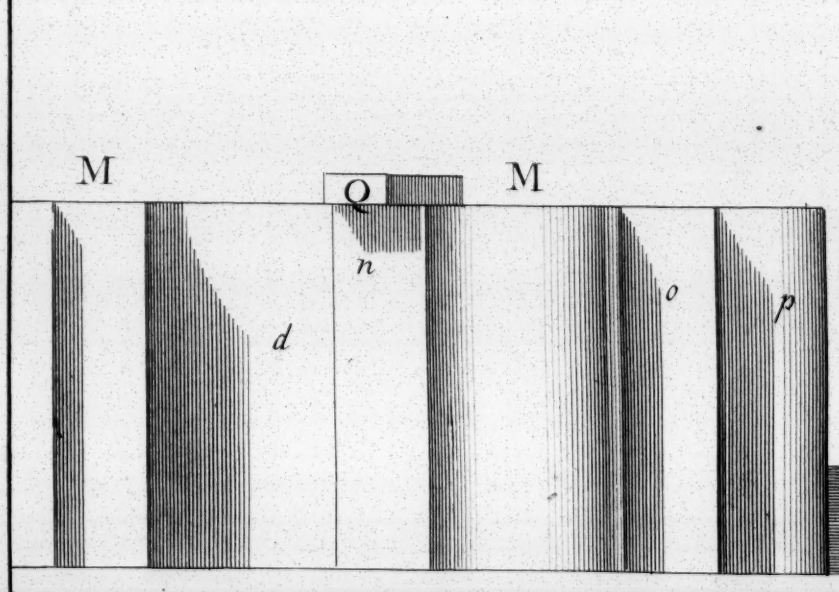
B. Cole. Sculp.

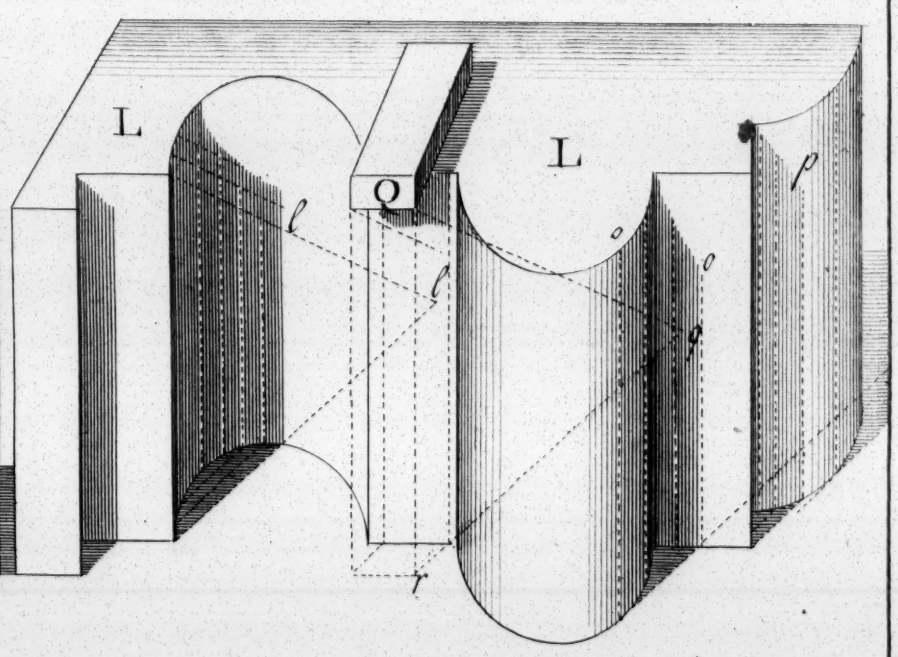
Plate LXXIIII.

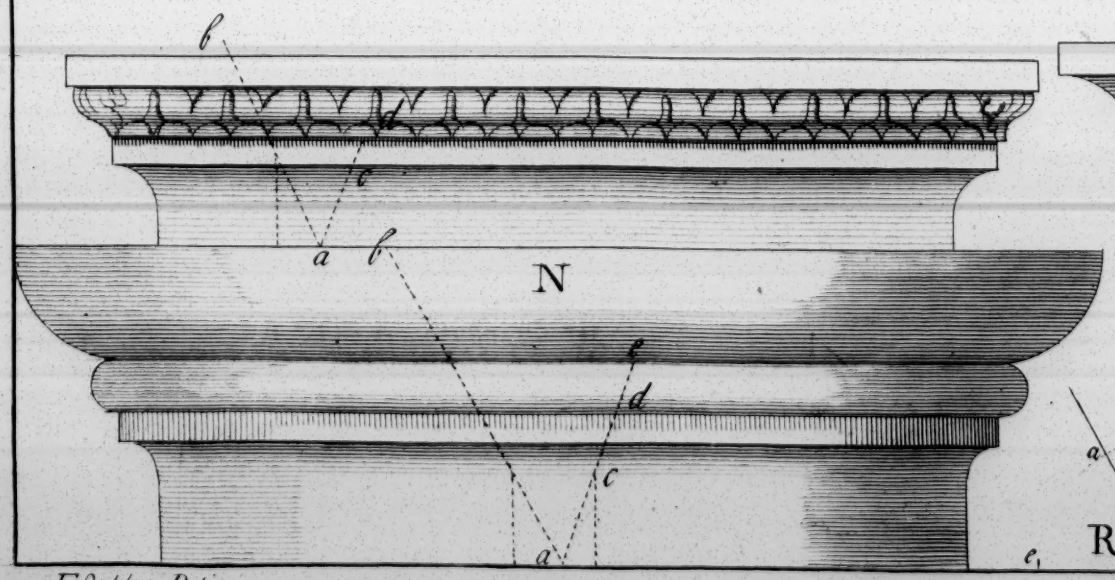


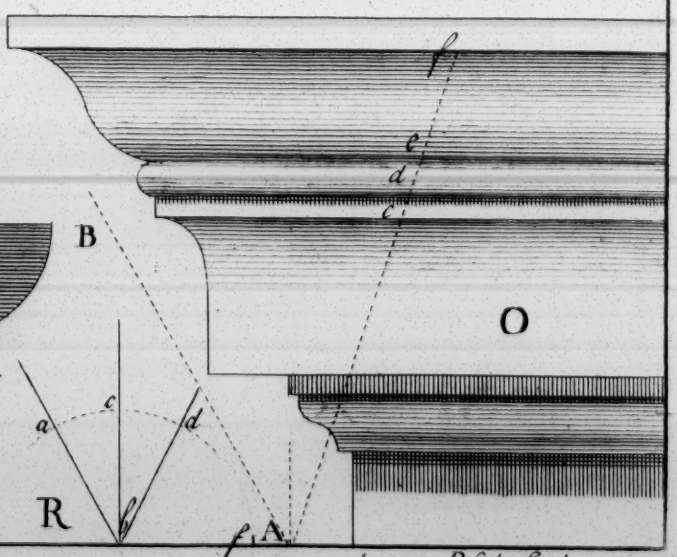












E. Oakley Delin.

B. Cole Sculp.

Plate 74.

To find on Geometrical Bodies, the Geometrical Places of their Lights, Shades and Shadows.

THE Cubes A, B, C, and Cylinders D E are two different Solids, repreſented Geometrically two Ways, the Solid C is the ſame as B or A, the Difference being only in the Deepning of the Shadows of thoſe of B and A, where thoſe Angles ſeem to jett forwards in that of C, by Reaſon of the Equality of theſe Lines. By the View of the Solids B and C, it muſt be obſerv'd, that to the End that the Object's drawn Geometrically may expreſs their Relievo, one muſt touch their circumſcribing Line-Shade and Shadow, ſtrong and weak, as in the *Perſpective*, which is found in the Horizontal Line.

The Triangular Priſm F, with its Shade *a, d, e*, and Shadow *a, b, c, d*, Upon a Ground flat and level; ſo that *a, b*, is one Half of the Elevation *a* B; and *e c* the Half of e C; and d f is the Half of f D; and theſe ſtreight Lines a b, e c, and f d, are parallel to each other, as are likewiſe the Elevations a B, f D, and e C.

G Is the ſame Solid of which the Shadow is equal to its Elevation: By the Interſection of the Lines, and conſequently of the Plans, one may eaſily diſcern the Method of finding the true Place of theſe Light, Shades and Shadows. The ſame is to be obſerved in the Line M M and L L, with the ſmall Solids Q Q upon them.

For the Impoſt P, the pointed oblique Parallels determine the Places, where the Lights and Shades touch on the Horizontal and Curves of the Members of the Profile A B C D.

For Reflection on the Plan.

THE Angle of Incidence, is that which is contain'd under the incident Ray and the Perpendicular to the Plane of the Point of Incidence, as a b c, in Fig. R. The Angle of Reflection is that which is contain'd under the reflected Ray, and the ſaid Perpendicular, as the Angle d b c, ſometimes a b e, and d b f, are called the Angles of Incidence and Reflection. The Angle of Incidence is always equal to that of Reflection.

As for Example on the Elevations N and O, the Sun directs its Light upon the Ground or Plane whereon it is ſituated, or on its projecting Members of a white or light Colour, the Rays reflecting from the Bottom to the Top, as B A, b a; they reflect from A towards c d e f: And thus theſe projecting Members c d e f and others tho' ſhaded, this Reflection will weaken or enlighten their Shade in Proportion, as they are nearer the Points of Reflection A a.

End of the Fourth Part.

PART V.

Leon Baptiſta Alberti

OF

STATUES.

I Have often thought with my ſelf, that the ſeveral Arts, whereby Men at firſt induſtriouſly ſet themſelves to expreſs, and repreſent by Work of Hand, the Shapes and Similitudes of Bodies, ſpringing from natural Procreation took their Beginning from the accidental Obſervation of certain Lineaments either in Wood, or Earth, or ſome other Sorts of Materials, by Nature ſo diſpoſed, that by altering or inverting ſome Thing or other in their Form, they appear'd capable of being made to reſemble the Figures and Shapes of living Creatures; and thereupon, having ſeriouſly conſider'd and examin'd what Courſe was beſt to take, they began with utmoſt Diligence and Induſtry to try and make Experiment, what was neceſſary to be added, or taken away, or in any other Kind perform'd, for the bringing of their Work to ſuch Pefection as might cauſe it exactly to reſemble the intended Form, appearing, as it were, the very ſame Thing; ever marking as they wrought, to ſee if they had fail'd in any Thing, and ſtill mending as they found Occaſion, ſometimes the Lines, ſometimes the Superficies, poliſhing and re-poliſhing, till at Length (not without Pleaſure and Satisfaction) they had accompliſh'd their Deſire: So that it is not a Thing ſo much to be admir'd, that by frequent Practice in Works of this Nature, the Fancies and Ingenuities of Men been from Time to Time improv'd, and advanced to that Height, that at laſt (without taking Notice of any rude Draughts in the Material they wrought upon, to help them in their intended Deſigns,) they became able by their Skill to deſign and expreſs upon it whatſoever Form they pleaſed, though in a different Manner, ſome one Way and ſome another; foraſmuch as all were not taught, or applied themſelves to proceed by the ſame Rule or Method. The Courſe that many take to bring their intended Figures to Perfection, is both by adding to, and taking from the Material; and this is the Way of thoſe that work in Wax, Plaiſter or Clay, who are therefore term'd *Maeſtri de ſtucco*; others proceed by taking away, and carving out of the Material that which is ſuperfluous, whereby it comes to paſs that they proceed out of whatſoever Maſs of Marble, the perfect Shape and Figure of a Man, which was there hiddenly but potentially before. and thoſe that work this Way we call Sculptors; next of Kin to whom are they that grave in Seals the Proportions of Faces, that before lay hid in the Matter out of which they were raiſed. The third Sort is of thoſe that perform their Work by only adding to the Materials as Silver-Smiths, who beating the Silver with Mallets, and diſtending it into thin Plates of what Faſhion or Size they think fit, lay thereupon their Superſtructure, adding and inlarging, till they have faſhion'd and brought to Perfection their intended Deſign. And here perhaps ſome may imagine, that in the Number of this laſt Sort of Artiſts Painters are to be reckon'd, as thoſe who proceed by Way of adding, namely by laying on of Colours; but to this they anſwer, that they do not ſtrive ſo much to imitate thoſe Lights and Shadows in Bodies which they diſcern by the Eye, by the adding or taking away of any Thing, as by ſome other Artifice proper and peculiar to their Way

of

of working: But of the Painter and his Art we ſhall take Occaſion to ſpeak elſewhere. Now, as to thoſe ſeveral Kinds of Deſigners which we have here before mentioned, tho' they go ſeveral Ways to Work, nevertheleſs they all direct their Aims to this End, namely, that their Labours may appear to him that ſhall well obſerve them, as Natural, and as like the Life as may be: For the bringing of which to Effect, it is moſt evident, thatby how much the more exquiſitely they follow ſome certain determined Rule or Method (which Rule we ſhall afterwards deſcribe) ſo much the fewer Defects will they be guilty of, ſo much the fewer Errors commit, and in all Manner of Accounts their Works will ſucceed and come off with the greater Advantage. What ſhall we ſay of Maſons, Carpenters, *&c.* what would they perform to any Purpoſe, if it were not for the Square, the Level, the Line, the Plum-Line, and the Compaſſes, for the deſcribing of Circles, *&c* and by the Means of which Inſtruments they deſign their Angles, their Perpendiculars, their Levels, and other their Proportions, thereby finiſhing and compleating all they take in Hand with the greater Exactneſs, and without which they would be able to do nothing ſubſtantially? Or can we rationally imagine, that the Statuary could perform ſuch excellent and admirable Works by chance, rather than by the Help of ſome certain and infallible Rule or Guide, drawn from Reaſon and Experience? Wherefore this we ſhall lay down as a Maxim; that from all Arts and Sciences whatſoever, there are drawn certain Principles, Rules, or natural Concluſions, which if we ſhall apply our ſelves with all Care and Diligence to examine and make Uſe of, we ſhall undoubtedly find the Benefit of, by the perfect Accompliſhment of whatſoever we take in Hand: For as we were firſt inſtructed by Nature, that from thoſe Lineaments which are found in Pieces of Wood, Earth, Stone or other Materials, may be drawn (as we ſaid before) the Forms of whatſoever Body or Creature the Concourſes of theſe Lines reſemble; ſo alſo the ſame Nature hath taught us certain Helps and Means, by which we are guided to proceed ſecurely and regularly in what we undertake, and by the conſtant obſerving and Uſe whereof, we ſhall moſt eaſily, with the greateſt Advantage, arrive at the utmoſt Perfection of the Art or Faculty we ſtrive to attain. It now remains that we declare what thoſe Helps are which Statuaries are chiefly to make Uſe of; and becauſe their principal Part is to make one Thing to imitate and reſemble another, it will be requiſite to ſpeak firſt of Reſemblance, a Subject our Diſcourſe might be abundantly ample in, ſince Reſemblance is a Thing ſo natural and obvious, that it offers it ſelf to our View and Obſervation in each viſible Object; not only every Animal, but even all Things whatſoever that are of the ſame Species, being in ſome reſpect or other correſpondent and alike: On the other Side, there are not in the whole Race of Mankind, any two to be found ſo exquiſitely reſembling each other, as not to differ ſome one Title in the Tone of the Voice, or the Faſhion of the Noſe, or of ſome other Part; to which we may add, that thoſe Perſons whom, having firſt beheld Infants, we come to ſee Children of ſome Growth, and afterwards at the Age of Manhood, if at length we meet them when grown Old, we ſhall find them ſo chang'd and alter'd by Time, that we ſhall not know them; for as much as the Aptitude and Poſition of thoſe numerous Lines and Features in the Countenance ſtill alters and varies from Time to Time, as Age comes on; nevertheleſs in the ſame Viſage there remains a certain natural and peculiar Form, which maintains and keeps up the Reſemblance inherent to the Species: But we ſhall wave theſe Things, as belonging rather to a particuiar Diſcourſe, and return to purſue what we firſt took in Hand to treat of.

The Deſign and Intention of making Reſemblances among Statuaries, I take to be two fold; the firſt is, that the Deſign or Work intended for the Reſemblance of any Sort of Creature (for Example, ſuppoſe it a Man) be ſo fram'd, that it come as near in Similitude as may be to the Species, without regarding whether it repreſent the Image of *Socrates* more than that of *Plato*, or any other known individual Perſon, ſince it is enough, that the Work reſembles a Man in general. The other Intention proceeds farther, and aims not only at the repreſenting the Likeneſs of Man in general, but of this or that particular Man; as namely of *Cæſar*, or *Cato*, not omitting to deſcribe the very Habit he wore, the Poſture he affected, and the Action he uſed; whether ſitting in his Tribunal,

or making Speeches to the People, it being the proper Buſineſs of thoſe who addict themſelves to this laſt Way of Repreſentation, to imitate and expreſs every Habit, Poſture and Air, peculiar to the Body of that known Perſon whom we intend to repreſent. Anſwerable to theſe two Intentions, (that we may handle the Matter as briefly as is poſſible) there are eſpecially required two Things; that is to ſay, Proportion, and Limitation. In treating therefore of theſe two Particulars, that which we have to do, is to declare, firſt what they are; next, to what Uſe they ſerve for the bringing of our Deſign to Perfection: Beſides which, I cannot but by the Way, take Notice of the great Benefit that is to be made of them, in reſpect of the wonderful and almoſt incredible Effects which they produce; inſomuch that whoſoever ſhall be well inſtructed in them, ſhall be able, by the Help of ſome certain infallible Marks, exactly to obſerve and point out the Lineaments, Situation and Poſiture of the Parts of any Body, tho' it were a thouſand Years after, ſo as not to fail to place it exactly at his Pleaſure, in the very ſame Direction and Poſture it ſhould have happen'd to have ſtood in before, and in ſuch Sort, as there ſhould not be the leaſt Part of the ſaid Body, which ſhould not be reduced and reſituated toward the very ſame Point of Heaven, againſt which it was originally directed: As if, for Example, you would point out the Place with your Finger where the Star *Mercury* or the new Moon would riſe, and it ſhould happen to riſe in a direct Angle over-againſt the Point of the Knee, Elbow, Finger, or any other Part; moſt certain it is, that by theſe Means and Helps all this may be done, and that ſo preciſely, that there ſhould not follow the leaſt Failing or Error imaginable; nor need there any Doubt be made of the Certainty hereof. Beſides this, ſuppoſe I ſhould take one of the Statues of *Phidias*, and ſo cover it over with Wax or Earth, that none of the Work could be diſcern'd, and that it ſhould appear to be only a mere ſhapeleſs Trunk, you might by theſe Rules and Helps certainly know how to find out in one Place, by boaring with a Wimble, the Pupil of the Eye, without doing it any Harm by touching it; and in another Place the Navil, and finally in another the the great Toe, and ſo other Parts in like manner; by which Means you will gain a perfect Knowledge of all the Angles and Lines, whether far diſtant one from another, or nearly concurring together: You may alſo, beginning which Way you will, and whether following the Original, or the Copy, not only Draw or Paint, but alſo put down in Writing, the various Courſe of the Lines, the Circumferences of the Circles, the Poſitions of the Parts, in ſuch ſort, that by the aforeſaid Helps and Means, you need not doubt the being able to produce with Eaſe, ſuch another Figure perfectly reſembling, and of what Size you pleaſe, either leſs, or juſt of the ſame Magnitude, or of an Hundred Fathoms in Length, nay, I dare be bold to ſay, that were there but Inſtruments to be had, anſwerable to ſo great a Deſign, it were not only not impoſſible, but even no hard Matter, to make one as big as the Mountain *Caucaſus*; and that which perhaps you may moſt wonder at, is, that according as the Matter might be ordered, one half of this Statue may be made in the Iſland of *Pharos*, and the other half wrought and finiſhed in the Mountains of *Carrara*; and that with ſuch exact Correſpondence, that the Jointures and Commiſſures of both Parts perfectly fitting each other, they may be united into one compleat Statue, reſembling either the Life, or the Copy after which it ſhall have been figur'd: And for the performing of this ſo ſtupendious a Work, the Manner and Method will appear ſo eaſy, ſo perſpicuous and expedite, that for my Part, I conceive it almoſt impoſſible for any to err, but thoſe that ſhall induſtriouſly, to make Tryal of the Proof of this Aſſertion, work contrary to the Rules and Method enjoin'd. We do not hereby undertake to teach the Way of making all kind of Reſemblances in Bodies, or the expreſſing of all thoſe various Aſpects which reſult from ſeveral differing and contrary Paſſions and Affections; ſince it is not the Thing which we profeſs to ſhew, how to repreſent the Countenance of *Hercules* when he combats with *Antæus*, with all the Height of Magnanimity and Fierceneſs which would be requiſite upon ſuch an Occaſion; or caſting an obliging, chearful and ſmiling Air, when he courts his *Deianira*, ſo that as the Countenance of the ſame *Hercules* ſhould upon ſeveral Occaſions be repreſented with as various Aſpects; but our Purpoſe is rather to take Notice of all the different Figures and Poſtures that are incident to a Body from the divers Situations, Geſtures or Motions of the ſeveral Members or Parts thereof; for as much as the Proportions and outward Lines are one Way terminated

ed in a Body that ſtands upright, another way in him that ſits, another Way in one that is lying down, another Way in thoſe that turn or incline themſelves toward this or that Side; and ſo in like manner in all other Geſtures and Motions of the Body, of which way of Repreſentation our Intention is at this Time; that is to ſay, in what Manner, and by what certain and infallible Rules, theſe Geſtures and various Diſpoſitions of the Body may be imitated and repreſented; which Rules, as we ſaid before, are reduced to two principal Heads, namely Proportion and Limitation: And firſt we ſhall treat of Proportion, which is indeed no other than a conſtant and certain Obſervation, by examining the juſt Number and Meaſures, what Habitude, Symmetry, and Correſpondence all the Parts of the Body have one towards another, and that in reſpect of every Dimenſion of the Body, both as to Length, Breadh, and Thickneſs.

This Obſervation is made by two Sorts of Inſtruments, a large Ruler, and two moveable Squares; with the Ruler we take the Lengths of the Parts, and with the Squares we take their Diameters, with all the other Proportions of the ſaid Meaſures. Upon this Ruler then, let there be a Line drawn of the Length of the Body which you would meaſure; that is to ſay, from the Crown of the Head to the Sole of the Foot: Whence note by the Way, that to meaſure a Man of a ſhort Stature, you are to uſe a ſhorter Ruler, and for one of a longer Stature, a longer Ruler: But whatſoever the Length of the Ruler be, it is to be divided into ſix equal Parts, which Parts we will name Feet; and each of theſe Feet ſhall again be divided into ten equal Parts, which we may term Inches.

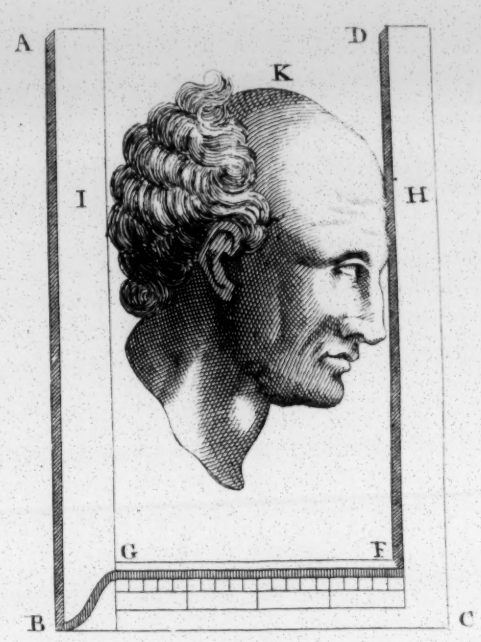
The whole Length therefore of this Foot Meaſure will conſiſt of ſixty Inches; every one of which is again to be ſub-divided into ten equal Parts, which leſſer Parts I call Minutes; ſo that thro' this Diviſion of our Meaſure into Feet, Inches and Minutes, the Total of the Minutes will amount to the Number of 600, there being in each of the ſix Feet 100. Now, for the meaſuring of a Man's Body by this Inſtrument, we are thus to proceed. Having divided our Ruler according to the foreſaid Manner, we are to meaſure and obſerve by the Application thereof, the Diſtances of the Parts of the ſaid Body; as for Inſtance, how high it may be from the Sole of the Foot to the Crown of the Head, or how far diſtant any one Member is from another; as how many Inches and Minutes it may be from the Knee to the Navel, or to the Cannel Bone of the Throat; and ſo in like manner any other Parts. Nor is this Courſe to be at all ſlighted or derided, either by Sculptors or Painters, ſince it is a Thing moſt profitable, and abſolutely neceſſary; for as much as the certain Meaſure of all the Parts being once known, we ſhall have gain'd a moſt eaſy and ſpeedy Determination how to proceed in our Work with any of the ſaid Parts or Members, without committing the leaſt Error: Never think it a Matter worth Regard or Notice, if any capricious Humouriſt ſhall peradventure find Fault that this Member is too long, or that too ſhort; ſince your Module or Foot Meaſure, (which is the Rule that muſt always direct and govern your Work, and than which you cannot go by a more infallible Guide,) will ſoon determine whether you have proceeded well or ill; and doubtleſs when you ſhall have maturely conſidered and examined theſe Things, you will not be to ſeek in thoſe infinite other Advantages wherein this Foot Meaſure will prove ſerviceable, eſpecially in knowing with abſolute Certainty, to limit and determine the Longitude of the Parts in a Statue of a greater Magnitude, as well as in one Leſſer.

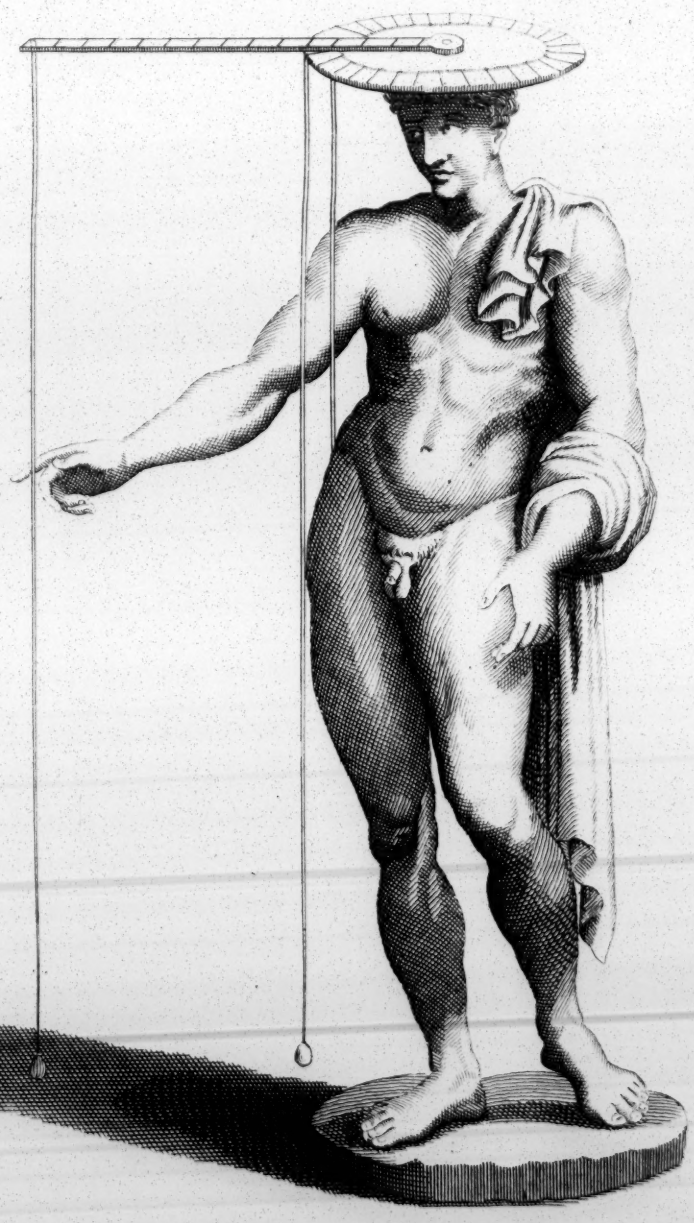
So as if it ſhould happen that you were to make a Statue of ten Cubits or whatever other Dimenſion, it would be requiſite to have your Ruler, or Foot Meaſure likewiſe of ten Cubits, and divided into ſix equal Parts, which ſhould have the ſame Correſpondence one with another, as theſe of the leſſer Ruler: In like manner, ſhould the Inches and Minutes be proportioned, whence alſo the Uſe and Manner of Working would be the ſame with the other, ſince half the Members of the Greater have the ſame Proportion to the whole intire, as half the Numbers of the Leſſer have to the whole intire of the Leſſer. Wherefore, according as the Size of your Work happens to fall out, your Ruler is to to be made proportionably.

We come next to treat of the Squares, which are to be two; the firſt of which ſhall be made after this Manner: Let two Rulers in the Nature of ſtreight Lines, *i. e.* A B and B C (*Plate* 75) be join'd together ſo as to make a right Angle; the firſt Ruler A B, falling perpendicular, the other B C, ſerving for the Baſe: The Bigneſs of theſe Squares is to be ordered, that their Baſes conſiſt of at leaſt fifteen Inches, according to the Proportion of your main Ruler, which as we have ſaid before, is to be made bigger or leſſer, anſwerable to the Proportion of the Body you would meaſure: Theſe Inches therefore with their Points and Minutes (however they may fall out) being taken exactly from the ſaid Ruler, you muſt ſet down upon your Baſe, beginning to reckon from the Point of the Angle B, and ſo proceeding on towards C.

The Square being thus marked and divided, as is to be ſeen in the Example A B C, there is to be adjoined unto it another Square made after the ſame manner, according as it is demonſtrated by the Letters D F G, ſo as that G F may ſerve both for ſtreight Line and Baſe to both. Now to ſhew the Uſe of theſe Inſtruments, I undertake to meaſure the Diameter of the thickeſt Part of the Head H I K, by bringing the two ſtreight Rulers A B and D F of each Square exactly oppoſite to each other, to touch the two oppoſite Points of the thickeſt Part of the Head, and by applying interchangeably to one and the ſame Level, the Baſe-Lines of the ſaid Squares; by which means, from the Points H I, which are touched by the ſtreight Rulers of the ſaid Squares, we ſhall diſcover the exact Diameter of the Head.

And after this manner, the Thickneſs and Bigneſs of any Part of the Body whatſoever, may, with great Eaſe and Accurateneſs be found out: Many Uſes and Advantages we could reckon up, which might be made of this Ruler and theſe Squares, were it needful to inſiſt now upon them, there being ſeveral other Ways, much after the ſame manner, which the meaneſt Capacity may of himſelf find out, for the meaſuring of the Diameter of any Part. As for Example, ſuppoſe one would know how much the Diameter of from one Ear to the other, and whereabouts it interſects the other Diameter, which paſſes from the Head to the Nuca, or the like. Laſtly, our Workman may ſafely make Uſe of this Ruler and theſe Squares as moſt faithful Guides and Counſellors, not only for the performing of any Part of his Work, but alſo at the very firſt and before he ſets upon it; he will receive much Light by the Help of theſe Inſtruments, how to begin and go about it; inſomuch, that there will not be the leaſt Part of the Statue he is to make, which he will not before have examined and conſidered, and rendered moſt eaſy and familiar to him. For Example, who but a very arrogant Perſon would take upon him to be a Maſter-Ship-Wright that had not the perfect Knowledge of all the ſeveral Parts of a Ship, and how one Kind of Ship differs from another, and what thoſe particular Parts are which belong to one Ship more than to another; And yet who is there of our Sculptors, let him be a Man never ſo ſubtile and experienc'd in his Art, who, if it ſhould be demanded of him, upon what Ground or Conſideration he has made this Member after this manner, or what may be the Proportion of this or that Member, ſo the whole Structure of the Body? I ſay, who is there ſo diligent and accurate as to have well conſidered and obſerved all that is requiſite, and which becomes that Perſon to know who would perform as he ſhould do the Art whereof he makes Profeſſion? whereas doubtleſly all Arts and Faculties are moſt advantageouſly learn'd by Rule and Method, and by the Knowledge of ſome demonſtrable Operation that is to be perform'd; nor ſhall any one attain to the Perfection of any Art whatſoever, who hath not firſt comprehended every ſeveral Part and Branch of the ſaid Art. But thus having ſufficiently treated of Meaſure and Proportion, and after what Manner it is to be found out by the Ruler and Squares, it remains that we ſpeak next of Limitation, or the preſcribing of Bounds: This Preſcription of Limits is the determining or fixing of a certain Period in the drawing of all our Lines, ſo as to direct to what Point they are to be continued, whether extended out in Length, or revers'd, how Angles are to be fix'd, how Parts are to be rais'd or depreſs'd, by Alto, or Baſſo Relievo, as Artiſts terms it, each Line, Angle and Relieve having their due and certain Places aſſign'd them





E. Oakley Delin. *B. Cole Sculp.*

them, by the Conduct of a ſure and perfect Rule: And the beſt Way to put this Rule of Limitation in Practice, will be by a Line and Plummet, falling from a certain determina e Center plac'd in the Middle, whereby the Diſtances and Extremities of all the Lines may be mark'd out and taken Notice of, as far as the utmoſt Bounds every way of the ſaid Body extends: But between the Meaſure deſcrib'd above, and this Aſſignation of Limits, there is this Difference, namely, that that Meaſure looks farther backward, and ſprings from a more Native and Original Conſideration, as grounded upon more common and univerſal Principles, which are by Nature more firmly and ſubſtantially inherent in all Bodies; as the Length, Largeneſs and Thickneſs of the Parts; whereas the preſcribing of Bounds is grounded upon the preſent and accidental Variety of Poſtures, reſulting from the different Diſpoſitions and Motions of the ſeveral Parts of the Body, ſhewing the Manner how to limit and faſhion thoſe Poſtures, according to the Maxims of Rule and Art.

Now, for the better Performance of this laſt Part of regular Operation, we ſhall recommend this following Inſtrument, which is to conſiſt of three Parts or Branches, that is to ſay, an Horizon, a Style, and a Plum: The Horizon is a Plane deſign'd upon a Circle, which Circle is to be divided into equal Parts, mark'd with their ſeveral Members, and their Sub-diviſions ſet over againſt each Part: The Style is a ſtreight Ruler, one End whereof is fix'd in the Center of the ſaid Circle, the other End moves about at Pleaſure, ſo as that it may eaſily be transferr'd and directed from one Diviſion of the Circle to another: The Plum or Plummet is a Line or Thread, which falls perpendicular from the Top of the Style down to the Floor or Plane, upon which the Statue or Figure ſtands, whoſe Members and Lineatures are to be meaſur'd and limited: For the Manner of making this Inſtrument let it be thus; take a Board well plain'd and ſmooth'd, upon which let a Circle be drawn, having three Foot Diameter, and let the Extremity of the ſaid Circle's Circumference be divided into equal Parts, which Parts we will call Degrees; and let every of the Degrees be ſub-divided again into as many other Parts as ſhall be thought fit; as for Example, ſuppoſe every Degree to be ſub-divided into ſix leſſer Parts, which we may call Minutes; to all which Degrees adjoin the ſeveral Numbers *viz.* 1, 2, 3, 4, with the reſt in Order, till the Numbers belonging to all the Degrees be ſet down This Circle, thus made and ordered, we call'd the Horizon, to which we are to fit our moveable Style, being alſo to be made after this Manner; Take a thin ſtreight Ruler three Foot in Length, and faſten one of the Ends thereof (with a Pegg) to the Center of its Horizon or Circle, in ſuch a manner, that tho' the ſaid End is not to be mov'd from the Center, yet the Pegg that faſtens it is ſo far to be relax'd, that the whole Ruler may have Liberty to move and play about from one Part of the Circle to another, whilſt the other Extream extends it ſelf a good way beyond the Circumference of the ſaid Circle about which it is to be mov'd: Upon this Ruler or Style, mark out the Inches it is to contain, diſtinguiſhing them with ſeveral Points between, after the manner of the Module or Foot Meaſure abovementioned; and theſe Inches muſt alſo be ſub-divided into leſſer equal Parts, as was likewiſe done in the foreſaid Foot Meaſure; and then beginning from the Center, adjoin to the Inches alſo their ſeveral Numbers, *viz.* 1, 2, 3, 4, *&c.* Laſtly, to this Style annex a Line and Plummet. This whole Inſtrument thus deſcribed, conſiſting of Horizon, Ruler, and Plummet, we ſhall call our Definitor.

This Definitor is to be made Uſe of in this manner: Suppoſe the Original or Copy, the Li nits of whoſe Parts we would determine, were a Statue of *Phidias*, holding with the Le t Hand, on one Side of a Chariot, the Raines of a Horſes Bridle: This Definitor is to be ſet upon the Head of the Statue in ſuch Sort, that it may lye exactly level upon the Plane of the Center, being plac'd juſt upon the very midſt of the Head of the Statue, where it is to be made faſt with a Pegg: Then note that Point where it is faſtned upon the Head of the Statue, and mark it by ſetting up a Needle or Pin for the Center of the Circle: Next, by turning the Inſtrument about from the determin'd Place in the Horizon, make out the firſt deſign'd Degree, ſo as you may know from whence it is mov'd;

which may beſt be done after this following manner: Bring about the moveable Ruler, which is the Style, upon which the Thread and Plummet hangs, till it arrive at that Place of the Horizon where the firſt Degree of the Horizon is to be ſet down; and holding it faſt there turn it about together with the whole Circle thereof, until the Line of the Plummet touch ſome principal Part of the Statue, that is to ſay, ſome Member particularly noted above all the reſt, as the Finger of the Right Hand or ſo; which may ſerve as the appointed Place, from whence, upon every new Occaſion, the whole Definitor may be mov'd, and afterwards brought back again to the ſame Place where it ſtood at firſt upon the ſaid Statue; yet ſo, that by the turning of the Style about the Pin, which pierceth from the Top of the Head of the Statue, thro' the Center of the Definitor, the Plummet which before fell from the firſt Degree of the Horizon, may return to touch the foreſaid Finger of the Right Hand. Theſe Things thus ordered and deſign'd, ſuppoſe that we would take the Angle of the right Elbow, ſo as to keep the Knowledge of it in Mind, or to write it down; the Way is as followeth: Fix the Definitor with its Center which is upon Head of the Statue, in the Place and Manner aforeſaid, in ſuch Sort, that the Plane whereon the Horizon is deſign'd, may ſtand firm and immoveable; then turn about the moveable Style, till the Line of the Plummet come to touch the left Elbow of the Statue which we would meaſure: But in the performing of this Sort of Operation there are three Things to be obſerved, which will much conduce to our Purpoſe: The firſt is, that we mark how far the Style in the Horizon comes to be diſtant from the Place where it ſhall have been firſt moved, taking Notice upon what Degree of the Horizon the Style lies, whether on the Twentieth, Thirtieth, or whatſoever other: Secondly, obſerve by the Inches, and Minutes mark'd in the Style, how far diſtant the Elbow ſhall be from the Center of the Circle. Laſtly, take Notice by placing the Module or Foot-Meaſure perpendicularly upon the Plane whereon the Statue ſtands, how many Inches and Minutes the ſaid Elbow is raiſed above the ſaid Plane, and write down theſe Meaſures in a Book or Piece of Paper: For Fxample, thus the Angle of the left Elbow is found in the Horizon to be ten Degrees and five Minutes; in the Style or Ruler ſeven Degrees and three Minutes; that of the Plane in the Module amounts to forty Degrees and four Minutes; and thus by the ſame Rule may be meaſured and computed all the reſt of the principal Parts of the ſaid Statue or Copy; as for Inſtance: The Angles of the Knees and of the Shoulders, and other ſuch like Parts that are to be reckoned among the Relievi: But if you would meaſure Concavities, or thoſe Parts which recede inward, and are ſo removed out of the Reach of Sight and eaſy Acceſs, that the Plummet-Line cannot come to touch them (as it happens in the Concavities beneath the Shoulders, in the Regions of the Reins, *&c.*) the beſt Way to find them is as follows: Add to the Style or Ruler another Plummet-Line which may reach as far as the ſaid Concavity; how far diſtant it be from the firſt, it is not material, ſince by theſe Plummet-Lines falling perpendicularly, and being interſected by the Gnomon of the plain Superficies above to which they are faſtned, and which extends it ſelf as far as the Center of the Statue, it will appear how much the ſecond Plummet-Line is nearer than the firſt to the Center of the Definitor, which is therefore called the middle Perpendicular.

Theſe Things thus demonſtrated, being once ſufficiently underſtood, it will be an eaſy Matter to comprehend what we before commended to your Obſervation; namely, that if the ſaid Statue ſhould chance to have been cover'd over to a certain Thickneſs with Wax or Earth, you might yet by a Piercer, with great Eaſe, Readineſs and Certainty come to find out whatſoever Point or Term you would deſire to find in the ſaid Statue; for as much as it may be clearly demonſtrated, that by the turning about of this Gnomon, the Level makes a circular Line like the Superficies of a Cylinder, with which Sort of Figure the Statue ſo ſuper-induc'd as aforeſaid, ſeems to be incloſed and incircled: This Poſition eſtabliſhed, you may ſafely infer, that as by making Way through the Air, (the Statue not being covered with Wax or Earth) you guide your Piercer directly towards the Point T, (which for Example's Sake we will ſuppoſe to be the Relievo of the Chin) by the ſame Reaſon, if the Statue were covered with Wax or Earth, might you by boaring thro' the ſaid Wax or Earth attain the Point aim'd at, the Wax or Earth poſſeſſing but the ſame

Place

Place, which otherwiſe the Air would have done: From what hath been thus diſcours'd concerning theſe Things, it may be concluded that the Effect we mentioned before concerning the making of one Half of the Statue in the Iſle of *Pharos*, and finiſhing the other Half in the Mountains of *Carrara*, is a Thing not only not impoſſible, but very eaſy to be perform'd; for let the ſaid Statue or Model of *Phidias* be divided into two Segments; and ſuppoſe, for Example, this Section of a plain Superficies be made in the Waſt or Girdling Place; doubtleſs, by the only Aſſiſtance of our Definitor, it will be eaſy to mark out in the Circle of the Inſtrument whatſoever Points ſhall be thought fit, belonging to the divided Superficies: Theſe Things granted to be feaſible, you ſhall not need to make any Queſtion of being able to find out at Pleaſure in the Model, any Part whatſoever you ſhall deſire to find; and that only by drawing a ſmall red Line in the Model, which ſerves inſtead of an Interſection of the Horizon, in the Place where this Segment ſhould terminate, if the Statue were divided; and the Points ſo mark'd will direct you the Way how the Work may be finiſh'd: And in like manner may other Things be done, as hath been ſaid before. Finally, by the whole Diſcourſe here made concerning all theſe Particulars, it is ſufficiently evident that all Meaſures, Proportions and Limitations are to be taken, whether in the Life, or Copy, by a moſt certain and infallible Rule for the bringing of any Work to Perfection in this Art; and we could wiſh that this Way of proceeding were more ſeriouſly intended by all our Painters and Sculptors, ſince, if it were, they would ſoon come to find the extraordinary Benefit of it: But becauſe all Things are moſt illuſtrated by Example, and that the Pains we have already taken in this Matter may conduce to the greater Advantage; we have thought fit to beſtow yet a little farther Labour in deſcribing the Meaſures of all the principal Parts in Man's Body; and not only the Parts of this or that particular Man, but as far as was poſſible, even the very Perfection of all beautiful and excellent Proportions; the ſeveral Parts whereof having obſerved in ſeveral humane Bodies, ſome excelling chiefly in this, ſome in that external Gift of Nature, we have thought material to ſet down in Writing; following the Example of him who being employed by the *Crotoniati* to make the Statue of their Goddeſs, went about collecting from the moſt beautiful Virgins (whom among many, he with great Diligence ſearch'd out) thoſe Proportions and handſome Features wherein each of them principally excell'd, and apply'd them to his own Statue, ſince much after the ſame manner we, having taken the Draught from thoſe Bodies, that of divers others were judg'd, by the moſt ſagacious in this Enquiry, to be the moſt exactly built and compos'd with all their ſeveral Meaſures and Proportions; and comparing them exactly together, wherein they excell'd, or were excell'd each by the other, have made Choice out of this Variety of Models and Examples, of thoſe middle Proportions which ſeem'd to us moſt agreeable, and which we have here ſet down by the Lengths, Bigneſſes, and Thickneſſes of all the principal and moſt noted Parts; and in the firſt Place the Lengths are theſe following.

The Heights from the Ground.

	Feet	Deg.	Min.
The greateſt Height from the Ground to the Inſtup of the Foot,	0	3	0
The Height up to the Ancle Bone on the Out-ſide of the Leg,	0	2	2
The Height up to the Ancle Bone on the In-ſide of the Leg,	0	3	1
The Height up to the Receſs which is under the Calf of the Leg,	0	8	5
The Height up to the Receſs which is under the Relievo of the Knee Bone within,	1	4	3
The Height up to the Muſcle on the Out-ſide of the Knee,	1	7	0
The Height up to the Burtocks and Teſticles, - -	2	6	9
The Height up the Os ſacrum, - - -	3	0	0
The Height up to the Joint of the Hips, - -	3	1	1
The Height up to the Navel, - - -	3	6	0
The Height up to the Waſt, - - -	3	7	9
The Height up to the Teats and Blade-Bone of the Stomach, -	4	3	5

	Feet	Deg.	Min.
The Height up to the Part of the Throat where the Weezle Pipe beginneth,	5	0	0
The Height up to the Knot of the Neck where the Head is ſet on,	5	1	0
The Height up to the Chin,	5	2	0
The Height up to the Ear,	5	5	0
The Height up to the Roots of Hairs of the Fore-head,	5	9	0
The Height up to the Top of the Crown of the Head (or 6 Heads four ſevenths)	6	1	3 1/3
The Height up to the middle Finger of a Hand that hangs down,	2	3	0
The Height up to the Joint of the Wriſt of the ſaid Hand,	3	0	0
The Height up to the Joint of the Elbow of the ſaid Hand,	3	8	5
The Height up to the higheſt Angle of the Shoulder.	5	1	8

The Amplitudes or Largeneſſes of the Parts, are meaſured from the Right Hand to the Left.

The greateſt Breadth of the Foot,	0	4	2
The greateſt Breadth of the Heel,	0	2	3
The Breadth of the fulleſt Part beneath the Jettings out of the Ancle-Bones,	0	2	4
The Receſs or falling in above the Ancles	0	1	5
The Receſs of the Mid-Leg under the Muſcle or Calf,	0	2	5
The greateſt Thickneſs of the Calf,	0	3	5
The Falling in under the Relievo of the Knee-Bone,	0	3	5
The greateſt Breadth of the Knee-Bone,	0	4	0
The Falling in of the Thigh above the Knee,	0	3	5
The Breadth of the middle or biggeſt Part of the Thigh,	0	5	5
The greateſt Breadth among the Muſcles of the Joint of the Thigh,	1	1	1
The greateſt Breadth between the two Flanks above the Joints of the Thigh,	0	0	0
The Breadth of the largeſt Part of the Breaſt beneath the Arm Pits,	1	1	5
The Breadth of the largeſt Part between the Shoulders	1	5	0
The Breadth of the Neck.	0	0	0
The Breadth between the Cheeks,	0	4	8
The Breadth of the Palm of the Hand.	0	0	0

The Breadth and Thickneſs of the Arms, differ according to the ſeveral Motions thereof, but the moſt common are theſe following.

The Breadth of the Arm at the Wriſt,	0	2	3
The Breadth of the Brawny Part of the Arm under the Elbow,	0	3	2
The Breath of the Brawny Part of the Arm, above between the Elbow and the Shoulder.	0	4	0

The Thickneſs from the Fore Parts to the Hinder Parts.

The Length from the great Toe to the Heel,	1	0	0
The thickneſs from the Inſtup to the Angle or Corner of the Heel,	0	4	3
The falling in of the Inſtup,	0	3	0
From the falling in under the Calf to the middle of the Shin,	0	3	6
The Out-ſide of the Calf of the Leg,	0	4	0
The Out-ſide of the Pan of the Knee,	0	4	0
The thickneſs of the biggeſt Part of the Thigh,	0	6	0
From the Genitals to the higheſt Riſing of the Buttocks,	0	7	5
From the Navel to the Reins,	0	7	0
The thickneſs of the Waſt,	0	6	6
From the Teats to the higeſt riſing of the Reins of the Back,	0	7	5
From the Weezle Pipe to the Knot or Jointure of the Neck,	0	4	0
From the Forehead to the hinder Part of the Head,	0	6	4

	Feet	Deg.	Min.
From the Forehead to the Hole of the Ear, - -	0	0	0
The thickneſs of the Arm at the Wriſt of the Hand, - -	0	0	0
The thickneſs of the B awn of the Arm under the Elbow, -	0	0	0
The thickneſs of the Brawn of the Arm between the Elbow and the Shoulder,	0	0	0
The greateſt thickneſs of the Hand, - -	0	0	0
The thickneſs of the Shoulders. - - -	0	3	4

By means of theſe Meaſures, it may eaſily be computed what Proportions all the Parts and Members of the Body have one by one to the whole Length of the Body; and what Agreement and Symmetry they have among themſelves, as alſo how they vary or differ from one another; which things we certainly conclude moſt profitable and fit to be known: Nor were it from the Purpoſe to particularize how the Parts vary and alter, according to the ſeveral Geſtures incident to humane Bodies as, whether they be ſitting, or inclining to this, or that Side: But we ſhall leave the more curious Diſquiſition into theſe Things, to the Diligence and Induſtry of our Artiſt. It would alſo be of very much Conducement, to be well informed of the Number of the Bones, the Muſcles and Riſings of the Nerves; and eſpecially to know how, by certain Rules, to take the Circumferences of particular Diviſions of Bodies, ſeperately conſidered from the reſt, by an Inſpection into thoſe Parts which are not outwardly expoſed to Sight: In like manner, as if a Cylinder ſhould be cut down right thro' the Middle, ſo as out of that Part of the Cylinder which is viſible throughout, there ſhould be ſeparated, by a circular Section thro' the whole Length of the Figure, an inward conſimilar Part which was before unſeen, ſo as to make of the ſame Cylinder two Bodies, whoſe Baſes ſhould be alike, and of the ſame Form, as being indeed wholly comprized within the ſame Lines and Circles throughout: By the Obſervation of which Sort of Section is to be underſtood the manner of Separation of the parts and Bodies before intimated; foraſmuch as the Deſign of the Line by which the Figure is terminated, and by which the viſible Superficies is to be ſeparated from that which lies hid from the Sight, is to be drawn juſt in the ſame manner; and this Deſign being delineated on a Wall, would repreſent ſuch a Figure as would be much like a Shadow projected thereupon from ſome interpoſing Light, and which ſhould illuminate it from the ſame Point of the Air, where at firſt the Beholder's Eye was placed: But this Kind of Diviſion or Separation, and the way of deſigning Things after this manner, belongs more properly to the Painter than the Sculptor, and in that Capacity we ſhall treat of them more largely elſewhere: Moreover, it is of main Concernment to whatſoever Perſon would be eminent in this Art, to know how far each Relievo or Receſs of any Member whatſoever is diſtant from ſome determined Poſition of Lines.

Jo. Paul Lomatius

OF

STATUES.

Of the External Parts of Man's Body.

MY Purpoſe is in this Place, for our better Underſtanding, to name all the External Parts and Members of Man's Body; for theſe are neceſſary for a Painter, or Statuary in the Uſe of the Proportions following.

Now the higheſt Part (as all Men know) is called the Head, the fore Part thereof, the Forehead; the Turning of the Hair, the Crown; the Root of the Hair above the Forehead, the Center; the Hair which groweth before, the Foretop; the parting of the Hair beginning at the Forehead, and reaching to the Crown, is called the dividing or Seam; Womens long Hair is Coma; that which buſheth out, Ceſſaries, or the Buſh; thoſe which run together in one Place, Feakes; thoſe which are prettily involved together, ſtrizled, thoſe which are full of Curls, curled; the long Hair in the Pole, Cuticagna; or the Pole-Locks: The Forehead containeth all the Space between the Root of the Hair before, and the Eye-Brows; the Pulſe is the higheſt Part of the Forehead, ending with the Hair; Melone, is that Swelling out in the Forehead above the Eye-Brows; the Temples lie betwixt the Pulſe, the Forehead, and the Ear; the Ear is that Turning, which is contained between the Temples, the upper Part of the Cheek, and the Root of the Hair by the Side of the Head, the lower Part whereof is called the Tip or Lippet; in the Midſt whereof, is the Hole, where the Sound entreth in, called in *Italian* Mirenga; the Eye-Brows are thoſe thick Hairs at the Bottom of the Forehead; the Space between the Eye-Brows, the *Italians* call Glabella; the upper Eye-Lid is that little Part which compaſſeth the upper Part of the Eye; the Eye is that round Ball, which is contained between the upper and the lower Eye-lid; the Black of the Eye, is the round Spot in the midſt of that little Circle, by Virtue whereof we ſee, and is called the Apple or Sight of the Eye; the outward Corner of the Eye, is that which is next to the Ear, called Cornice; the inner, is that which is towards the Noſe; all the Space between the upper Eye-Lid, the outward Corner of the Eye, and the whole Turning of the Eye, to the upper Part of the Cheek; and the Glabella, is called the Caſe or Hollow of the Eye; the Noſe is contained between the Cheeks, deſcending from betwixt the Eyes, and endeth at the Noſtrils; the Noſtrils are thoſe two Prominencies which hang out on each Side of the Bottom thereof, each whereof hath a Hole or Paſſage whereby we ſmell, and is termed Papilla in *Italian*; the lower End of the Noſe which ſtandeth forwards, is called the Top or Point; the Riſing in the midſt, the Ridge or Griſtle; the upper Cheek is that Space between the Ear, the Hollow of the Eye, the Noſe, and the lower Cheek, whereof the Part riſing towards the Eye, is named Mellone, or the Bale; the lower Cheek is bounded with the upper, the Noſtrils, the Mouth, the Chin, to the Throat, and the Neck under the Ear; the upper Lip is that red Piece of Fleſh

above

above the Mouth called alſo Vergine; the Mouth is that Diviſion which is between the upper and the nether Lips, which is red like the other; that Concavity which cometh down from the Bottom of the Noſe to the upper Lip, is the Gutter of the Noſe; the Roof of the Mouth is called the Palate; the Tongue is that which moveth in the Mouth, in *Italian*, Strozza; the Paſſage between the Lungs and the Mouth, through which the Breath paſſeth, is the Wind-Pipe; the Gum is that ſpotted Fleſh in which the Teeth are faſtened, the four firſt whereof are called Dividers, next unto which on each Side, are the Dog-Teeth; the other Five on each Side with three Roots, are the Grinders or Cheek-Teeth; ſo that the full Number of the Teeth are thirty two: The Chin or Place of the Beard is the Extremity beneath the Lip, and the End of the Face, whoſe Beginning is at the Root of the Hair; the hinder Part under the Crown ſome do call Gnucca, or the Nape or Nolle; as alſo the upper Part where the Hairs grow behind, is the Beginning of the Neck, and is called Cervix; thoſe long Hairs which grow under the Chin about the Mouth, and upon the lower Cheek towards the Hair near the Ear, are call'd by a general Name the Beard; thoſe upon the upper Lip, the Moſtachiums.

The Throat is the Part betwixt the Chin and the Beginning of the Body or Trunk, in the midſt whereof directly under the Chin, is that Riſing which is called the Throat-Bone; the Concavity of the Neck before, between the End of the Throat, the Clavicolæ and the Beginning of the Breaſt, is the Throat-Pit; the Neck is that Part behind, between the Root of the Hair and the Beginning of the Back-Bone, which on either Side is joined with the Throat, and at the lower End of the Neck with the Shoulders, whereof the Bone in the midſt is called Aſtragalus, or the Bone of the knitting of the Neck with the Shoulders; the whole Trunk or Body before, containeth in it, firſt the upper Fork of the Stomach or Breaſt, which beginneth at the End of the Throat-Pit; the Breaſts or Paps end with the ſhort Ribbs, and are alſo called the Part under the Paps; *&c.* In Women they are called Duggs, *&c.* the Heads or Extuberancies whence the Milk is ſucked out, are called Nibles; the Space between the Breaſts or Duggs at the lower Fork of the Breaſt, is the Bulk; the Arm-Pits are thoſe hollows under the Arms where the Hairs grow; the ſhort Ribbs begin at the End of the Paps, and reach to the Flanks near the Belly; the Flanks begin at the End of the Breaſts, and are alſo called the Waſt, the upper Part of the Belly lieth between the hollow of the Breaſt, the Waſt above the Navel, and the Ribbs, and is alſo called Epa; the Knitting of the Intrals is called the Navel; the Paunch lieth between the Waſt, the Privities and the Flanks, and is alſo called the Belly, eſpecially in Women; where the Hairs grow under the Belly, is the Privities; the hollow Compaſs at the Top, is called Corona; the Place thro' which the Urine paſſeth, the Hole; the two little Balls which hang under the Yard, the Stones; the Privities of a Woman, are called, *&c.*

The hinder Part of the Body called the Back or Chine, conſiſteth firſt of the Shoulder-Blade, which is the Part behind; the Shoulders end with Part of the Chine and Loins; the reſt of the Back reacheth down along from the Neck, to the Beginning of the Cliſt of the Buttocks; the Loins lie between the Shoulder Blades; the Ribbs, and the reſt of the Chine to the Reins or Waſt; the Reins reach from the Loins to the Buttocks, and do properly belong to the Part below the Waſt, or Girdle-Steed; the Buttocks are that fleſhly Part which ſerveth us for the Uſe of Sitting.

The Arm containeth firſt the Shoulder, behind which is the Back, beginning at the Clavicolæ, between the Neck and the Throat, and reacheth to the Shoulder-Blade behind, which Place is properly called the Back; the Part of the Arm from the Elbow upwards, is called the upper Brawn of the Arm; the Elbow is the Bowing of the Arm, the Inſide whereof is the Joint, and here the lower Part of the Arm beginneth; the Wriſt is where the Arm is joined to the Hand in the Inſide; the Palm is the Inſide of the Hand between the Wriſt and the Fingers; the Thumb is the biggeſt and ſhorteſt of all the Fingers: the Fore-Finger is next to the Thumb; the Middle-Finger is that which ſtandeth in the Midſt, and is longer than the reſt; next unto this is the Ring-Finger; the Ear-Finger or Little-

Finger is the leaſt and laſt of all. The Fingers have alſo other Names given them by the Cheiromancers: As from the Hill of *Venus*, the Thumb is called *Venus*, and ſo forth; the Fore-Finger *Jupiter*, the Middle-Finger *Saturn*, the Ring-Finger *Sol*, and the Little-Finger *Mercury*, the Brawn in the Palm of the Hand, the Hill of the *Moon*; the Triangle in the midſt of the Palm, the Hill of *Mars*.

And now to the Fingers whoſe Joints are as it were even in Number according to their Bigneſs, namely three upon each of them, ſave the Thumb, which hath only two; the hinder Part of the Arm reacheth from the End of the Shoulder or Arm-Pit to the Elbow, where alſo the ſecond Part of the Arm beginneth, reaching to the Wriſt-Joint; the Back of the Hand reacheth from the Wriſt, to the firſt Joints of the Fingers and is called Pecten; the Spaces between the Joints are called Internodi, which are two upon each Finger, except the Thumb, which hath but one. In the Space between the laſt Joint and the Top of the Finger is the Nail, whoſe bowing is called Corona, (I mean where it toucheth the Fleſh or Skin) the whole Hand beginneth at the Wriſt, and reacheth to the Top or Extremity of the Fingers.

The Leg conſiſteth of theſe: Firſt, the Thigh, which beginneth at the Trunk of the Body, and endeth at the Knee; the Hollow of the Thigh, is the inner Side thereof below the Privities; the Knee beginneth at the round Bone at the End of the Thigh, and reacheth down to the Beginning of the Shin Bone, which reacheth down clean through the Leg, to the Inſtup; the Inſtup beginneth at the End of the Shin Bone, and reacheth to the Beginning of the Toes, and is called Pecten, or the upper Part of the Foot; the Ancle is that Bone, which buncheth out on each Side between the Inſtup and the Beginning of the Heel; the Small of the Leg, is the Space between the End of the two Calves above, and the Ancle, Inſtup, and Heel below; the Pit of the Foot is the hollow under the Hill or higher Bunch of the Foot towards the Sole; the Toes have alſo Joints as the Fingers, tho' they be ſomewhat ſhorter, and have Nails in like manner, but are otherwiſe called than the Fingers: As, the Firſt, the Second, the Third, the Fourth, and the Fifth. The hinder Part of the Leg beginneth under the Buttock, and is called the Thigh, and endeth at the hinder Part of the Knee, called the Ham or Bending; the Calves of the Legs begin under the Ham, and are two upon each Leg; the outward, which endeth ſomewhat high, and the inward, which reacheth nearer to the Small of the Leg, which diminiſheth by Degrees, to the Part a little above the Ancle; the Heel is that Part of the Foot which riſeth out backwards, reaching from the End of the Leg, to the Bottom of the Foot, called the Sole, which beginneth at the End of the Heel, and reacheth to the Top of the Toes; containing likewiſe the Spaces between the Joints underneath orderly. And thus much may ſuffice for the Names of the external Parts of the Body.

A Body of Seven Heads is thus meaſured.

In Length,

Between the	Farts.		
	10 11	Throat Pit and the	Top of the Head
	0		Crown of the Head
	10	Chin and the	Root of the Hair
	0		Forehead
	30	Root of the Hair & the	Eye-Brows
	0		Ears
	30	Eye-Brows and the	Noſe
	7	Top of the Head & the	Chin and Throat
	0		Neck

In Breadth,

At the	Adv.	Tranſ.	Aver.
	0	0	0
	10	9	0
	8	14 15	0
	0	0	0
	9	7	0
	8	0	0
	10	8	0
	12	8	0
	0	12	0

Top

Length, In			Breadth,			
Parts.			Adv.	Tranſ.	Aver.	
11 11	Top of the Head & the	Top of the Shoulders	0	0	0	
10 11	—— ——	Throat-Pit	5	9	0	
30	Throat Pit and the	Top of the Breaſt	10*	13 13	0	* 10 10
13	—— ——	Arm Pits	5	6	4	
0	—— —— ——	Paps	0	0	0	
10	—— ——	Teats	15 15	6	0	
8	—— ——	Under the Paps	0	12 13	0	
11 11	—— ——	Waſt	5	12 13	0	
40	Waſt and the	Navel	0	0	0	
30	—— ——	Hollow of the Hips	9 &*	6	0	* 19 19
10	—— ——	Top of the Hips	4	11 12	0	
0	—— ——	Between the Joints	6	0	0	
0	—— ——	Bottom of the Belly	0	0	0	
8	—— ——	Privities	4	11 12	0	
6	—— ——	End of the Codds	0	0	0	
10 11	—— ——	Buttocks-End	17 17	7	8	
18	That and the	Hollow of the Thigh	10	14 15	0	
21	Mid-knee and the	Outward-knee } above	12	10	0	
0	—— ——	Inward-knee } above	0	0	0	
0	—— ——	Mid-knee	14	12	0	
0	—— ——	Under the K. { without	26 26	0	0	
40	Mid-knee and the	Under the K. { within	0	12	0	
8	Mid-knee and the	Calf { inward	14	13	0	
19 19	Mid-knee and the	Calf { outward	0	0	0	
0	—— ——	Mid-Leg or Calf	22 24	20 21	0	
0	—— ——	Small	27	0	0	
20	Sole of the Foot and the	Inſtup	0	13	0	
28	Sole of the Foot and the	Ancle	22	0	0	
0	—— ——	Heel	0	0	24	
0	—— ——	Toes	15	0	0	
0	—— ——	Sole	0	6	0	
		The Arm.				
11 11	Elbow and the	Top of the Shoulder	0	21 21	0	
10	Shoulder & the Brawn	Near the Arm Pits	18	13	0	
0	—— ——	Elbow	21	18	0	
0	—— ——	Brawn below the Elb.	16	18	0	
9 *	Top of the Mid-Finger and the	Wriſt	25	32	0	* or 10
0	—— ——	Palm	15	30	0	
4	Elbow and the	Top of the Fingers	0	0	0	

A Body of Eight Heads is thus measured.

Length, In			Breadth, Adv.	Tranſ.	Aver.
Parts.					
2	Privities and the	Top of the Head	0	0	0
10	Chin and the	Root of the Hair	0	10	0
30	Root of the Hair & the	Forehead ——	9	0	0
30	Forehead and the	Eye-Brows ——	10	8	0
0	—— ——	Ears ——	17 17	0	0
30	Eye-Brows and the	Noſe ——	12	9	0
8	Top of the Head & the	Chin ——	16	10	0
0	—— ——	Beginning of the Thr.	0	16	0
0	—— ——	Neck ——	0	14	0
0	—— ——	Top of the Shoulders	0	12	0
0	—— ——	Joints of the Shoulders	11 12	0	5
6	Top of the Head & the	Throat-Pit ——	6	12	0
0	—— ——	Top of the Breaſt	4	7	0
14	Throat-Pit and the	Arm-Pits ——	6	0	0
0	—— ——	Paps —— ——	0	0	0
10	Throat-Pit and the	Teats ——	9	7	0
0	—— ——	Under the Paps	0	14 15	0
3	Top of the Head & the	Waſt ——	13 13	16 17	0
29	Waſt and the	Navel ——	0	17 18	0
18	Waſt and the	Hollow of the Hips	6	8	0
20 18	Waſt and the	Top of the Hips	10 11	7	0
0	—— ——	Betw. the Jts. of the H.	14 15	0	0
0	—— ——	Bottom of the Belly	0	0	0
13 13	Waſt and the	Privities	0	15 15	0
40	Extr. of the But. & the	End of the Codds	0	0	0
0	—— ——	Buttocks ——	0	0	10
10 11	Waſt and the	Extremity of the But.	11	9	0
15	Extr. of the But. & the	Hollow of the Thigh	13	19 20	0
30	Mid-Knee and the	Outward-Knee above	16	14	0
0	—— ——	Inward-Knee above	0	0	0
4	Ancle and the	Mid-Knee ——	18	15	0
30	Mid-knee and	Under the Kn. without	20	16	0
0	—— —— ——	Under the Kn. within	0	0	0
9	That and the	Outward-Calf	0	17	0
0	—— ——	Mid-Leg ——	15	13	0
15 16	Mid-Knee and the	Inward-Calf ——	20	0	0
0	—— —— —	Small of the Leg	34	0	0
21	Sole of the Foot & the	Inſtup ——	0	24	0
27	Sole of the Foot & the	Ancle ——	27	0	0
0	—— —— ——	Heel —— ——	0	0	28
0	—— ——	Toes — — —	16	0	0
0	—— ——	Sole of the Foot	0	6	0

Between the

At the

From the End of the But. to the end of the Cods 40 which *Dur.* hath, & is omitted by my Author.

The

The Arm.

In

Length, Between the	Parts.			Breadth, At the	Adv.	Tranſ.	Aver.
	5	Elbow, and the	Top of the Shoulder,		0	13	0
	0	—— ——	Under the Armpits,		24	17	0
	0	——	Elbow,		26	24	0
	4	Elbow, and the	Top of the Midfinger,		0	0	0
	10	Top of the Midfinger, to the	Wriſt,		30	40	0
	0	—— ——	Brawn below the Elbow,		19	22	0
	10	——	Palm,		16	34	0

The Proportion of a young Man of Nine Heads.

I am of Opinion, that *Francis Mazzolinus* would have proved the only rare Man of the World, if he had never painted any other kind of Pictures (as Rude, Groſs and Melancholy) than theſe ſlender ones, wnich he repreſented with an admirable Dexterity, as being naturally inclined thereto; ſo that if he had only repreſented *Apollo*, *Bacchus*, the *Nymphs*, &c. He had ſufficiently warranted this his moſt acceptable Proportion, which was ever ſlender, and oftentimes too ſlight. But when he took upon him to expreſs the Prophets, our Lady, and the like, in the ſame, as appeareth by his *Moſes* at *Parma*, our Lady at *Ancona*, and certain Angels not far from thence; and divers other Things quite contrary to the Symetry they ought to have; he gave a precedent to all other Painters to ſhun the like Error; which himſelf might alſo have eaſily avoided; being reputed little Inferior to *Raphael Urbine*, whom he might have propoſed to himſelf as a Patern: for *Raphael* ever ſuited his Perſonages anſwerable to the variety of the Natures and Diſpoſitions of the Parties he imitated; ſo that his old Folks ſeem ſtiff and crooked, his young Men agile and ſlender; and ſo forth in the reſt: Which Example admoniſheth us, that a Painter ought not to tye himſelf to any one kind of Proportion in all his Figures; for beſides, that he ſhall looſe the true decorum of the Hiſtory, he ſhall commit a great abſurdity in the Art, by making all his Pictures like Twins: Into which Error, notwithſtanding divers (otherwiſe worthy Painters) have run, whoſe Names I ſuppreſs, and eſpecially one of thoſe two great ones: Which Overſight, all good Practitioners will eaſily diſcern, becauſe all their Figures are of an uniform Proportion, though wonderfully expreſſing variety of Actions. And for our better underſtanding in this kind of Proportion (as beſt fitting young Men, who are ſomewhat Beautifull by means of their Slenderneſs, Agility, and gentle Diſpoſition, mixed with a kind of Boldneſs) *Raphael Urbine* hath very well expreſſed it in St. *George* fighting with the Dragon, now to be ſeen in the Church of St. *Victore de Frati* in *Milan*; in St. *Michael* at *Fontenables*, in *France*; and in that St. *George* which he made for the Duke of *Urbin*, on a Table. According to which Obſervation of his, every Man may diſpoſe of this Proportion in the like young Bodies. Now for our more exact Inſight hereinto, by way of Precept, we muſt firſt note, that a ſlender young Body of nine Heads, is from the top of the Head, to the end of the Chin, a ninth Part of the whole Length; and thence back again to the Root of the Hair, a tenth or eleventh Part, as I have obſerved in *Raphael*'s St. *Michael*, and in an old *Apollo*. But which way ſoever you make it, this Space is divided into three equal Parts (each whereof containeth a thirtieth Part) whereof the firſt makes the Forehead, the ſecond the Noſe, the third the Chin. Howbeit I grant, that in a Face which is the eleventh Part (by reaſon of a certain Tuff of Hair which is uſually expreſſed) the Forehead becometh lower by a third Part; which Rule the ancient *Grecians* kept, as their Statues do evidently Witneſs. But to the Purpoſe; this Body is likewiſe meaſured by Parts.

In

Length, Parts.			Breadth, Adv.	Tranſ.	Aver.
9	Chin, to the	Top of the Head	0	0	0
10		Root of the Hair	11	0	0
0		Fore-head	10	12	0
0		Eyebrows	11	9	0
0		Ears	18 19	0	0
0		Noſe	12	10	0
9	top of the Head to the	Chin	0	23 23	0
0		Neck, under the Chin	18	18	0
15 16		Top of the Shoulders	16	17	0
0		between the Shoulder-joints	13 13	0	0
6		Throat-pit	6	12	0
28	Throat-pit to the	Top of the Breaſt	9 9	8	0
14		Arm-pits	7	15 16	6
0		Paps	0	0	0
12		Teats	9	8	0
19 19		under the Paps	0	16 17	0
* 25 25 6		Waſt	7	18 19	0
26	Waſt to the	Navel	12 *	18 20	0
9		top of the Hip	10 12	18 19	0
22		hollow of the Hip	12 13	15 16	0
0		between the Joints	15 16	0	0
8		bottom of the Belly	0	8	0
7		Privities	0	16 17	0
0		end of the Cods	0	0	0
0		Buttocks	0	0	11
6		Thigh under them	12	10	0
11	Privities, to the	hollow of the Thigh	14	11	0
20	Mid-knee, to the	Knee above outward	18	15	0
30		Knee above inward	19	31 31	0
4	above the Ancle to the	Mid-knee	21	18	0
80	Mid-knee to	und. the knee without	21	19	0
40		und. the knee within	20	18	0
10		Calf outward	19	16	0
9		Calf inward	21	18	0
0		Mid-legg	17	15	0
0		ſmall of the Legg	42	28	0
23	Sole of the Foot to the	Inſtup	0	24	0
35		Ancle	33	0	0
13 13	Heel to the	Toes-top	19	0	0
0		Heel	0	0	35
0		Sole of the Foot	0	0	0

The

The Arm.

Length, Parts.			In	Breadth, Adv.	Transf.	Aver.
Between the	0	—— ——	Top of the Shoulders,	0	15	0
	0	—— ——	Arm-pits,	26	20	0
	0	—— ——	Brawn upper	0	0	0
	11 11	top of the Should. to the	Elbow,	31	26	0
	0	—— ——	Brawn below	22	25	0
	10	Top of the Mid-finger, to the	Wrist,	38	48	0
	0	—— ——	Palm,	19	38	0
	4	Elbow, to the	Top of the Midfinger,	0	0	0

A Child of Six Heads is thus to be measured by Parts.

Length, Parts.		In	Breadth, Adv.	Transf.	
From the	0	—— —— ——	Top of the Head	0	0	
	36	top of the Head to the	Crown	8	8	
	24	—— ——	Root of the Hair	7	13 13	
	21 22	—— ——	Eyebrows	12 13	6	
	15 15	—— ——	Noſtrils bottom	8	7	
	13 13	—— ——	Mouth	10	8	
	6	—— ——	end of the Chin	12	8 or 9	
	11 11	—— ——	end of the Fat under the Chin	0	0	
	9 10	—— ——	Throat-pit	7	11	
	9 9	—— ——	Top of the Shoulders	9 11	9	
	21	top of the Should. to the	Top of the Breaſt	7 11	7	
	0	—— ——	beginning of the Paps	6	12 15	
	10	—— ——	Teats ——	6	13 13	
	8	—— ——	under the Paps	11 12	12 15	
	11 11	—— ——	(a) Waſt ——	6	7	(a) The Elbow reacheth to the Waſt.
	24	Waſt unto the	Navel —— ——	5	12 14	
	8	—— ——	top of the Hip	5	12 13	
	0	—— ——	hollow of the Hip	9 10	11 12	
	7	—— —— ——	(b) bottom of the Belly	9 9	6	(b) The Wriſt reacheth to the bottom of the Belly.
	6	—— ——	Privities —— ——	8 9	12 13	
	9 9	—— ——	end of the Cods	9	7 or 8	
	8 10	—— ——	(c) end of the Buttocks	10	8	(c) The top of the Fingers reach to the end of the Buttocks.
	8 8	—— ——	hollow of the Thigh	11	19 19	
	6 7	—— ——	beginning of the Knee	13	12	
	24	beginning of the Knee, to the	Mid-knee	0	0	
	12	—— ——	end of the Knee	14	13	
	7	—— —— ——	Calf of the Leg	12	11	
	11 11	—— —— ——	End of the Calf	19	14	
	* 7 8	—— ——	Inſtup ——	24	19	* or 8 8
	* 5 10	—— ——	Sole of the Foot	(a) 15	8	* or 7 7 (a) This is meant at the Toes.
		(b) *The Arm.*				
	0	—— ——	the end of the Shoulder	19	15	(b) My Author hath not the Meaſures of the Length, otherwiſe than appeareth in the Margent.
	0	—— —— ——	upper Brawn	18	13	
	0	—— —— ——	Elbow ——	22	24	
	0	—— ——	lower Brawn	15	18	
	0	—— ——	betw. that & the Wriſt	22	21	
	0	—— ——	Wriſt ——	24	26	
	0	—— ——	Palm ——	16	27	

A Child of four Heads is likewise measured by Parts.

In Length, Between the	Parts.		In Breadth, At the	Adv.	Tranſ.
(*d*) The Diſtance betw. the Extremities of the Ears, is as much as from the Top of the Head to the Chin. (*a*) the Space betw. the Eyebrows and the Chin divided into two halves, makes the Noſe; which divide into three, the 1ſt gives the Noſtrils, the 2d that Space between that and the Mid-Eye; the 3d that to the Eye-Brow. (*b*) The Ear reacheth from the Eye-Bro. to the End of the Noſtrils. (*c*) divide the Space betw. the Noſtrils and the Chin into 5.2, make the upper Lip the other 3, the Space betwixt the Mouth & the Chin. * 20 20 Part the Noſe into 3 equal Parts, 2 give the Eyes, and the 3 the Space betw. them, and the Br. of the Noſtr. which is equal with the Length of the Mouth. (*d*) Between the Joint of the Shoulder 9 9 * 17 17 17 * 16 16 16. (*e*) Between the Joints of the Hips 11 11. * 17 17 17 * 15 15 15 (*f*) The Mid-Knee is juſt in the Middle between the Sole of the Foot and the Top of the Hips.	0	Top of the Head to the	Top of the Head	0	0
	16		Crown —	0	0
	24		Root of the Hair	0	0
	8		(*d*) Eye-Brows	9 9	0
	0		(*a*) Noſtrils by the Pole	0	4
	0		(*b*) Bottom of the Ear	0	20*
	0		Mouth	0	5
	0		(*c*) End of the Ch. & Neck	9	9
	4	Top of the Head to the	End of the Fat und. the Chin	0	0
	0		Throat-Pit —	0	0
	60	End of the Fat under the Chin to the	(*d*) Top of the Shoulder	4	15 15
	16		Top of the Breaſt	7 7	6
	10		Arm-Pits	5	0
	0		Beginning of the Paps	0	0
	9		Teats —	7	11 11
	7		Under the Paps	0	11 12
	5		Waſt —	5	6
	21	Waſt to the	Navel —	17 *	11 11
	15 15		(*e*) Top of the Hips	15 *	9 10
	14		Hollow of the Hips	17 *	10 11
	6		Bottom of the Belly	15 *	5
	10 11		Privities —	0	0
	9 9		End of the Codds	15 16	6
	4		End of the Buttocks	8	7
	58	End of the But. to the	Hollow of the Thigh	17 17	14 15
	18		Beginning of the Knee	19 20	8
	0		(*f*) Mid-Knee	12	10
	36	Mid-knee to the	End of the Knee	13	11
	0		Calf of the Leg	23 23	10
	9		end of the Calf	16	12
	0		Inſtup —	19	16
	20	Inſtup to the	Sole of the Foot	27 27	13 14

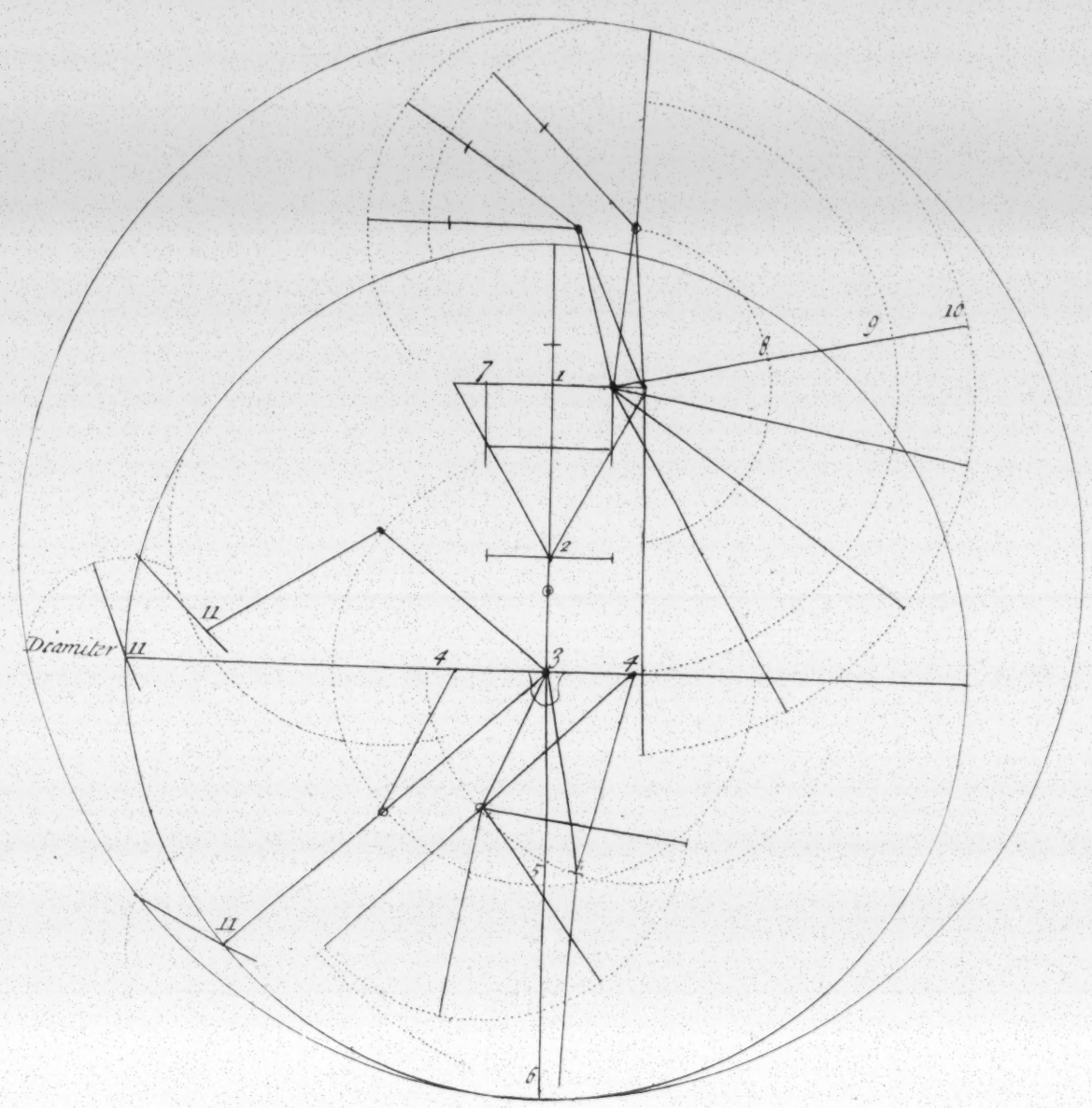
The Arm.

	0	end of the Shoul. to the	End of the Shoulder	0	10
	0		Upper-Brawn	17	12
	11 11		Elbow —	16	16
	0		Lower-Brawn	14	15
	0		Between that & the Wriſt	0	18
	9	Top of the M. F. to the	Wriſt —	20	23
	0		Palm —	13	21
	4	Elbow to the	Top of the Middle-Finger	0	0

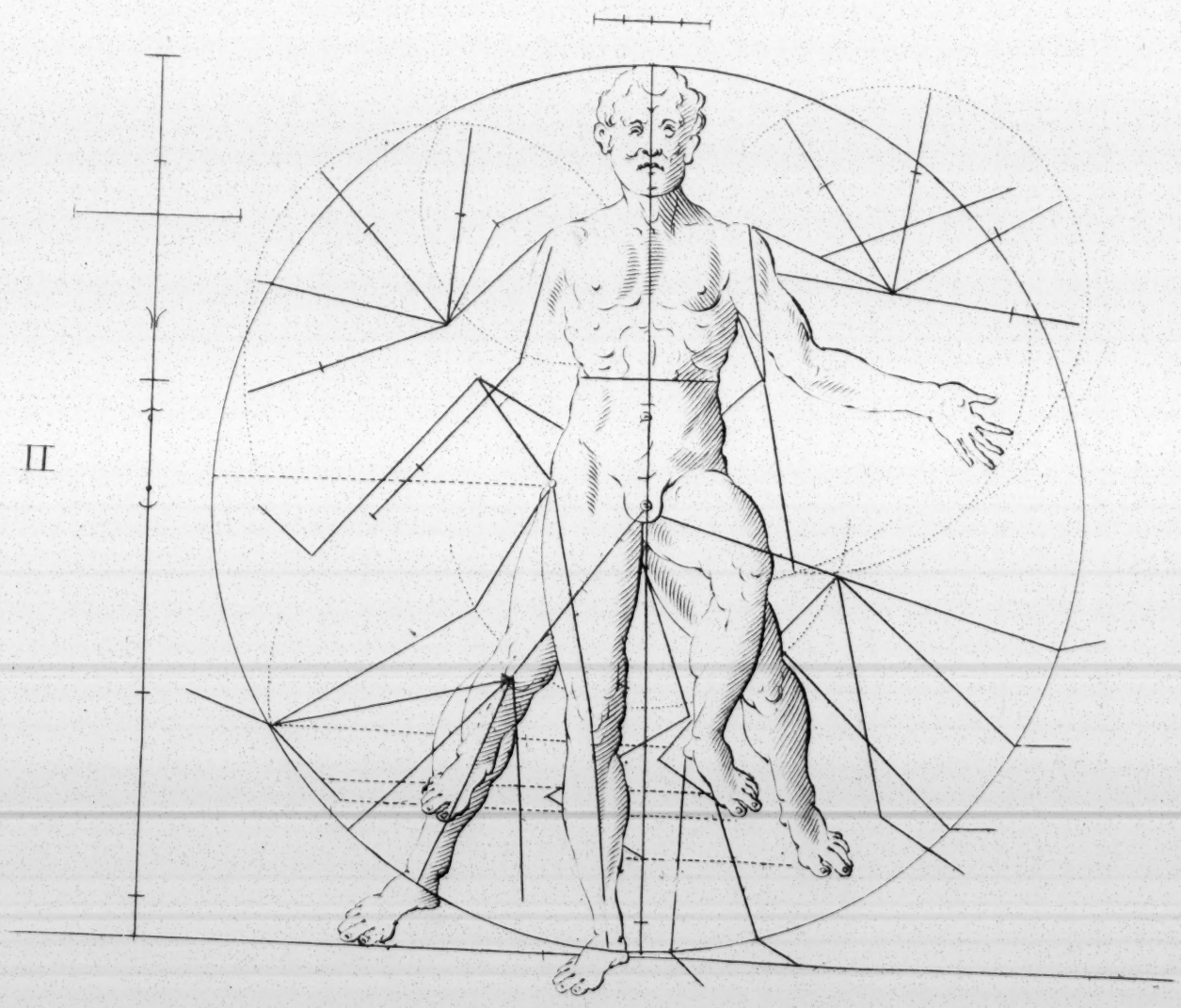
The Breadth of the Averſe is at the { Arm-Pit 5 / Mid-Buttocks 9 / Heel 22

The

Fig. I



II



E. Oakley Delin.

B. Cole Sculp.

The Rule of the Deſign of Natural Motion.

THE Motions are never Natural, when the Members are not equally ballanc'd on their Centre; and theſe Members cannot be ballanc'd on their Centre in an equality of Weight, but they muſt contraſt each other. A Man who dances on the Rope makes a manifeſt Demonſtration of this Truth. The Body is a Weight ballanc'd on its Feet, as upon two Pivots. And tho' one of the Feet moſt commonly bears the Weight, yet we ſee that the whole Weight reſts centrally upon it; inſomuch that if, for Example, one Arm is ſtretched out, it muſt of neceſſity be either that the other Arm, or the Leg, be caſt backward, or the Body bow'd ſomewhat on the oppoſite ſide, ſo as to make an Equilibrium, and be in a Scituation which is unforc'd. It may be, though ſeldom (if it be not in old Men) that the Feet bear equally; and for that Time half the Weight is equally diſtributed on each Foot. You ought to make uſe of the ſame Prudence, if one Foot bears three parts in four of the Burthen, and that the other Foot bear the remaining Part. This in general is what may be ſaid of the Ballance, and the Libration of the Body; and in particular there may many Things be ſaid which are very Uſeful and Curious, as in Part will appear by the five following Plates from the Works of *Leonardo aa Vinci*. The Action or Motion of Human Members is to be conſider'd by the exterior Action, which the Members make, or the Body turning with its Arms and Legs, according to nature, becauſe the Force ſo moving conſiſts in the Bones and Nerves: And our common ſaying is very proper, when we ſay, that the whole is moved by vertue of the Soul, which is the Center and Life of all: Since the Fingers are moved by vertue of the Hand, and that by vertue of the Arm, and that by vertue of the Body, and Vital or Animal Spirits; ſo it happens in the following Scheme, that the Motion which is attributed to the Members, will be found to be the firſt Cauſe, and its proper Center, which turning in the Form of a Circle, the Compaſs will trace the Stability of what Actions one will of Natural Motion, alloting to ſeveral one and diverſified Lines in one turning to its Center, according to our firſt Order of the Heavenly Bodies, conſtituting this Body, form'd upon the natural Plan of our great Maſter-piece, whereby we raiſe up and turn our ſelves: This is demonſtrated upon the firſt Figure, and the whole Scheme, with all its Variety, by a ſingle Line.

The Schemes and Geometrick Circles gives the Intelligence of the Motions of the firſt Figure, by the Demonſtration of Mathematical Rules.

Plate I. Fig. I.

1 Motion and Center of the Line of the Neck and Head.
2 Motions and Centers of the Line of the Body, and of the Waſt.
3 Motions and Centers of the Lines of the Body and Legs, to the half of the Figure.
4 Motions and Centers of the Thigh, from the outward part of the Flank.
5 Motion and Center of the Flank, and its Line to the Knees.
6 Motion and Center of the Line of the Foot.
7 Motion and Center of the Line of the Arm and the Shoulder.
8 Motion and Center of the Line of the Elbow and Hand.
9 Motion and Center of the Line of the Hand.
10 Motion and Center of the Line of the Fingers of the Hand.
11 Motion and Center of the Line of the Toes.

Monſr. Girard Audran

On the Proportions of

HUMANE BODY:

Meaſured from the moſt Beautiful Antique STATUES.

THERE will be, I think, but little Occaſion to enlarge upon the Neceſſity of a perfect Knowledge of the Proportions, to every Perſon converſant in deſigning; it being very well known, that without obſerving them, they can make nothing but monſtrous and extravagant Figures.

Every one agrees to this Maxim generally conſidered, but every one puts it differently in Practice; and here lies the Difficulty, to find certain Rules for the Juſtneſs and Nobleneſs of the Proportions; which, ſince Opinions are divided, may ſtand as an infallible Guide, upon whoſe Judgment we may rely with Certainty.

This appears at firſt very eaſy; for ſince the Perfection of Arts conſiſts in imitating Nature well, it ſeems as if we need conſult no other Maſter, but only work after the Life; nevertheleſs, if we examine the Matter farther, we ſhall find, that very few Men, or perhaps none, have all their Parts in exact Proportions without any Defect. We muſt therefore chuſe what is beautiful in each, taking only what is called the beautiful Nature: But who will ſay that he has himſelf Diſcernment enough, not to be miſtaken in ſuch a Choice?

Our greateſt Maſters find themſelves at a Loſs in this Matter, and often diſagree; they form to themſelves different Ideas of Beauty, which they generally regulate according to their Country and Temper.

I ſay according to their Country; for ſince all Men, in their Air and Manners, have much in them of the Climate where they were born, the Painters form their particular Guſtos from the Objects that are continually before their Eyes, with which they ſo fill their Imaginations, as to make all their Figures conformable to them.

Hence it comes that we give a Character of Painters by Name of certain Countries, ſaying, the Piece is of the Guſto of ſuch a Country; and indeed this Guſto is always found, more or leſs, in all the Deſigners of thoſe Nations.

As to our Temper, that acts ſtill more powerfully in us. It is that, which makes the moſt eſſential Diſtinction between one Man and another, and has a Part in every thing we do. In this Senſe we may ſay, that a Painter paints himſelf in his Works; and if we had Penetration enough, we might there find his moſt prevailing Inclination. A ſecret Prejudice born with us, the Reaſon of which we many times dont know, is generally that which determines our Choice, and cauſes us to make our Figures agreeable to the Air of thoſe Perſons we have moſt Inclination to.

There

There are ſome Painters, in whoſe Work their Temper is ſo remarkable, that it is impoſſible to be miſtaken in it; we have had ſome that have been carried by their Inclinations only to pleaſant Subjects, ſuch as *Diana* bathing, the Sports of Nymphs, and the like; others always chooſe diſagreeable Subjects, as Sorceries, Apparations of Ghoſts, and ſuch things as are frightful and terrible.

If we were to take the Pains to obſerve them, according to this Remark, we ſhall find that their Ways of Living agreed with their Works; and that the Character of their Diſpoſition might be found, not only in the Choice of the Subjects, but yet farther, in each Figure in particular.

Let us add, to ſo many Prejudices which we have from our ſelves, thoſe which proceed from our Maſter, of whoſe Manner we almoſt always retain ſomething: Upon which, we may obſerve by the By, that what is called a Manner, in Painting, is generally a Fault; it being commonly only ſome particular Agreeableneſs with which we are ſo much pleaſed as to load it with Exceſs; by doing which, we have paſſed the juſt Point of that Truth, which all the World ſeeks, and to which it is ſo difficult to attain.

What can a Deſigner do amidſt all theſe Difficulties? I ſee nothing but the Antique in which we can place an intire Confidence. The Sculptors who have left us thoſe beautiful Figures which remain to this Day, have happily diſingaged themſelves from this Perplexity. Some of theſe Difficulties were not ſuch to them, and they have perfectly underſtood how to ſurmount the others.

Firſt, as to thoſe which regard the Country, they work'd in *Greece* and *Italy*. We know that the one abounded with Beauties; and the other being the Miſtreſs of the World, every thing that was beautiful and curious came there from all Parts.

As to their Temper and Paſſions, without Doubt they were ſubject to them as well as we; indeed a natural Inſenſibility would be no very happy Diſpoſition for an Artiſt, and his Works would hardly eſcape having a Teint of this extream Coldneſs; but however, theſe great Men did not ſuffer themſelves ſo to be drawn aſide by their Paſſions, as not to obſerve what was to be avoided and practiſed, according to the different Characters of their Figures; and that with ſo much Exactneſs, that no one in ſo many Ages has yet been able to attain that high Perfection they gave their Works.

We may boldly ſay, that they have in ſome Sort excell'd Nature; for tho' it be true, that really they have only imitated her; that muſt be underſtood of each Part in particular, but not of the whole together; and there never was any Man ſo perfect in all his Parts as ſome of their Figures. They have imitated the Arms of one, the Legs of another, collecting thus in one Fig. all the Beauties which agreed to the Subject they repreſented; as we ſee in the *Hercules* all the Strokes that are Marks of Strength; and in the *Venus* all the Delicacy and Graces that can form an accompliſh'd Beauty. They ſpared neither Time nor Care; there have been ſome that have work'd their whole Lives in View of producing one perfect Figure.

To animate them they had three powerful Motives, Religion, Glory and Intereſt. They conſider'd it as a kind of religious Worſhip to give the Figures of their Gods ſo much Nobleneſs and Beauty, as to be able to attract the Love and Veneration of the People. Their own Glory was concern'd, particular Honours being beſtowed on thoſe that ſucceeded. And as to their Fortune, they had no farther Care to take, when they were arrived to a certain Degree of Merit.

Beſide theſe Reaſons, which have the moſt contributed to form thoſe excellent Men, it is certain there are happy Ages like thoſe of *Alexander* and *Auguſtus*. We live at preſent under a Reign like theirs, where we ſee the Arts flouriſhing in ſuch a Manner, as there is Reaſon to hope, that they may attain at laſt to the Perfection of the *Greeks* and *Romans* in their moſt finiſh'd Works.

However, the high Eſteem we have for the Ancients, tho' well grounded, muſt not make us blindly admire all the Antique Figures; there is Reaſon to believe, that as there were Maſters, ſo there were Scholars too, ſome of whoſe Works have been brought down to us, tho' they don't indeed deſerve the Care that has been taken to preſerve them. Therefore, among the great Number there is of them, I have only choſe thoſe that have the moſt univerſal Approbation, and which the greateſt Deſigners look upon with Admiration, and allow to be the moſt certain Models to work after.

Your principal Study being to be made upon theſe Figures, it may be convenient to obſerve to you, that in the beſt of them we obſerve certain Things which would cettainly be counted Faults if they were in the Works of a Modern. The left Leg of the *Apollo* is about nine Minutes longer than the Right. That Leg of the *Venus* that bends, is almoſt a Part and three Minutes longer than that which bears the Body.

Nevertheleſs, I can't forbear having a Veneration even for theſe ſeeming Faults; I believe the Sculptors had their Reaſons for them, and that it would be Raſhneſs to condemn them; how can we think that theſe great Men who have been the Authors of Works that may be called perfect, ſhould fall into ſuch groſs Miſtakes as theſe I have been ſpeaking of, if they had not been done with Deſign.

Among ſeveral Conſiderations with which we are not acquainted, one of them is likely to be the Fore-ſhortning. I take the Matter to be thus: Theſe Figures were made to be ſet in Places where they were chiefly to be view'd from certain Sides, with Heights and Diſtances that might change the Appearances of the Object; the Parts we have taken Notice of being fore-ſhortned would have ſeem'd defective; and it was that, I ſuppoſe, that obliged them to make them longer; whence we may draw an important Conſequence, which is, that where a Figure is to be view'd on all Sides, and at a Diſtance that gives us Leave to examine it thoroughly, we muſt make the Proportions ſuch as we find them in the Antique, in thoſe Parts that are ſeen without Fore-ſhortning; but if the Figure be plac'd where it can be view'd only at ſuch Places and Diſtances as hide ſome Part from the Eye; in that Caſe it would have good Effect, (if it is not neceſſary) to put in Practice thoſe ingenious Artifices, of which the Ancients have made ſuch a happy Uſe.

I propoſed to my ſelf to make this Work larger, by adding the ſame Figures ſhadow'd with as much Guſto and Correctneſs as I could, and above all, according to my Meaſures; but being preſſed to give it to the Publick, for the Benefit of the ſtudious, I thought I ought not to put it off any longer; the rather becauſe all that is neceſſary is here, and the reſt would only ſerve for Entertainment. I muſt only advertiſe you, that theſe Figures not being ſhadow'd, and the Places which would appear round preſenting nothing but a flat Surface, you may chance to think them ſhort; but trouble not your ſelf with that Doubt; they are in the moſt elegant Proportions; if you doubt of it, draw one of them in the ſame Meaſures that I have mark'd, ſhadow it tenderly, and you will have a very light Figure.

Different Books have been written upon this Subject; it ſeems to me, that ſeveral of thoſe that have treated of it, have affected to make themſelves Heads of a Sect, by giving ſuch Meaſures as pleaſed themſelves, without relying on any Authority. I believe they are miſtaken. It is your Part to judge; compare their Proportions with mine; deſign the ſame Figure, according to the different Rules, and you will ſee the Effect.

Others

Others having firſt drawn the Figures very Regular, and of a good Guſto by Sight after the Antique, have afterwards meaſured the Statues to find the Proportions, which not being done with all the Exactneſs neceſſary, their Writing did not agree with their Figures.

I have endeavour'd equally to avoid theſe two Faults. I give you nothing of myſelf; every thing is taken from the Antique: But I have drawn nothing upon the Paper 'till I had firſt mark'd all the Meaſures with Compaſſes, in order to make the Out-lines fall juſt according to the Numbers.

I have choſen Figures of different Characters, and meaſured them on ſeveral Sides, that you may find in one or in the other ſomething that may be uſeful to you. I have diſpoſed my Meaſures in ſuch a manner that you may make Uſe of them, whatever Profeſſion you are of, where there is occaſion for Drawing.

If you are a Sculptor, you will eaſily find more than another, ſuch Things as may be of moſt ſervice to know; for ſince your Art counterfeits nothing, and repreſents the Figures with their real Dimenſions, you may meaſure with the Compaſſes any Place about which you have any Doubt.

If you are a Painter, or Graver, you will find likewiſe many uſeful Things; becauſe in whatever View a Figure preſents itſelf, there are always many meaſurable Parts. I have beſides invented two ways of meaſuring different from the common; one will ſerve for the Parts that go off, you will find it in the 83d *Plate*, and the other to meaſure the fore-ſhortned Parts, in the 88th *Plate*.

I confeſs, you would perplex very much the greateſt part of Painters, if you were to meaſure their Works with the Compaſſes in all the Places that can be meaſured; ſeveral ſave themſelves by the help of the Graces of Painting; but let us not flatter our ſelves, neither the Livelineſs of the Colouring, nor the Richneſs of the Diſpoſitions, nor the ſtrongeſt Expreſſion, will make a beautiful Whole, except they are ſuſtained by the Correctneſs of the Drawing. However, let not that diſcourage you, for though few Pictures will bear ſuch an Examination, yet we may uſe all the ſeverity of the Compaſſes to the Works of *Raphael*, *Hannibal Carracci*, *Pouſſin*, and ſome others of our moſt famous Maſters; we even know ſome at this Day with whom we may uſe this Way; their Modeſty forbids my naming of them; their Works make them ſufficiently known; examine them well, you will find Painters whoſe Pictures are Juſt in all their Proportions, by Out-lines both Correct and Graceful.

When I give ſuch great Commendations to theſe Painters whoſe Works may be meaſured, I do not mean to make you ſpend too much Time in meaſuring your Figures with the Compaſſes, which would certainly hinder your Progreſs in Drawing; but you may uſe the Compaſſes and my Meaſures, whenever you have any Difficulty about the Proportions; then having inform'd your Judgment ſeveral Times, it will become natural to you, and you will get a Habit of obſerving them Regularly without the Compaſſes.

In the laſt Place, don't take it ill that I ſpeak well of my own Work, the principal Honour is not for me, it is the Antique I commend. The Antique preſents me admirable Works. I make them my principal Study; I am obliged to it for the little I know; I collect the Meaſures that I may the better examine the Beauties, and now offer them to you, hoping you will find as much Benefit by them, as can be gotten from them.

In order to underſtand the Meaſures, and their Uſe, it will be neceſſary to know, that it is the manner of good Painters and Sculptors, to make their Figures a little bending,

to give them an appearance of Freedom and Gracefulneſs; and almoſt all the Antique Statues are in this manner more or leſs, as the different Subjects require. The places where this bending is made, are the Knees, the Loins, and the Head; which however in ſome Figures is but very little, as in the *Apollo*, which is almoſt upright; but in others, as the Antonius amounts to about one Part ten Minutes. Therefore when we ſay, that a Figure has ſo much in Height, it is not meant, that the Statue meaſured from the Crown of the Head, to the Sole of the Foot, in the Attitude it is in, has ſo much Height as we give it; but it is to be underſtood, ſuppoſing the Figure to ſtand upright, and equally poiz'd on both Feet, that then it would have the Height we ſet down.

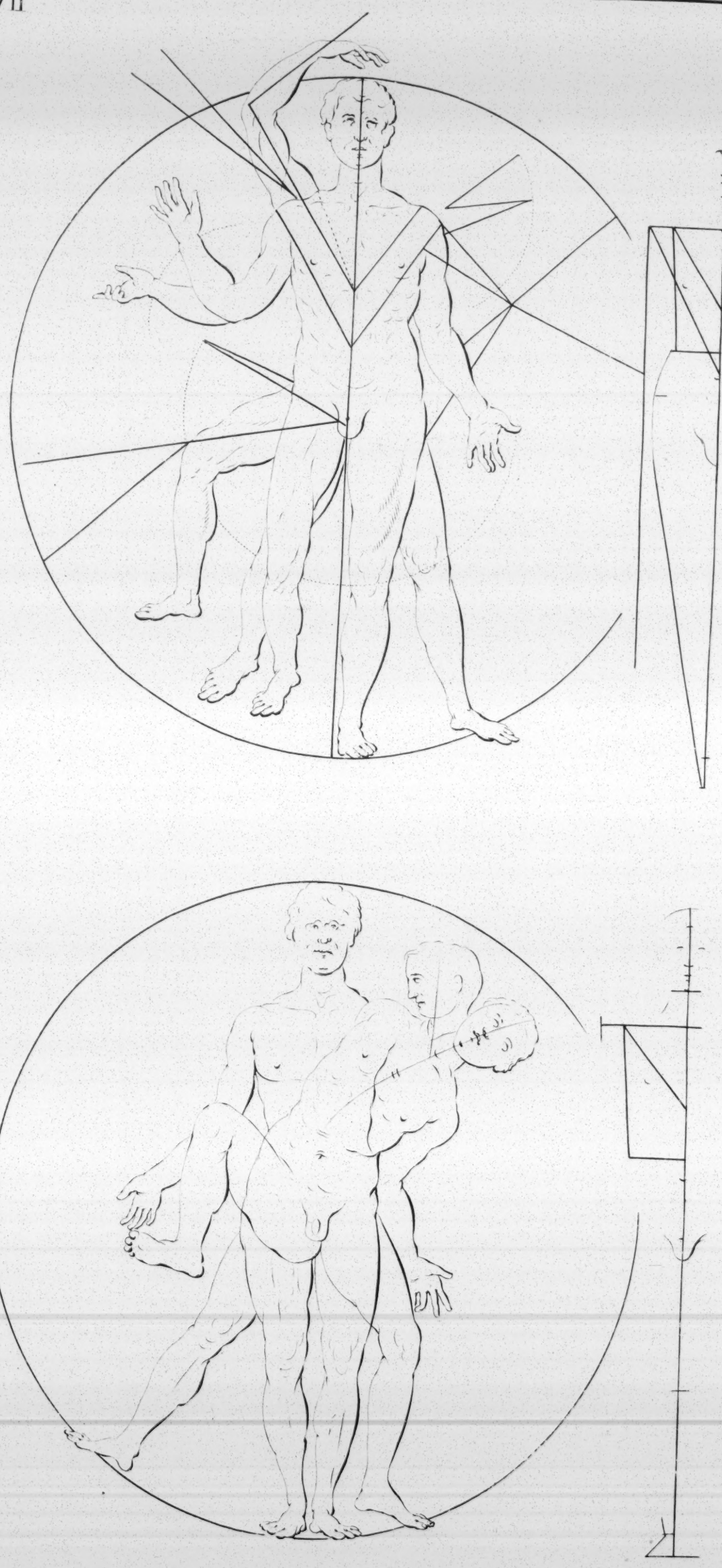
This being ſuppoſed, I have meaſured the Figures according to the Height they would have if they were upright; I have mark'd in ſome Places where the Parts appear leſs than they are, and have taken my principal Meaſures from thoſe Parts which appear in their proper Bigneſs.

The Meaſures of the whole are regulated by thoſe of the Head, according to the uſual Method. The Head is divided into four Parts, one of which reaches from the lower part of the Chin to the lower part of the Noſe; another, from the lower to the upper part of the Noſe, between the Eyebrows; a third, from between the Eyebrows, to the Hairs upon the Forehead; and a fourth, from thence to the Top of the Head. Each Part is divided into twelves Minutes, and the Minutes into Halfs, Thirds, and Quarters. For Example, P. ſignifies a Part, M. a Minute, M $\frac{1}{2}$ half a Minute, M $\frac{1}{3}$ one third of a Minute, M $\frac{1}{4}$ a quarter of a Minute. It is to be obſerved, that when I mark half a Minute, it is thus M $\frac{1}{2}$, and when a Minute and half thus 1 M $\frac{1}{2}$.

FINIS.

An

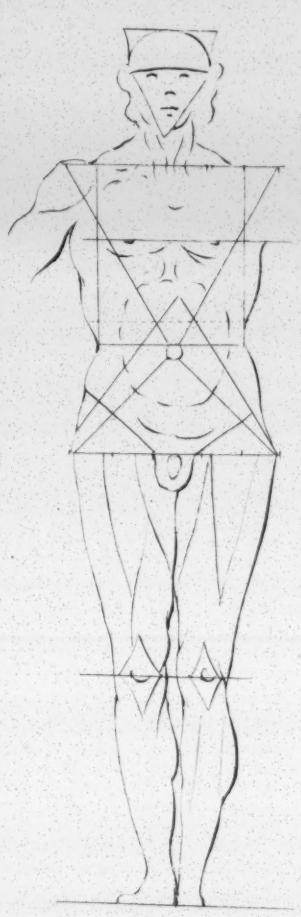
Plate LXXVII

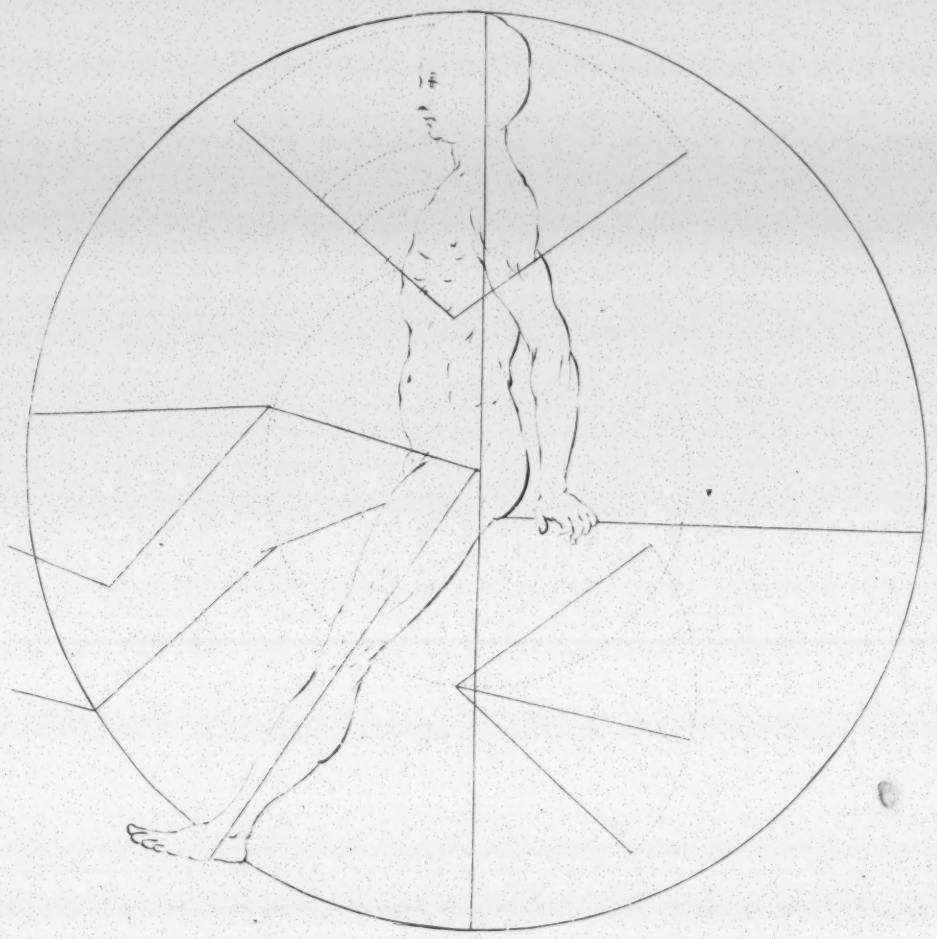


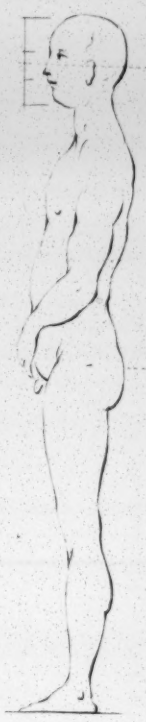
E. Oakley Delin.

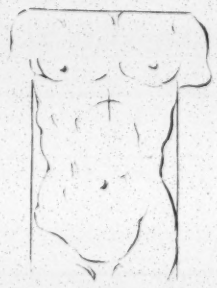
B. Cole Sculp.

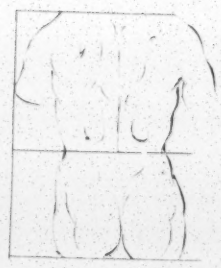
Plate LXXVIII







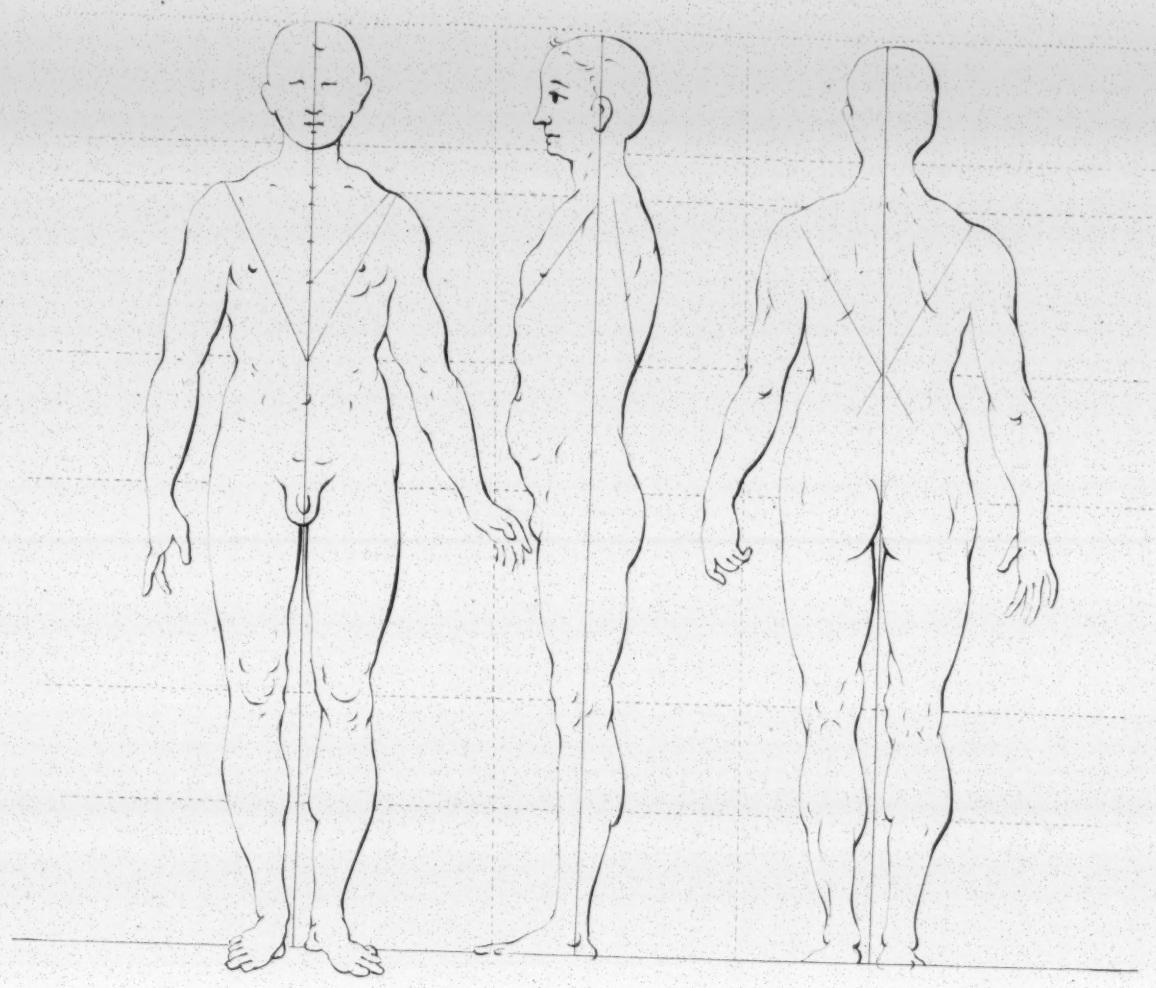


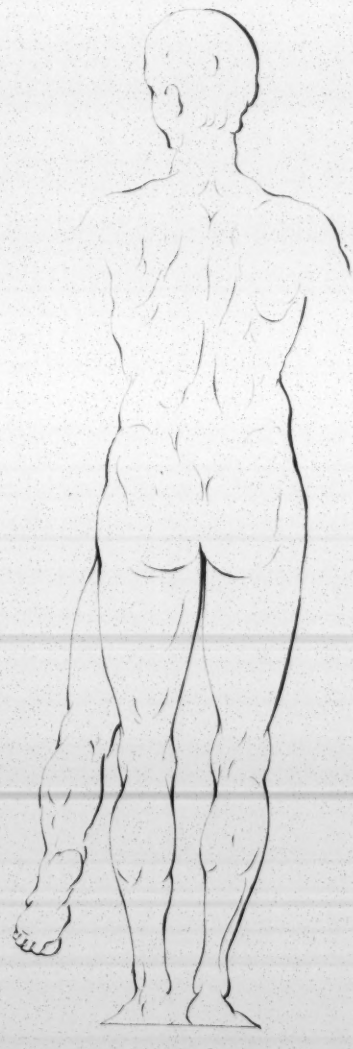


E. Oakley Delin.

B. Cole Sculp.

Plate LXXIX

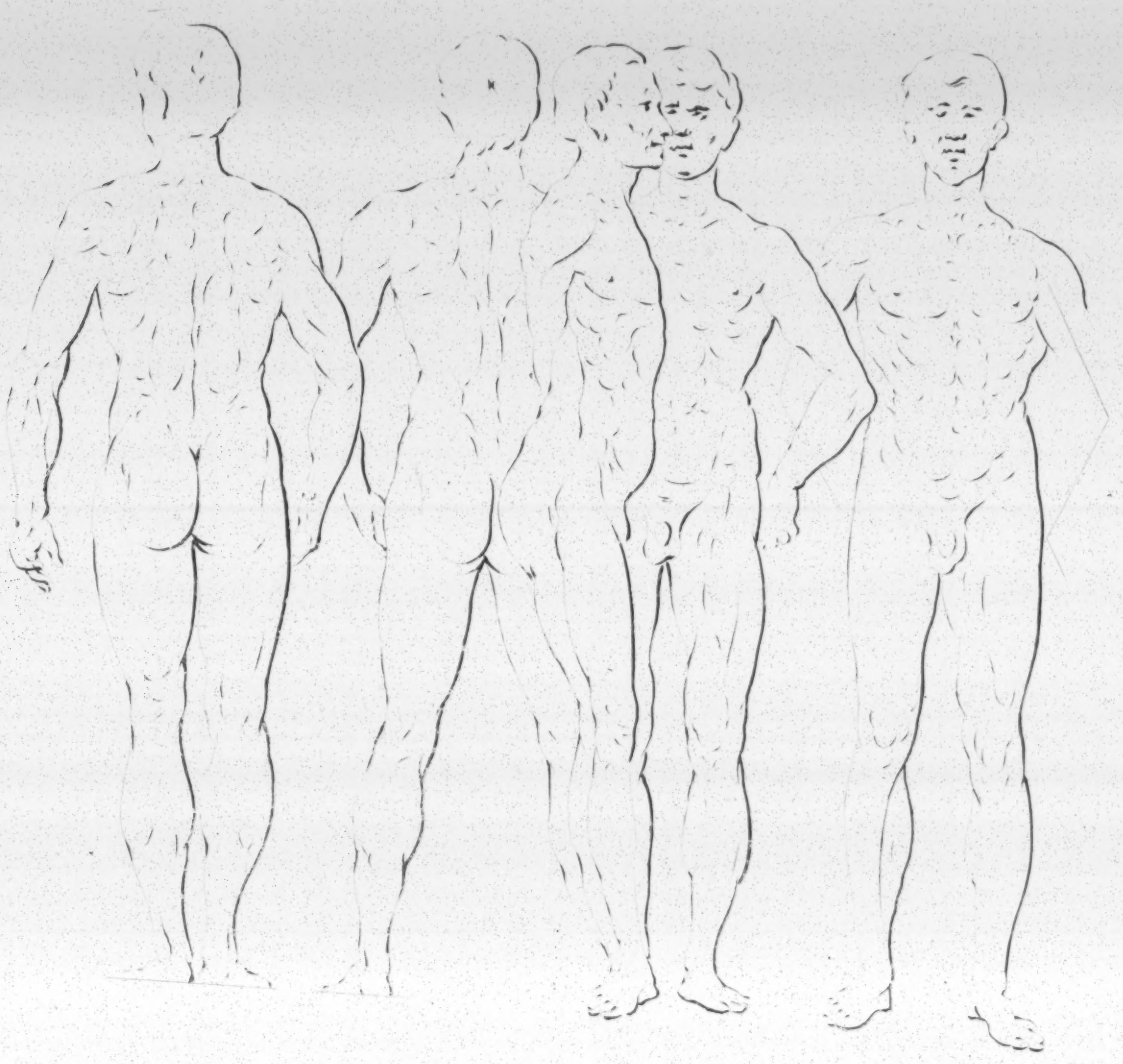


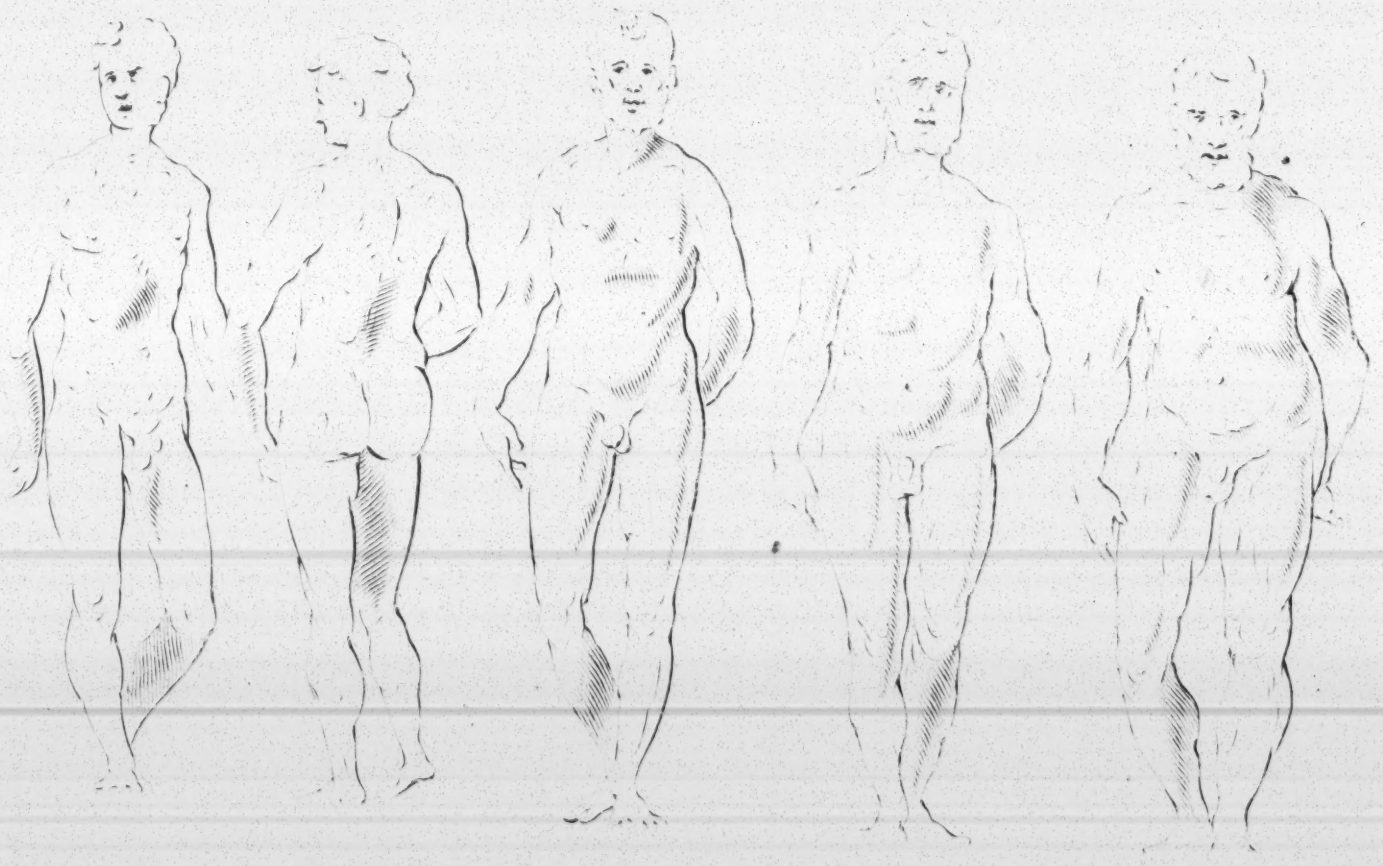


E. Oakley Delin.

B. Cole Sculp.

Plate LXXX





E. Oakley Delin

B. Cole sculp.

Plate LXXXI

the Farnesian Hercules 7 Heads 3 Parts & 7 Minutes in Height
by Glicon a Grecian Statuary

Page CXII

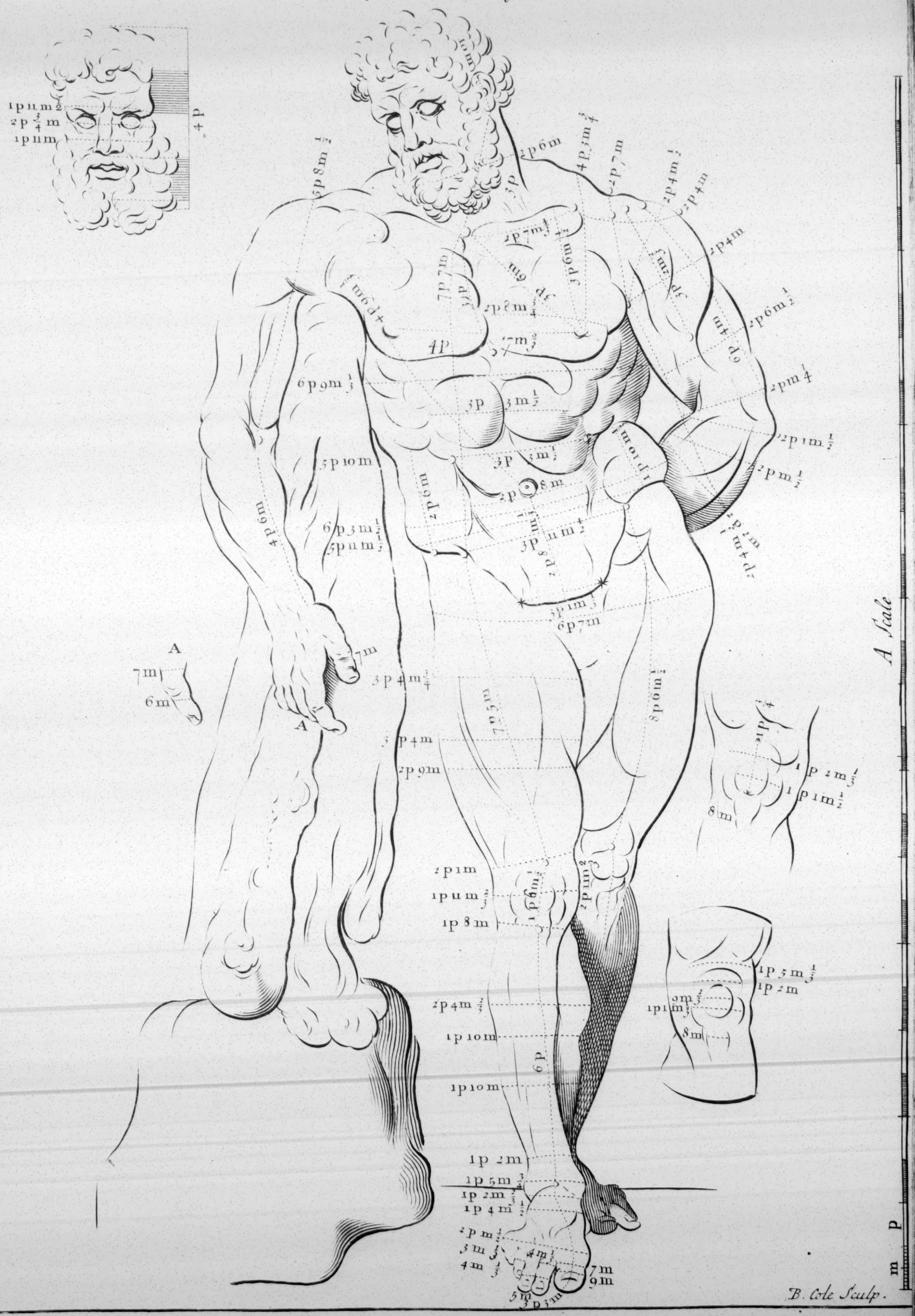


Plate LXXXI

the Farnesian Hercules 7 Heads 3 Parts & 7 Minutes in Height
by Glicon a Grecian Statuary

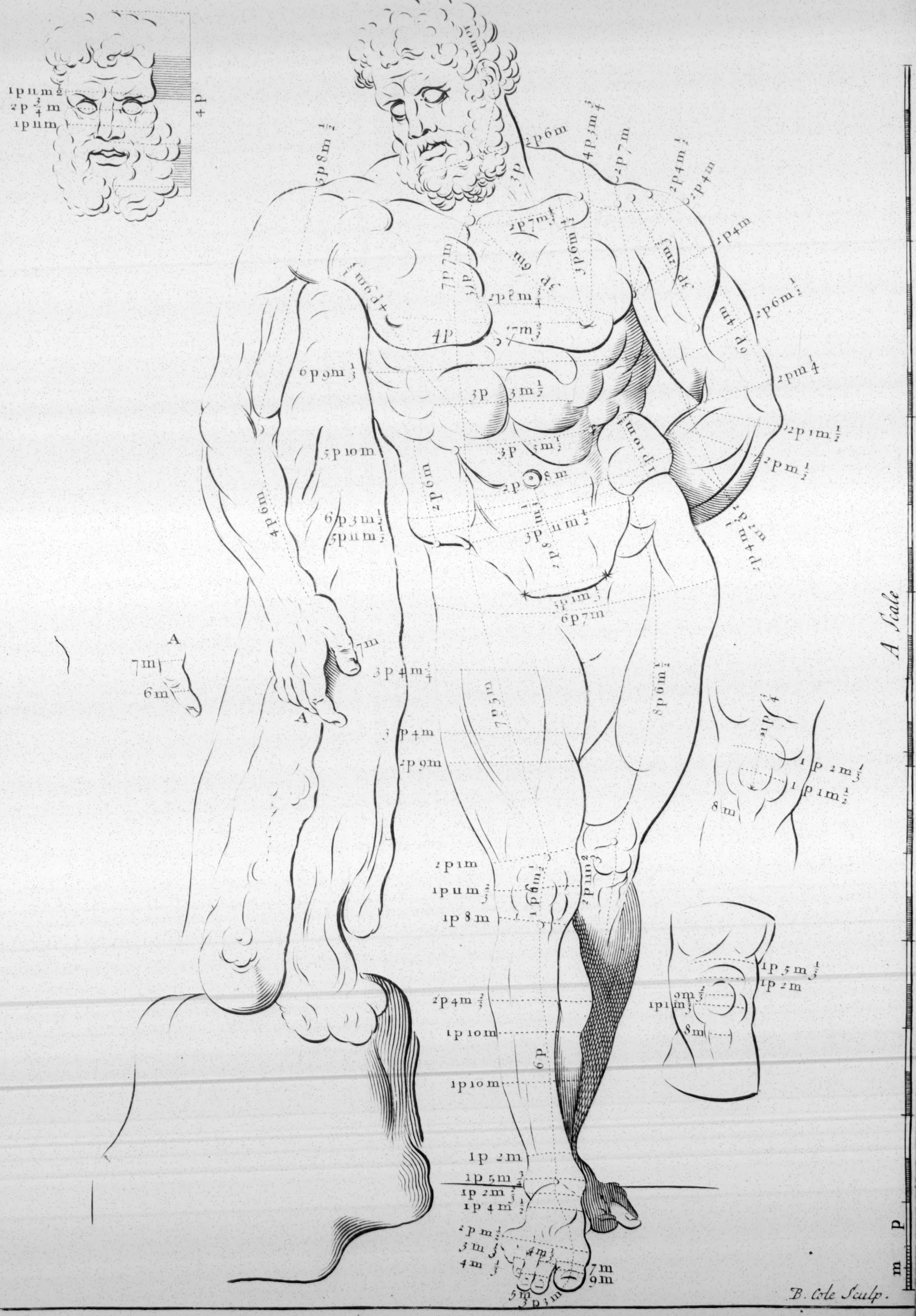


Plate LXXXII

the Same Statue of Hercules Viewd Sideways

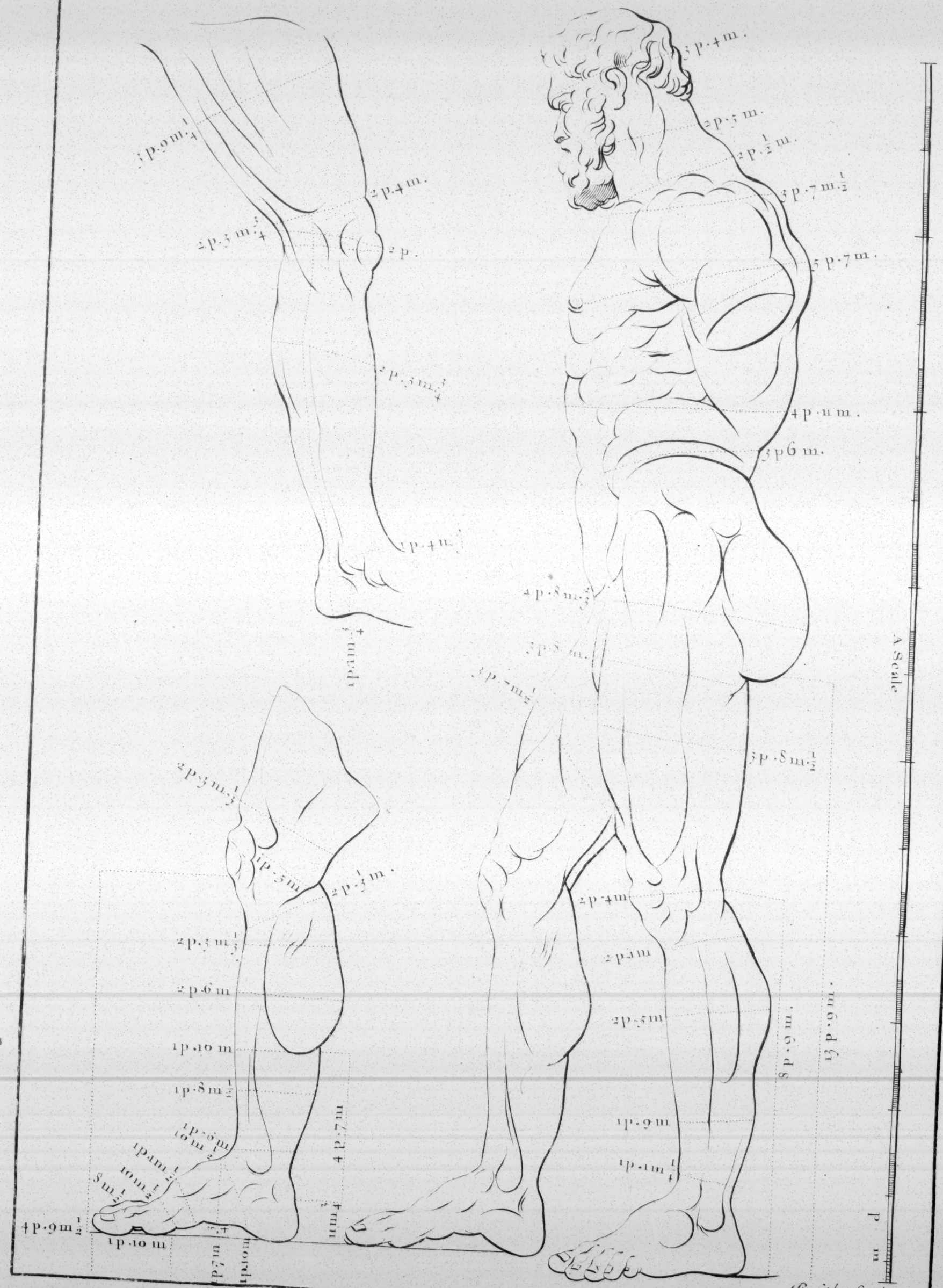
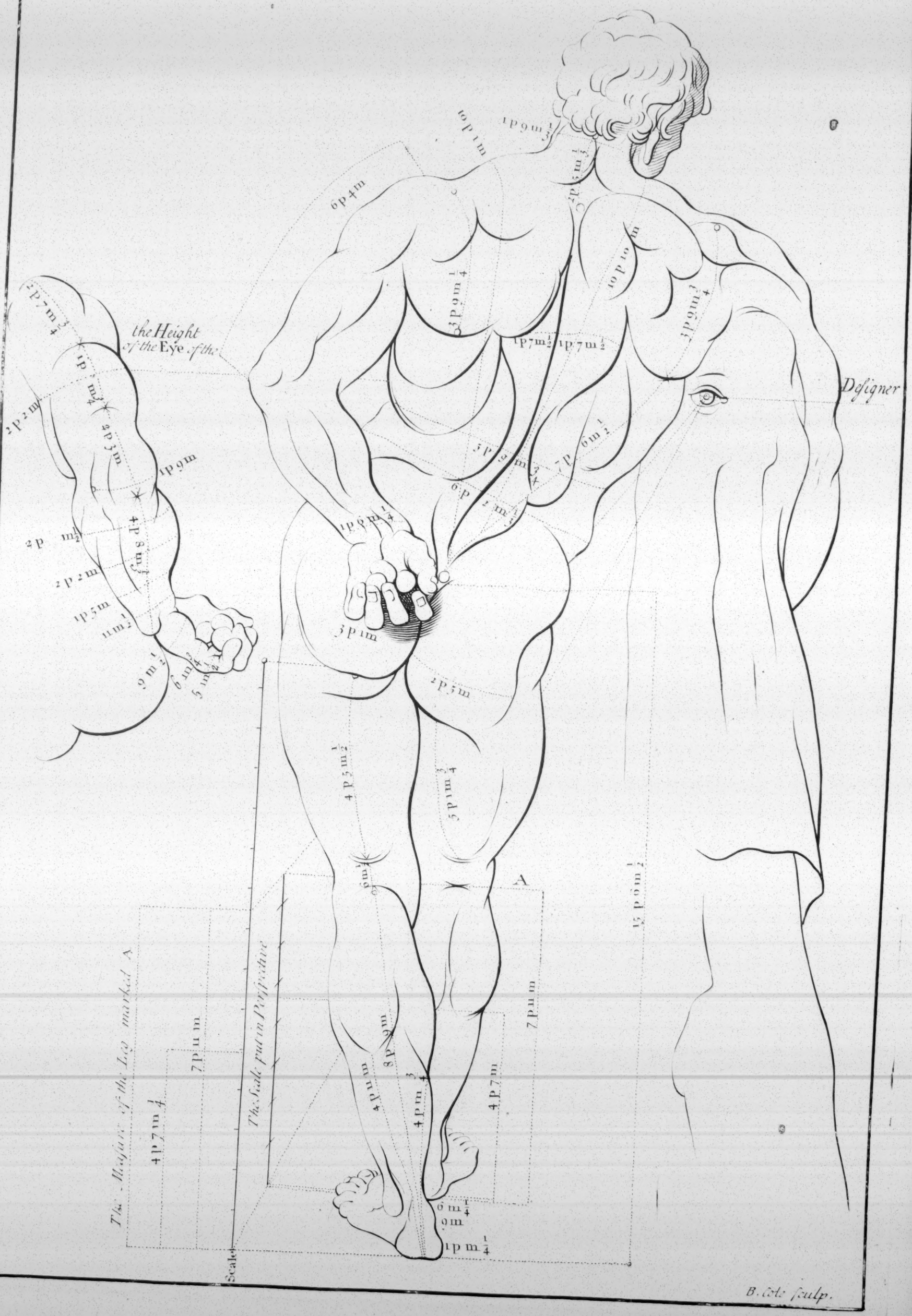


Plate LXXXIII

the Same Hercules



B. del: sculp.

Plate LXXXIIII *the Terme an Egyptian Piece of Work 7 Heads 1 Part and 7 Minutes*

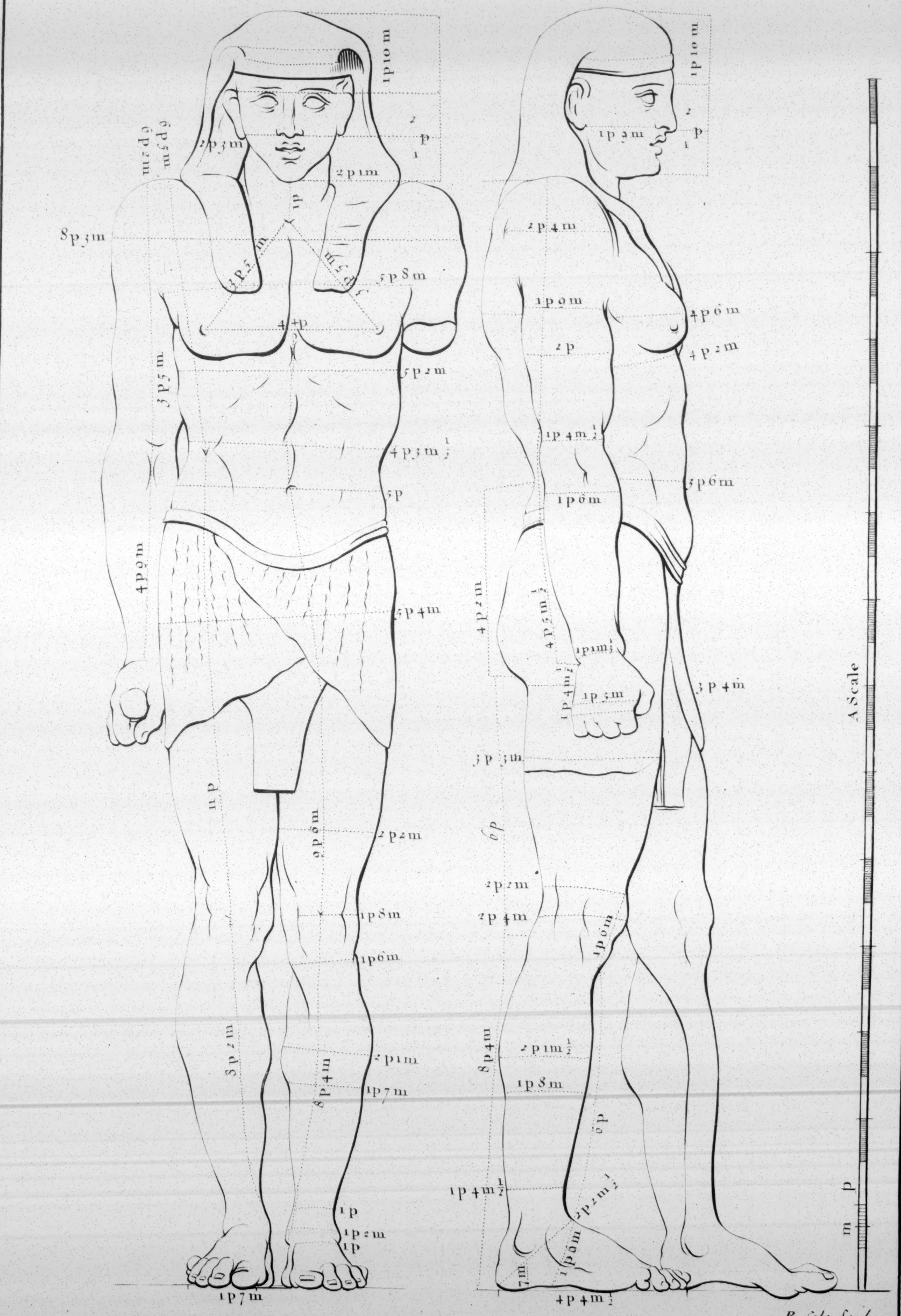


Plate LXXXVI

the Statue of Venus Aphrodite 7 Heads & 3 Parts

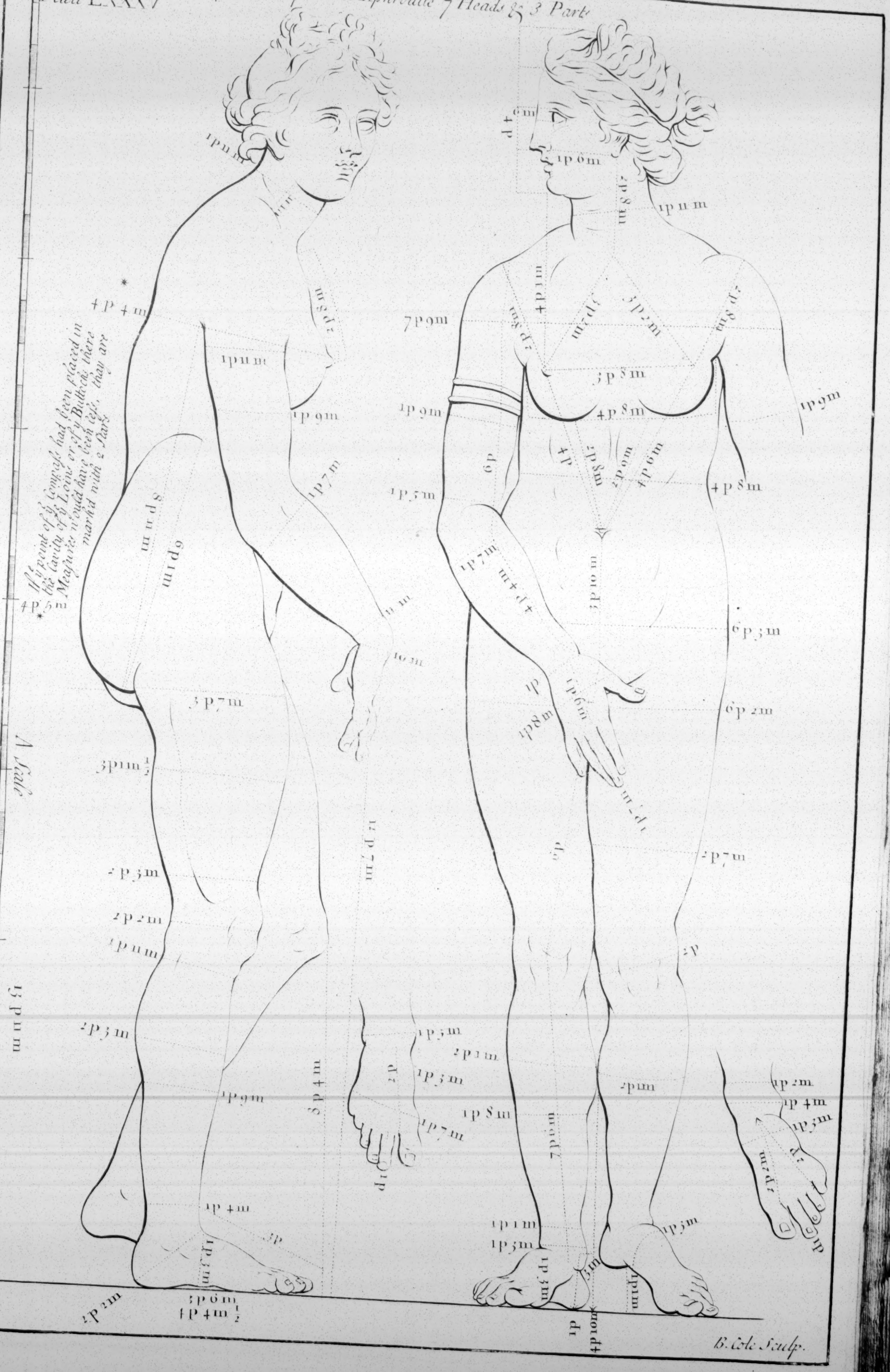


Plate LXXXVI.

the Same Venus

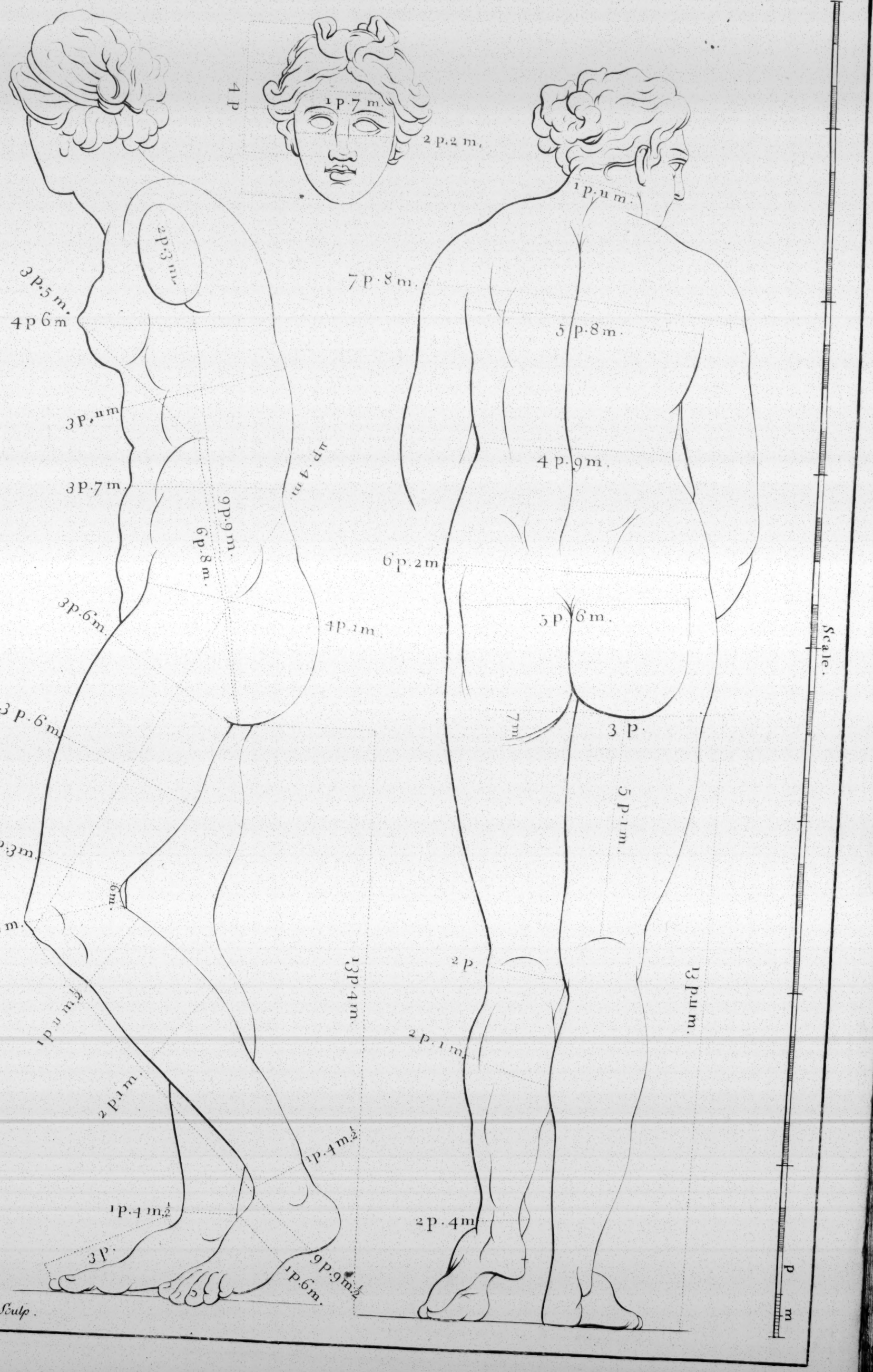


Plate LXXXVII

Apollo Pythius 7 Heads 3 Parts 6 Minutes

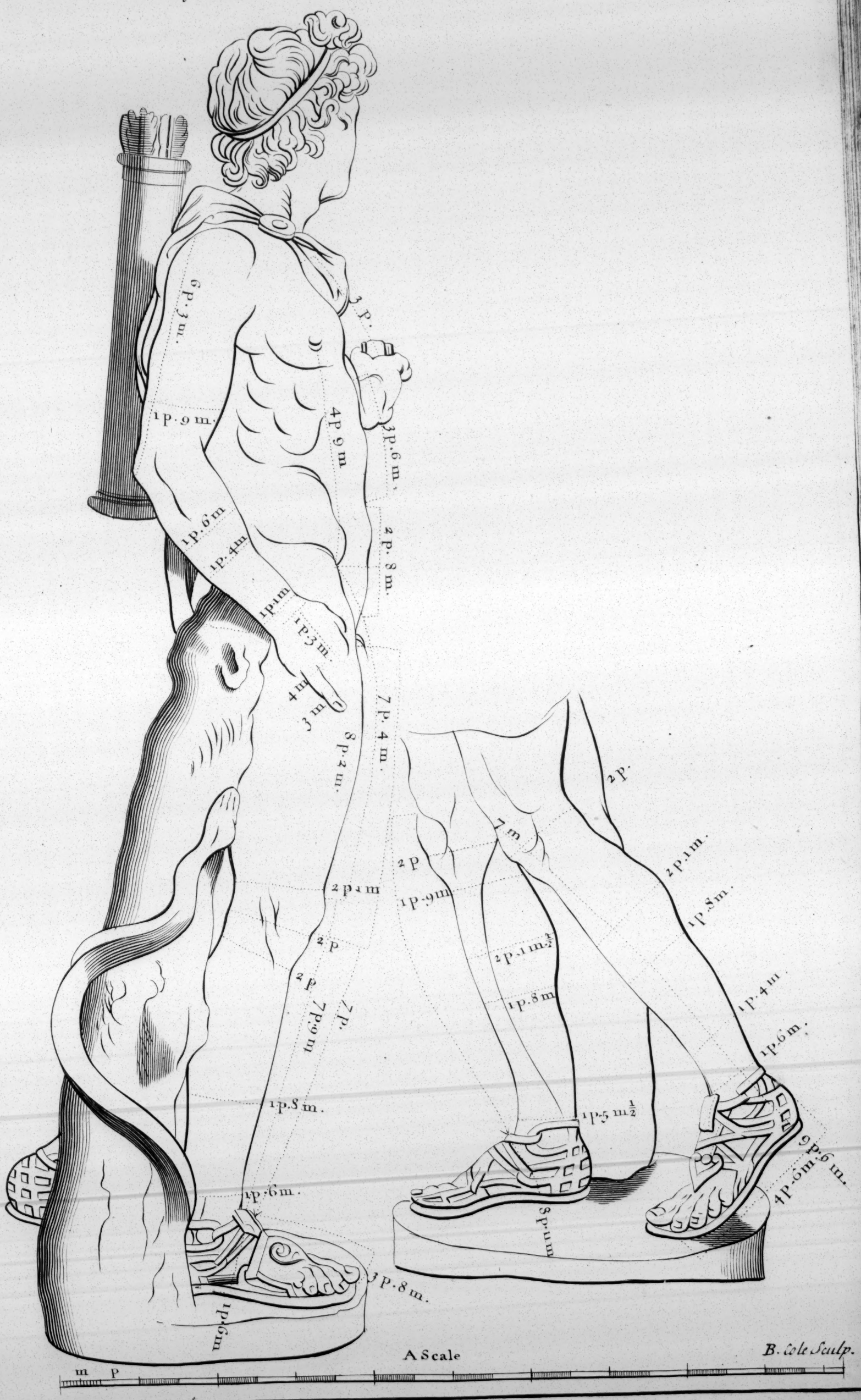
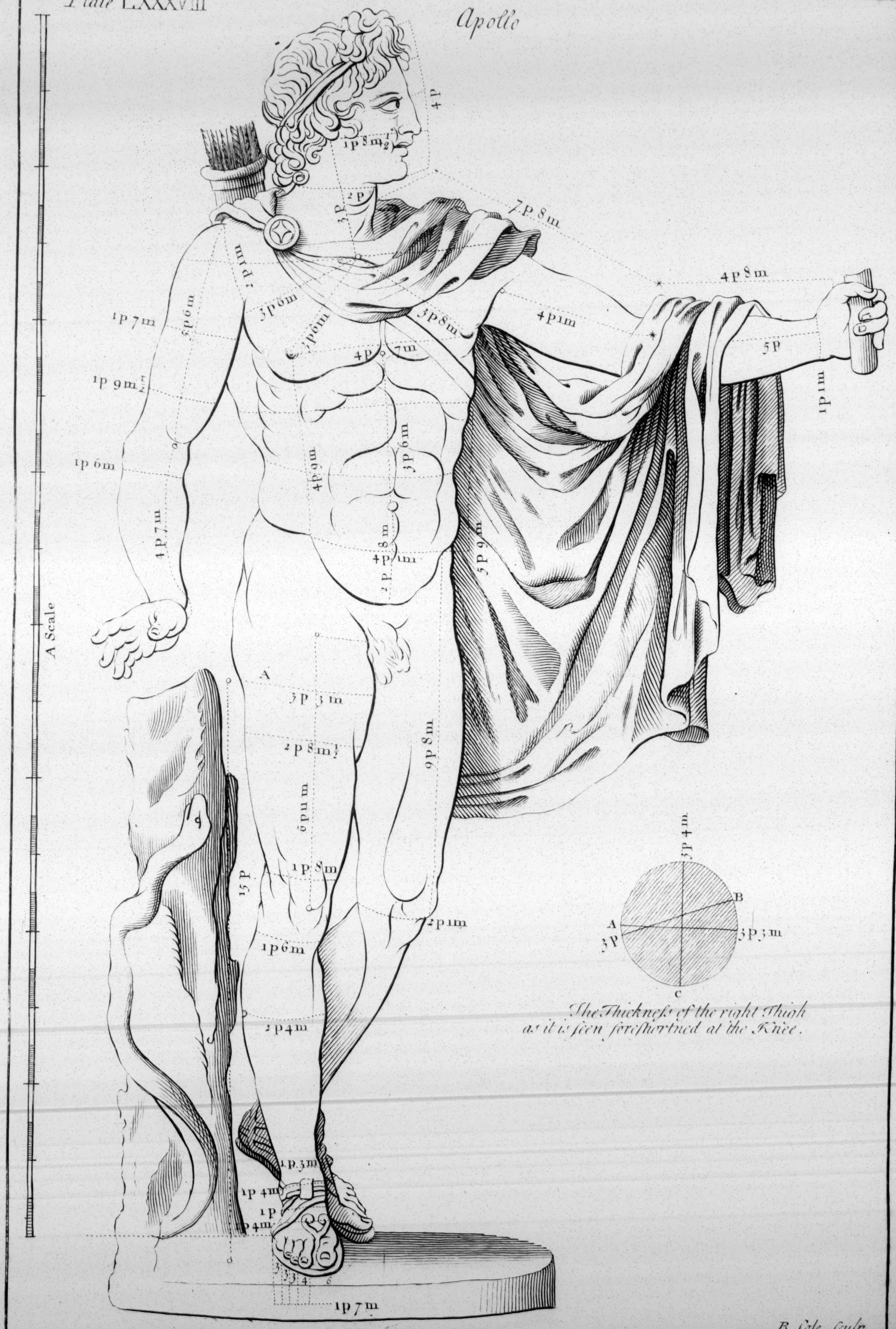


Plate LXXXVIII

Apollo

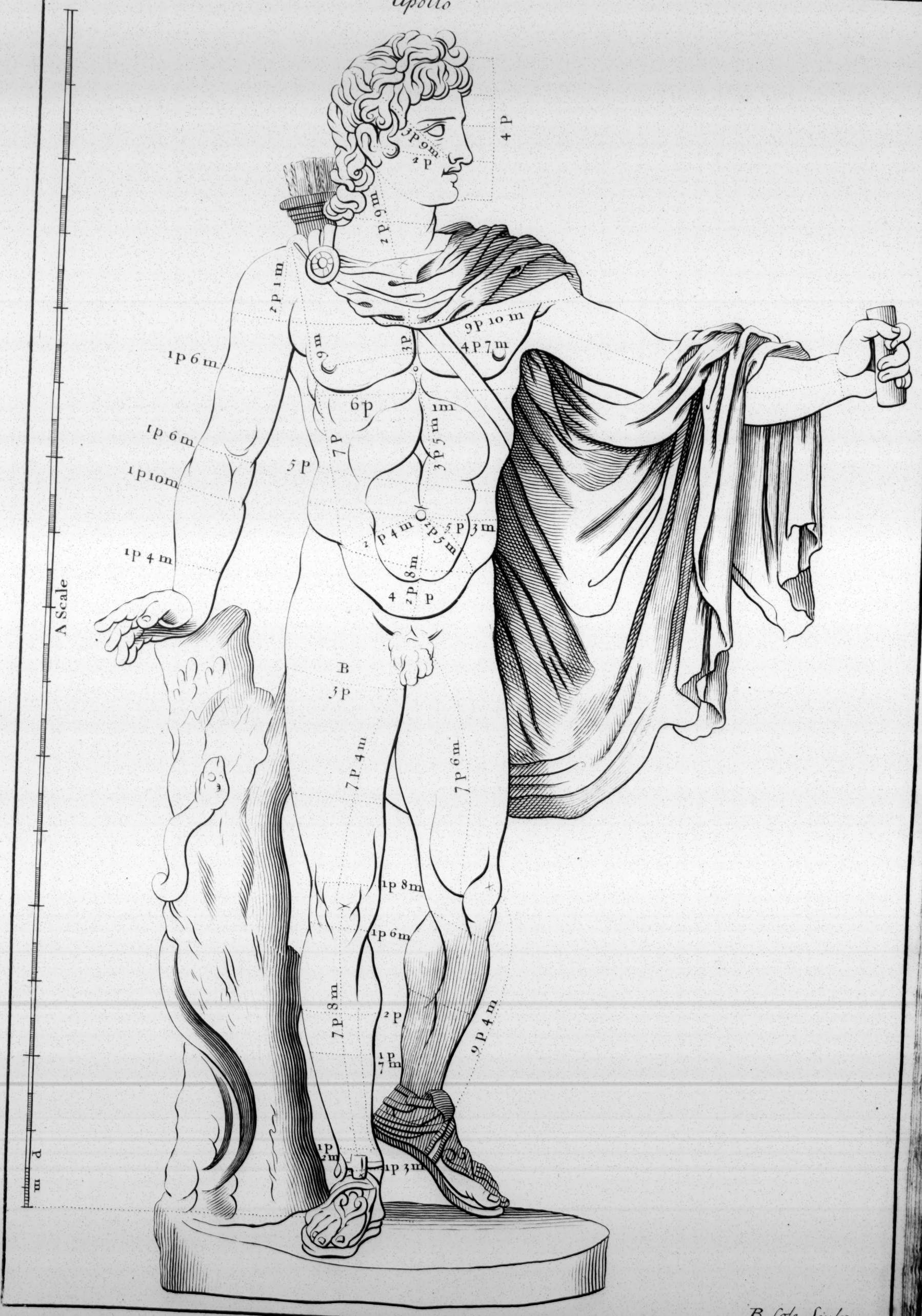


The Thickness of the right Thigh as it is seen foreshortned at the Knee.

B. Cole sculp.

Plate LXXXIX

Apollo



B. Cole Sculp.

Plate XC

The **Perſpective** *hinders the appearance of the Figure ſo high as it really is*

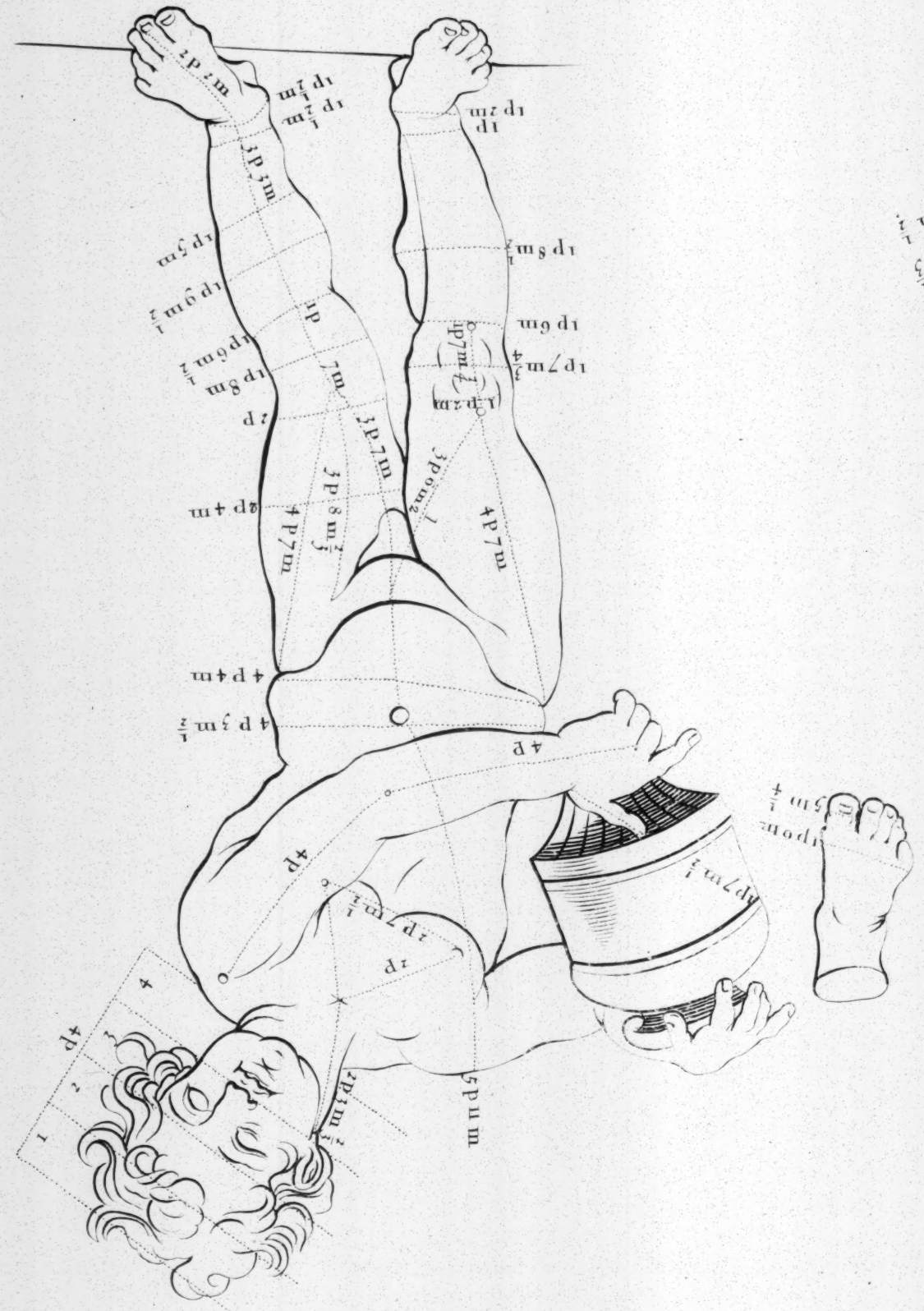
Apollo

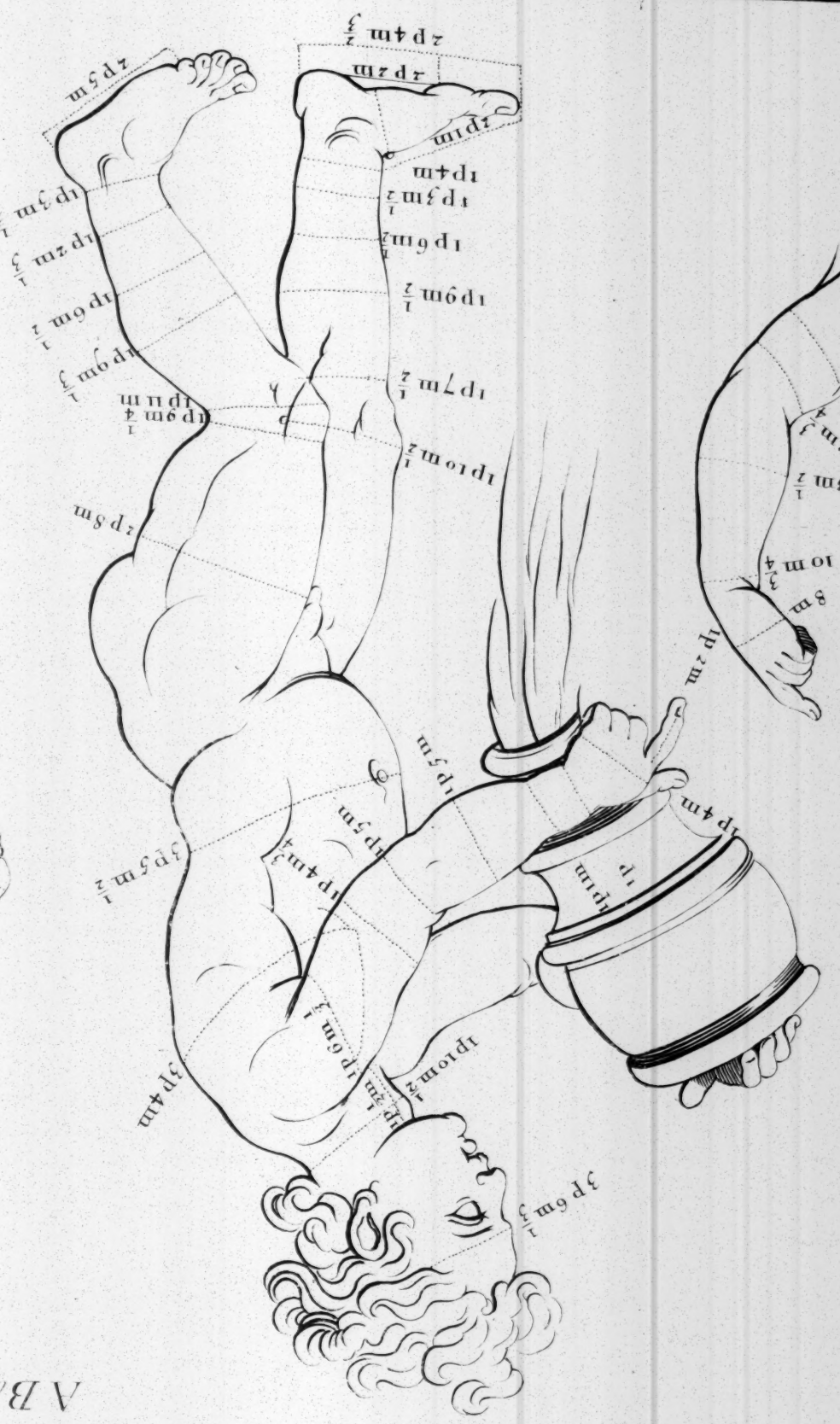
A Scale

B. ctle fculp.

Plate XCI

A Scale

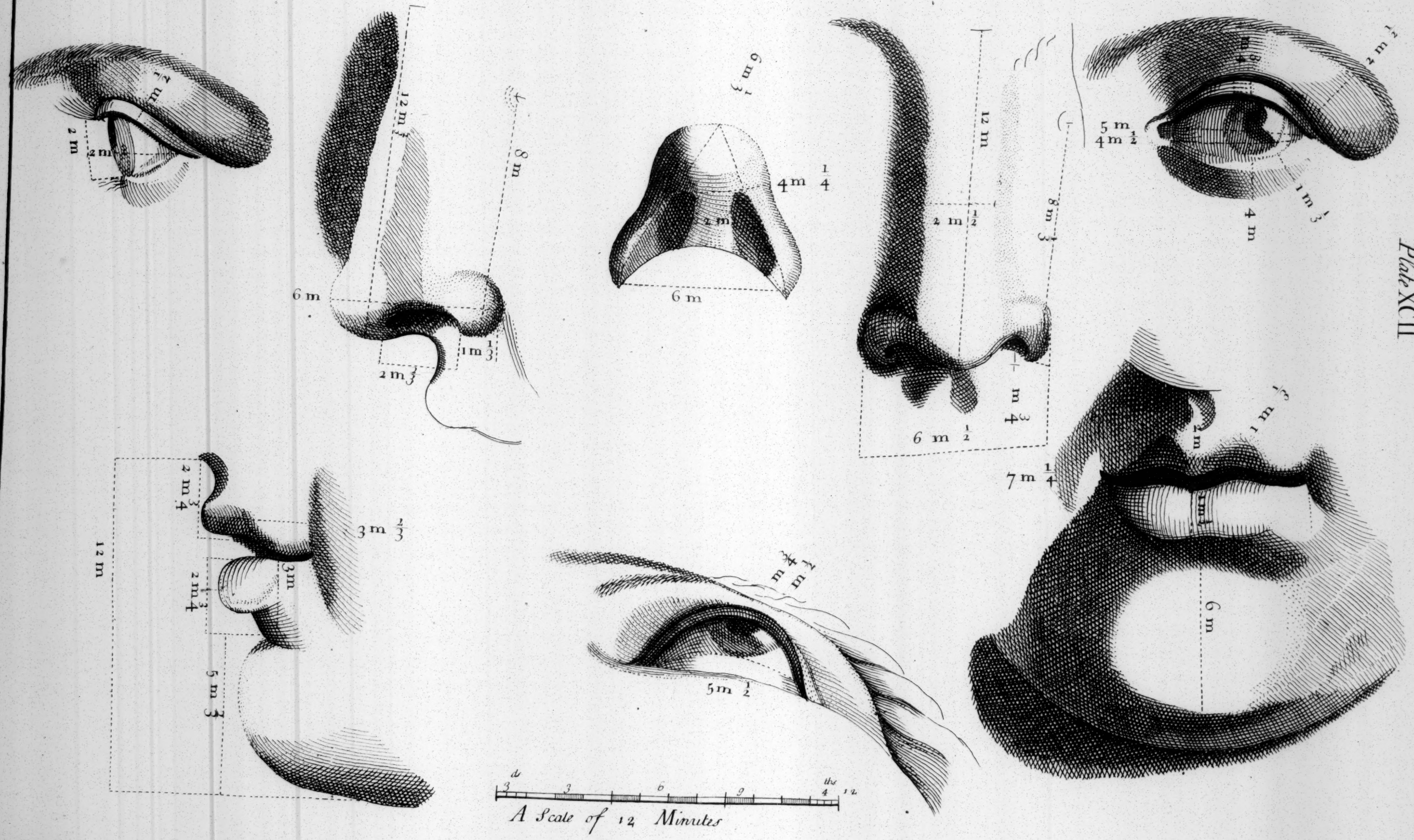




A Boy Five Years in Height

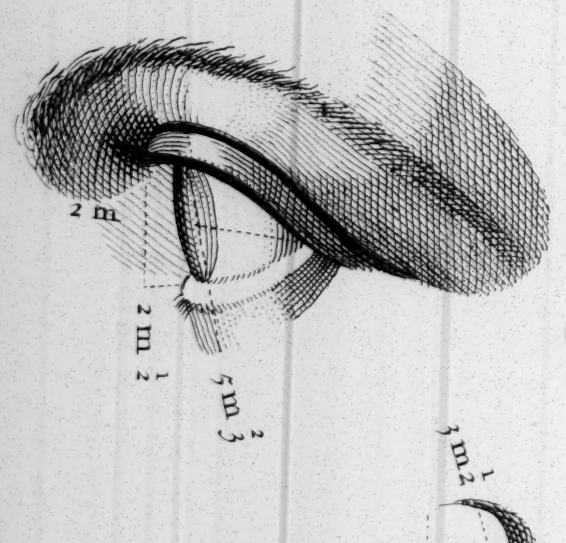
The parts of the Face of an Antique Venus, Measured in ye same bigness as ye Originals

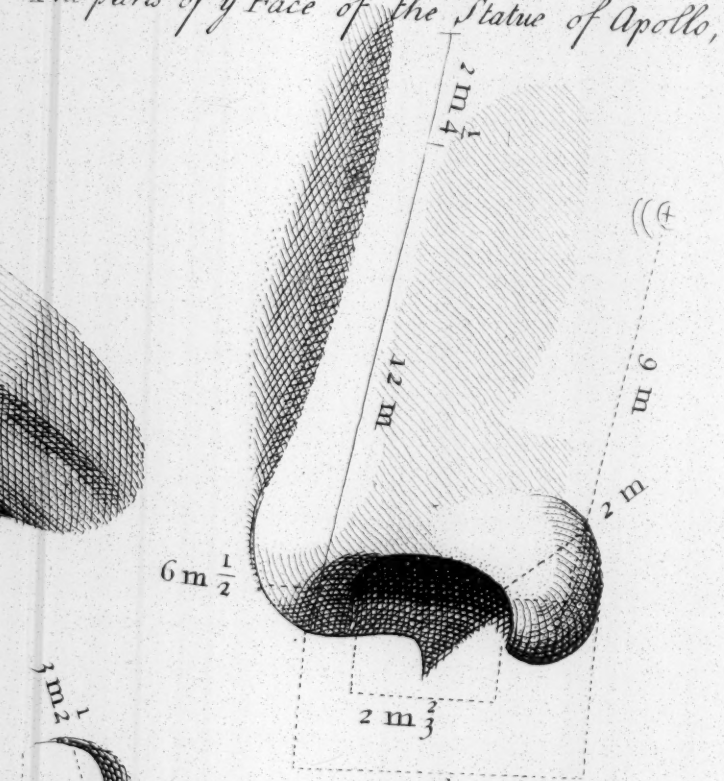
Plate XCII

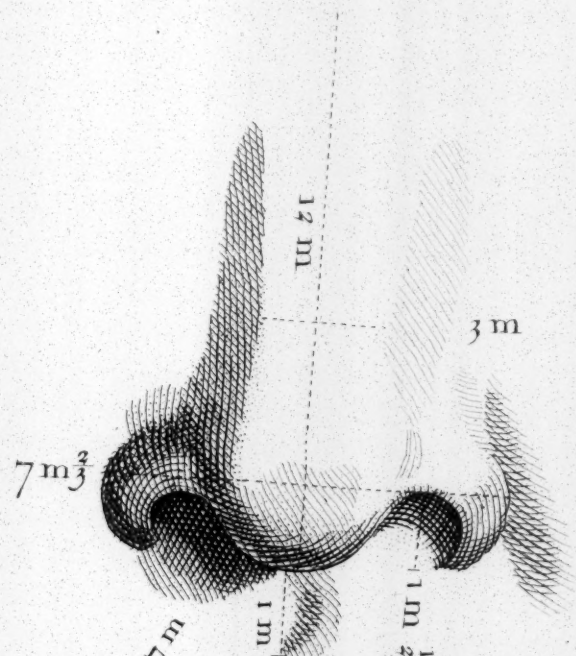


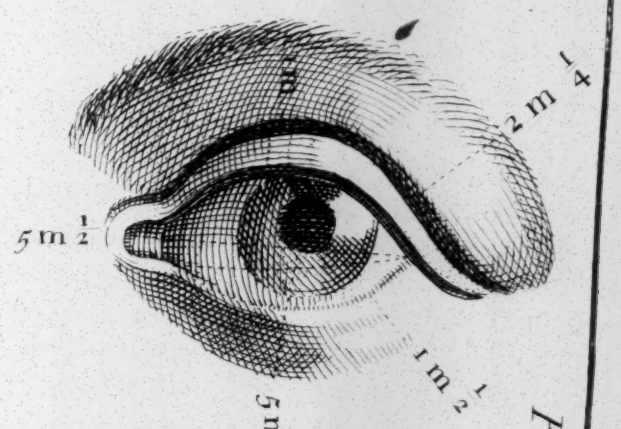
B. Cole. Sculp.

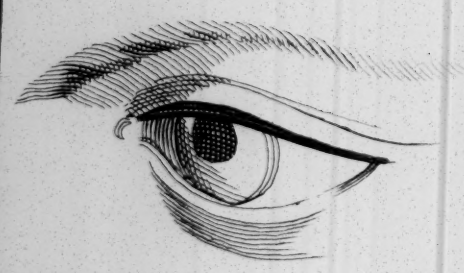
The parts of ½ Face of the Statue of Apollo, measured in their natural Bigness

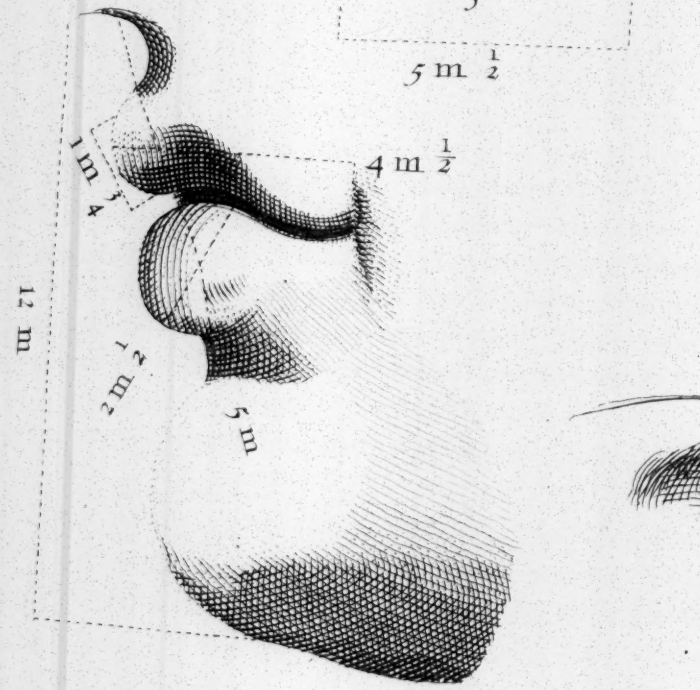


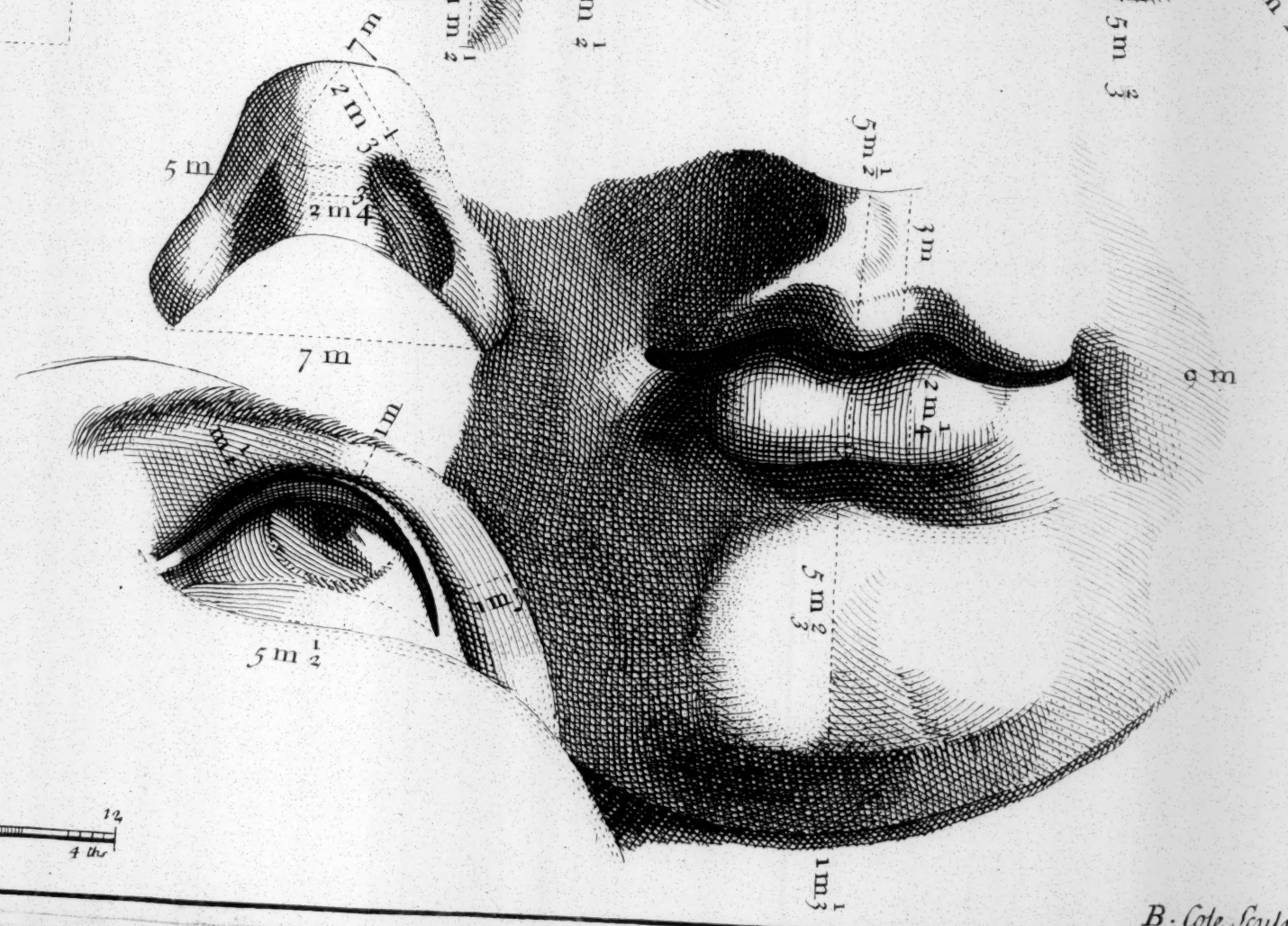


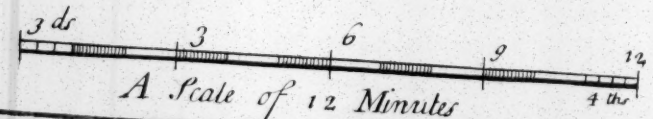












A Scale of 12 Minutes

Plate XCIII

B. Cole, Sculp.

AN

EXPLANATION

OF

TERMS,

made Uſe of, in

Books of *ARCHITECTURE.*

A

ABACUS, in Architecture, ſignifies a Quadrangular Piece, ſerving as a Corona or Drip to the Capital. This it is which ſupports the Under-face, or Soffite of the Architrave. In the *Corinthian* and *Compoſita*, the Corners of it are nam'd the Horns, and are ſomewhat Blunted or Hollow'd; the intermedial ſweep and curvature with the Arch, has commonly a Roſe, or ſome pretty Flower, carv'd in the middle of it.

ACANTHUS, is the Herb Bears-foot, whoſe Leaves are repreſented in the Capital of the Compoſite Column. See *Plate* 31.

ACROTERIONS, are little Pedeſtals, uſually without Baſes, placed at the two Extremes, and on the middle of Pedements. But where they ſtand in Ranges with Rail and Balliſters, they ſtill retain the ſame Name, only with this Difference, that ſuch as are placed between the Angular Points, are ſtyl'd the median or middle Acroteria.

ALCOVE, a Place to ſleep in; it ſignifies that Place in which the Bed ſtands, and which is uſually ſeparated from the reſt by Pillaſters, or other Decorations, forming an agreable Place of Retirement.

AMPHITHEATRE, is a ſpacious Building, either Round or Oval, having its Arena, or Pit, encompaſs'd with a vaſt number of Seats, diſpos'd in Rows, and riſing gradually one over another.

ANTIQUE, a Building or Statue, made at the Time when the Arts were in their greateſt Purity and Perfection among the ancient *Greeks* and *Romans*. We likewiſe ſay, the Antique Manner, to ſignifie any Thing done according to the ſtrict Rules, and good Taſte of the Ancients.

AQUEDUCT, an Artificial Canal, either running under Ground, or raiſed above it, and ſerving to convey Water, from one Place to another, according to their Level, notwithſtanding the Unevenneſs of the intermediate Ground.

ARCHITRAVE, the firſt Member of the Entablement, being that which bears upon the Column.

AREOSTYLOS, belonging chiefly to the *Tuſcan* Order, was where the Intercolumniation is very wide.

ASTRAGAL, is a little round Moulding, which encompaſſes the Top of the Shaft of the Column.

ATTICK. See under Order.

APOPHYGES, the primary Iſſue, or Riſe, of the Shaft next the Aſtragal and neather Cincture.

ANTE, plain Pillaſters, adjoining and projecting from Fronts and Quoins (ſome having no Ornaments above) unleſs where there is Pillaſters at the Quoin, and two Columns between.

AMPHIPROSTYLE, where the Building had a double Pronaos, or Porch, conſiſted but of four Columns at each.

B

BALLUSTRADE, is the Continuity of one or more Rows of Balluſters with their Rail, ſerving as Reſt to the Elbows, and at the ſame Time for a Fence or Incloſure to Altars, Fonts, Balconies, Terraſſes, Water-works, Windows, Staircaſes, *&c.*

BALLUSTER, is a little Column or Pillaſter, either Round or Square, adorn'd with Mouldings, and ſerving to form a Reſt or Support to the Arm.

BAND, is any flat Member that is Broad, and not very Deep; and the Word Face, or Faſcia, is ſometimes us'd to ſignify the ſame Thing.

BASE, a Reſt, or Support. This Word is uſed to ſignify any Body which bears up another; but is particularly applied to the Bottoms of Columns and Pedeſtals.

BASILIC, a Royal Palace. This among the Ancients was a large Hall with Porticco's, Iſles, Tribunes and Tribunal, where the Kings their ſelves adminiſtred Juſtice. But the Name is ſomewhat differently applied now-a-days; being given to Churches and Temples, and to ſpacious Halls in Princes Courts, where the People and Merchants meet.

C

CAPITAL, is the upper Part of a Column. Such of theſe as have no Ornaments, as the *Tuſcan* and *Doric*, we call Capitals with Mouldings; and the reſt which have Leaves and other Ornaments, Capitals with Sculptures.

CIMA, RECTA, or Cymaiſe, a Moulding waved on its Contour, Concave at the Top, and Convex at the Bottom, and is the uppermoſt Member of Cornices; vulgarly call'd by Workmen Ogee, or O G.

COLUMN, is a kind of round Pillar, compoſed of Baſe, Shaft and Capital.

CAVETTO, a Round concave Moulding, which has a quite contrary Effect to the quarter Round.

CARTOUCHE, an Ornament of no determinate Form, whoſe Uſe is to receive a Motto, or Inſcription.

CARYATYDES, Figures of Captive Men and Women (People of *Caria*) ſerving inſtead of Columns to ſupport Entablements.

COLOSSUS. This is apply'd to any Figure that is twice as big as the Life. We likewiſe call a Building a Coloſſus, when it is of an extraordinary Bigneſs, as the ancient Amphitheaters, the Pyramids of *Egypt*, &c.

CINCTURE, is a Liſt or Fillet at the Top and Bottom of the Column. That at the Top is ſometimes call'd Colier, and ſometimes Annulus, *&c.*

CONSOLE, is an Ornament cut upon the Key of an Arch, which has a Projecture or Jetting, and on occaſion ſerves to ſupport little Cornices, Figures, Buſts, and Vaſes. *Vitruvius* calls the Conſoles, Ancones.

CONTOUR, is the Out-line (as we ſometimes call it) of a Figure, or that which bounds and defines it.

CORNICE, is applied to every Prominent or Jetting Member that crowns any Body, as the uppermoſt Member of the Entablement, or the Cornice of the Pedeſtal.

CORONA, this Word is applied to any Thing that finiſhes an Ornament in Architecture; as for Inſtance, to a Cornice, *&c.*

D

DENTICLES, are Ornaments in a Cornice, cut after the manner of Teeth; and the Square Member whereon they are cut is call'd the Denticule.

DIASTYLE, the Space between two Columns, conſiſting of three Diameters.

DIE, any ſquare Body, as the Trunk or Naked of a Pedeſtal, which is that Part included between the Baſe and Cornice.

DIPTERE, among the Ancients, a kind of Temple encompaſs'd round, with a double Row of Columns. The Pſeudo or falſe Diptere is only encompaſs'd with a ſingle Row of Columns.

E

ECHINUS, is ſometimes uſed to ſignifie the Quarter Round, but more commonly that Part of it which includes the Ovum or Egg.

EGG, ſee Quarter Round.

ENTABLATURE, ſee Entablement.

ENTABLEMENT, by *Vitruvius* and *Vignola* is called Ornament, and ſignifies the Architrave, the Freeze and the Cornice together. Trabeation includes the ſame.

EUSTYLE, is the moſt approv'd manner of placing Columns, which is at the Diſtance of two Diameters and a Quarter, ſee *Plate* 49.

ENTRESOLE, ſometimes called Mezanine, is a Kind of low Story, occaſionally at the Top of the Building, for Lodging of Servants, *&c.* and Lights from the Roof to preſerve the Regularity and Grandeur of the Front.

F

FACADE is the Front or Face, which any conſiderable Building preſents towards a Street, Court or Garden.

FACIA, or Faſcia, ſignifies any flat Member, as the Band of an Architrave, *&c.*

FESTOON, an Ornament of carv'd Work in the Manner of a Wreath, or Garland of Flowers or Leaves twiſted together, thickeſt at the middle, and ſuſpended by the two Extremes, whence it hangs down perpendicularly. Some of theſe are contriv'd with a View to Muſick; others to Hunting, Fiſhing, *&c.*

FILLET, is any little ſquare Moulding which accompanies or crowns a Larger.

FLUTEINGS, are certain perpendicular Cavities cut Length-wiſe around the Shaft of the Column, and rounded at the two Extremes.

FREEZE, a large flat Member, which ſeparates the Architrave from the Cornice.

FRONTISPIECE. See Portail.

FUST, The Trunk or Shaft of a Column, being that Part comprehended between the Baſe and Capital, *Vitruvius* calls it Scapus.

G

GOTHICK, or Modern Architecture, is that which is far removed from the Manner and Proportions of the Antique, having its Ornaments Wild and Chimerical, and its Profiles incorrect.

H

HELIX, or Urilla, is a little Volute, Caulicole, or Stalk under the Flower of the *Corinthian* Capital.

HIPPODROME, among the Ancients, was a long Place, Circular at the two Extremes, and encompaſs'd with Porticos, wherein they were uſed to exerciſe their Horſes intended for the Courſe.

HYPETHRE, conſiſts of two Ranks of Columns all about, with ten at each Face of the Building, and a Periſtyle within of ſingle Columns; the reſt being expos'd to the Air, that is not walled in, (and placed as the Pycnoſtile cloſer to one another) we have called Periſtyle; which tho' importing a Colonade, or Series of Columns ranging quite about; yet are not all which are ſo placed to be call'd ſo, unleſs ſtanding within the Walls, which is eſſential to their Denomination; ſince otherwiſe, as well the Periptere, as Monoptere (both conſiſting but of a ſingle Range or Wing a Piece) ſhould then be Periſtyles, which they are not: Beſides, the Monoptere is only where a Roof is ſupported without any Wall or Cloſure whatſoever.

I

IMPOST, is a Plinth or little Cornice, that crowns a Piedroit, or Peer, and ſupports the ſpringing Stone, whence a Vault or Arch commences.

INTERCOLUMNATION, is the Space between two Columns.

L

LEAVES, are Ornaments of carved Work, and either natural, as thoſe of the Lawrel, Olive, Palm, *&c.* or imaginary, ſuch as are frequently ſeen in the Foliages of the Antique.

LIST, a Girdle, is a little ſquare Moulding, ſerving to crown or accompany a larger, or on Occaſion to ſeparate the Flutings of a Column.

M

METOPS, is the ſquare Space between the Triglyphs of the *Doric* Freeze.

MINUTE, is the one thirtieth Part of a Module, or the one ſixtieth of the Diameter.

MODULE, a little Meaſure, by which in Architecture, we mean any Bigneſs or Extent taken at Pleaſure, to meaſure the Parts of a Building by, and is uſually determined by the lower Diameter of Columns and Pilaſters, the Module made uſe of in this Treatiſe, is equal to the Semi-diameter of the Column, which is divided into thirty Parts.

MODERN, this Word ſignifies ſomething new, is very improperly applied to the *Italian* manner of Building, that being according to the Rules of the Antique: The Word Modern then, in its genuine meaning, is only applicable to ſuch Architecture as partakes partly of the *Gothick*, retaining ſomewhat of its Delicacy and Solidity; and partly of the Antique, whence it borrows Members and Ornaments without any Proportion or Judgment.

MODILLIONS, are little inverted Conſoles, under the Soffit of the Corona, and ought to correſpond to the middle of the Columns.

MOULDINGS, under this Name are comprehended all thoſe Jettings or Projectures beyond the Naked of a Wall, a Column, *&c.* which only ſerve for Ornament; whether they be ſquare, round, ſtreight or crooked. See *Plate* 47.

NAKED

N

NAKED, of a Wall, Column, *&c.* is the Bare Surface of a Wall, or Column, which ſerves as a Field or Ground to the Projectures.

O

OBELISK, is a Kind of Quadrangular Pyramid, very tall and ſlender, rais'd in a publick Place, to ſhow the Largeneſs of ſome enormous Stone, or to ſerve as a Monument of ſome memorable Action.

OGEE, ſee Cima.

ORDONANCE,
ORDER,
The *Tuſcan* Order,
The *Doric* Order,
The *Ionic* Order,
The *Corinthian* Order,
} See Page 59.
The *Attic* Order, ſee Page 63.

ORNAMENT, is any Piece of carv'd Work, ſerving as a Decoration in Architecture.

P

PERIPTERE, in the ancient Architecture, is a Building encompaſs'd round with Columns.

PARAPET, a ſave Breaſt, is a little Wall, above the Eves of the Roof of a Building, and which encloſes the Gutters; it is likewiſe applied to the Incloſure of a Key, Bridge, Terraſs, *&c.*

PEDESTAL, is a ſquare Body, with a Baſe and Cornice, ſerving as a Baſement to Columns, Statues, Urns, *&c.* See *Plate* 51, *Page* 62 and 72.

PILASTER, is a Kind of a ſquare Column, ſometimes ſtanding free and detatch'd from the Wall, but more uſually contiguous to it, or let within it.

PARASTATÆ, or Iſocles, as thoſe Pilaſters which ſtand clear or detatch'd from the Walls.

PILLAR, is a Kind of round Column, made without any Proportion; being always either too maſſive or too ſlender.

PYRAMID, is a ſolid Body, whoſe Baſe is either ſquare, triangular, or poligonous, and which from that Baſe diminiſhes continually to its Vertex or Top.

PLAT-BAND, Faſcia, Tænia and Corſa, is a ſquare Moulding, having leſs Projecture than Height, ſuch are the Faces of Architrave, *&c.*

PLINTH, is a ſquare Piece or Table, under the Mouldings of the Baſes of Columns or Pedeſtals.

PORTAIL, or Frontiſpiece, the principal Gate of a Palace, Caſtle, Houſe, *&c.*

PORTICO, is where Columns are detatch'd from the Front of a Building for the People to walk under Shelter, as at the weſt Front of St. *Martin*'s Church.

PROFILE, is the Contour, or Out-line of any Member in Architecture, as that of a Baſe, a Cornice or the like.

PROJECTURE, ſignifies the Prominency or Emboſſment, which the Mouldings and other Members of Architecture have, beyond the Naked of the Wall.

PROPORTION, is the juſtneſs of Members in each Part of a Building, and the Relation they bear to the whole.

PEDEMENT, an Ornament that crowns the Ordonances, finiſhes the Fronts of Buildings, and ſerves as a Decoration over Gates, Windows, Niches, *&c.* ſome are of a triangular Form, and others makes an Arch of a Circle.

PEER, or Piedroitis, a kind of a ſquare Pillar, Part whereof is hid within the Wall, without either Baſe or Capital.

PSEUDO-DIPTERE, ſee Diptere.

PYCNOSTYLE, this Term is uſed when the Columns are ranged ſo cloſe to one another, that the Intercolumniation does not exceed a Diameter and a Half, or three Modules.

Q

QUARTER-ROUND, by this Name the Workmen call any Moulding, whoſe Contour is a Circle, or approaching.

R

ROSE, is an Ornament cut in the Spaces which are between the Modillions under the Plat-fonds of Cornices, and in the Middle of each Face of the Abacus, in the *Corinthian* and *Compoſite* Capitals.

ROTONDA, is a vulgar Term, ſignifying any Building that is round both within and witnout Side.

RUSTICK, a manner of Building rather in Imitation of Nature, than according to the Rules of Art.

S

SCOTIA, ſignifies a Hollow, obſcure Moulding between the Tores of the Baſe of a Column, *&c.*

SYMMETRY, ſignifies the Relation of Parity, both as to Height, Depth and Breadth which the Parts have, in order to form a beautiful Whole. In Architecture we have both Uniform Symmetry, and Reſpective Symmetry; in the former, the Ordonance is purſued in the lame manner throughout the whole Extent; whereas in the latter, only the Oppoſite Sides correſpond to each other.

SOCLE, or Zocle, is a Square Body, leſs in Height then Breadth, and placed under the Baſes of the Pedeſtals of Statues and Vaſes, *&c.*

SALON, is a kind of Hall in the middle of a Houſe, or at the Head of a Gallery, or a large Apartment, which ought to have a Symmetry on all its Sides.

SOFFIT, this Term ſignifies the Cieling of any Part of a Building, whether it be ornamented with enrich'd Pannels, or Plain.

SOLIVE, ſignifies a Joiſt, Rafter, or piece of Wood either ſlit or ſaw'd, wherewith the Builders lay their Ceilings.

STATUE, is an imboſſed Figure, either in Stone or Metal, repreſenting ſome Perſon diſtinguiſh'd by his Birth or Merit, *&c.* And either ſerving as an Ornament of a Palace, or expoſed in ſome Publick Place, to perpetuate the Memory of the Perſon it is intended to repreſent. Of Statues there are four Kinds; the firſt is thoſe that are leſs than the Life. The ſecond, thoſe juſt as big as the Life. The third exceeds the Life. Such as were half as big again, were appropriated to Emperors; and thoſe twice as big as the Life, to Hero's. Laſtly, the fourth Kind conſiſts of ſuch as exceed the Life three or four Times, or more. Theſe are called Coloſſi, and were peculiarly ſet apart to repreſent Divinities. Every Statue which reſembles the Perſon it repreſents, is called Statua Iconica.

SYSTILE, is that Manner of placing Columns where the Space beween the two Fuſts, conſiſts of two Diameters, or four Modules.

T

THEATRE, among the Ancients, was a publick Building in form of a Semi-circle, encompaſs'd with Portico's, and furniſh'd with Seats of Stone, which included a Place called *Ocheſtra*, on the Front of which was the Proſcenium, or Pulpitum; that is to ſay, the Floor of the Theatre, with the Scene, which was a large Facade, adorn'd with the Orders of Architecture; and behind this was the Poſcenium, or Place where the Actors made themſelves ready.

TORUS, a large round Moulding in the Baſes of Columns; the Figure of this Mouling being not unlike the Edge of a Quilt.

TRABEATION. See Entablement.

TRIGLIPH, is a Member of Doric Freeze, placed directly over each Column, and at equal Diſtances in the Intercolumnation, having two entire Glyphes, or Chanels, engraven in it, meeting in an Angle, and ſeparated by three Sides, or Legs, from the two Demi-channels of the Sides.

TRUNK, ſignifies the Fuſt, or Shaft of a Column, and the Die of a Pedeſtal.

U

VESTIBLE, an open Place at the bottom of a large Stair-caſe, ſerving as a thorough-fare to the ſeveral Parts of the Houſe: 'Tis here that the Robes are firſt let fall in Viſits of Ceremony. Veſtible is ſometimes alſo uſed to ſignifie a little kind of Anti-chamber, before the Entrance of an Ordinary Apartment.

VOLUTE, is one of the principal Ornaments of the Joice and Compoſite Capital, repreſenting a kind of Bark wreath'd or twiſted into a Spiral Scroll. There are eight Angular Volutes in the *Corinthian* Capital, and theſe are accompanied with eight other little ones call'd Helices.

VAULT, is a Piece of Maſonry arch'd without Side, and ſupported in the Air, by the artful placing of the Stones which form it; its principal Uſe being for a Cover, or Shelter.

URN, a Veſſel to draw Water in, and ſignifies a low wide Vaſe, ſerving as a Crowning over Balluſtrades, and as an Attribute to Rivers, River-Gods, &c. A Funeral Urn is a cover'd Vaſe enrich'd with Sculpture, and ſerving as the Crowning, or Finiſhing of a Tomb, a Column, Pyramid, Obelisk, or other Funeral Monument; made in Imitation of the Ancients, who depoſited the Aſhes of their deceaſed Friends in this kind of Urns.

X

XYSTOS, Among the Ancient *Greeks* was a Portico of uncommon Length, either cover'd or open, wherein the Athletæ uſed to exerciſe themſelves in Running and Wreſtling. The *Romans* too had their Xyſtus, which was a long Iſle, or Portico, ſome Times roof'd over, and at other Times open, and ranged on each Side with rows of Trees, forming an agreable Place for the People to walk in.

Z

ZOCOLO. See Socle.

BOOKS Printed for B. CREAKE, at the *Bible* in *Jermyn-Street*, againſt St. *James*'s Church.

FOLIO.

A Complete Collection of State-Trials, and Proceedings upon Impeachments, &c. for High-Treaſon, and other Crimes and Miſdemeanours, from the Reign of King *Richard* II. to the End of the Reign of King *George* I. Six Vols.

Keating's General Hiſtory of *Ireland*. Containing an Account of the firſt Inhabitants of that Kingdom, with the Lives of 170 ſucceeding Monarchs: The Original of the *Gadelians*, and their Travels: The Aſſiſtance the *Iriſh* afforded the *Scots* againſt the *Romans* and *Britons*: A Deſcription of the Courage and Liberality of the ancient *Iriſh*, their Laws to preſerve their Records and Antiquities; alſo an Account of their Royal Aſſemblies at *Tara*: A Relation of their Wars with the *Danes*; and the Arrival of *Henry* II. King of *England*. To which is added an *Appendix*, collected from the Remarks of the Learned Dr. *Anthony Raymond* of *Trim*, not in the former Edition. Illuſtrated with above 160 Coats of Arms, and 42 Copper-Plates. The Second Edition. Price 1*l.* 10*s.*

OCTAVO.

Lectures of experimental Philoſophy: Wherein the Principles of *Mechanicks*, *Hydroſtaticks*, and *Opticks*, are Demonſtrated and Explain'd at large, by a great number of curious Experiments. A Deſcription of the *Air-Pump*, and the ſeveral *Experiments* thereon. The *Condenſing Engine*. The different Species of *Barometers*, *Thermometers* and *Hygrometers*. With ſeveral *Experiments* to prove and explain Sir *Iſaac Newton*'s *Theory of Light and Colours*. As perform'd in a Courſe of *Mechanical* and *Experimental Philoſophy* by *J. T. Deſaguliers*, M. A. F. R. S. Illuſtrated with ſeveral Copper-Plates ſuitable to each Subject. To which is added, *A Deſcription of the Machine*, call'd the *Orrery*. Price 5*s.*

An ENQUIRY into the Original of *Moral Virtue*; wherein the falſe Notions of *Machiavel*, *Hobbes*, *Spinoza*, and Mr. *Bayle*, as they are collected and digeſted by the Author of the *Fable of the Bees*, are examined and confuted; and the eternal and unalterable Nature and Obligotion of *Moral Virtue* is ſtated and vindicated. To which is prefix'd, a *Prefatory Introduction*, in a Letter to that Author. By *Alexander Innes*, D. D. Preacher Aſſiſtant at St. *Margaret*'s *Weſtminſter*.

ESSAYS of *Michael Seigneur de Montaigne* in three Books, with Marginal Notes and Quotations; and an Account of the Author's Life, with a ſhort Character of the Author and Tranſlator, by a Perſon of Honour, made *Engliſh* by *Charles Cotton*, Eſq; the 5th Edition, with the Addition of a compleat Table to each Volume, and a full Defence of the Author, in 3 Volums.

Miſcellany Eſſays by *Monſieur de St. Evermont* upon Philoſophy, Hiſtory, Poetry, Morality, Humanity, Gallantry, &c. in 3 Volums.

ARITHMETICK, in all its Parts. Containing all the Rules, both for *Vulgar* and *Decimal*, adapted to the Meaneſt Capacity. The Second Edition. By *Gideon Royer*. To which is added, a *Compendium* of *Algebra*, ſolving Simple, Quadretick, and Cubick Equations; together with the Method of Converging Series's after ſo plain a Method, that any one who underſtands Numbers, may learn the Solution of the ſaid Equations without a Maſter. By *George Gordon*, Aſſiſtant to the Reverend Dr. *Deſaguliers*. Price 4*s.* 6*d.*

An Hiſtorical *Compendium*, from the Creation to the Year of our Lord 1726, in two Parts: The firſt, from the Creation to the Birth of *Jeſus Chriſt*, divided into Ages, and continued to the Reſtoration of King *Charles* II. 1660: The ſecond, from the Birth of *Chriſt* to the Year of our Lord 1726, divided into Centuries; with the Characters, Deaths and Succeſſions of all the Emperors, Popes, Kings, Governors, Rulers, and other Perſons of Note, the whole being a curious Collection of Hiſtory, both Sacred and Profane. With compleat Indexes to the whole. The ſecond Edition carefully corrected, with very large Additions. 2*s.* 6*d.*

All Sorts of *Mathematical Inſtruments* in Silver, Braſs, Ivory or Wood, according to the beſt Improvements, are accurately Made and Sold by THO. HEATH, at the *Hercules* and *Globe*, next Door to the Fountain Tavern in the *Strand*.